

PRIVILEGED AND CONFIDENTIAL

**ACQUISITION OF 1064 LOCOMOTIVES FOR TRANSNET'S GENERAL
FREIGHT BUSINESS ("TRANSACTION"): INQUIRY
REPORT**

VOLUME III

155 - 5th Street Sandton 2196
Johannesburg South Africa
Private Bag 10015 Sandton 2146

Docex 111 Sandton
Tel +27 11 35 8000
Fax +27 11 35 8600

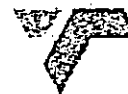
enquiries@werksmans.com
www.werksmans.com



public enterprises

Department:
Public Enterprises
REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

TRANSNET



defining freight reliability

**2013-2014
SHAREHOLDER'S COMPACT**

Entered into by and between

**THE GOVERNMENT OF THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA, HEREIN
REPRESENTED BY THE MINISTER OF PUBLIC ENTERPRISES
("The Shareholder Representative")**

And

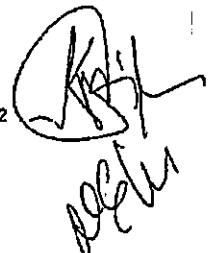
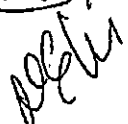
**TRANSNET SOC LTD, HEREIN REPRESENTED BY THE CHAIRPERSON OF THE
TRANSNET BOARD OF DIRECTORS**

RESTRICTED

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. INTERPRETATION.....	3
2. FUNCTION OF SHAREHOLDER'S COMPACT.....	4
3. FOUNDING DOCUMENT AND GOVERNANCE FRAMEWORK	5
4. MANDATE	5
5. STRATEGIC OBJECTIVES	6
6. STRATEGIC INITIATIVES	8
7. KEY PERFORMANCE INDICATORS AND EVALUATION.....	8
8. SIGNIFICANCE AND MATERIALITY	8
9. PERIOD OF SHAREHOLDER'S COMPACT	9
10. NO AMENDMENT	9
ANNEXURE A: STRATEGIC DELIVERABLES.....	10
ANNEXURE B: OPERATIONAL PERFORMANCE.....	12
ANNEXURE C: SOCIAL IMPACT	16
ANNEXURE D: ECONOMIC IMPACT.....	18
ANNEXURE E: SIGNIFICANCE AND MATERIALITY FRAMEWORK	18
ANNEXURE F: CAPITAL INVESTMENT PLAN.....	19
ANNEXURE G: ENERGY EFFICIENCY.....	20

RESTRICTED

2 


1. 2 "Statement of Strategic Intent" means the document which sets out the agreed mandate and strategy for Transnet;
1. 3 "Subsidiary" means a subsidiary of Transnet or any of its subsidiaries over which it exercises ownership control as defined in terms of the PFMA;
1. 4 "Transnet" means Transnet SOC Ltd, a public company registered and incorporated as such in accordance with the laws of the Republic of South Africa and pursuant to the Legal Succession to the South African Transport Services, 1989 (Act No. 13 of 1989) with registration number 1990/000900/30, and having its registered head office at 47th Floor, Carlton Centre, Commissioner Street, Johannesburg.

2 FUNCTION OF SHAREHOLDER'S COMPACT

2 The purpose of this Shareholder's Compact is to clarify and confirm:

- 2.1 Transnet's Mandate;
- 2.1.2 The strategic objectives to be attained by Transnet; and
- 2.1.3 The key performance areas and indicators to measure Transnet's performance during the period of the Shareholder's Compact.
- 2.2 As part of broader legislative compliance, Transnet shall at all times adhere to the legal framework providing for the prevention and combating of fraud and corruption, particularly within the context of procuring goods and services, competing for and executing contracts.

3 FOUNDING DOCUMENTS AND GOVERNANCE FRAMEWORK

- 3 The Parties agree that the Founding Documents of Transnet shall be reviewed and amended, where required, to ensure that agreed principles and enduring rights and obligations regarding the relationship between the Parties are incorporated and that the Founding documents are comprehensively consistent with the provisions of the

RESTRICTED

Handwritten signature and initials, possibly 'P. K. S.' and 'P. K. S.', located at the bottom right of the page.

Companies Act, PFMA, Legal Succession to South African Transport Services Act, National Treasury Regulations and Transnet's Mandate.

- 3.2 The Board shall ensure that Transnet and its subsidiaries comply with the provisions of the Companies Act, the PFMA and any other legislation, including regulations and consider guidelines issued by the National Treasury and/or the Shareholder Representative.

Transnet shall ensure that Transnet:

- 3.2.1 Concludes performance agreements with all its significant subsidiaries that are comprehensively and consistently compliant with the spirit, rights, obligations and undertakings stipulated in the Shareholder's Compact.

- 3.3 If there is any conflict or inconsistency among the provisions of the Founding Documents or the Statement of Strategic Intent or the Corporate Plan and this Shareholder's Compact, the Parties shall take whatever steps that may be necessary to amend the documents to remove the conflict or inconsistency. For so long as the conflict exists on Founding Documents, the MOI shall take precedence and thereafter the Statement of Strategic Intent.

4. MANDATE

The Parties agree that:

- 4.1 The underlying mandate for Transnet remains as determined by the company's Founding Documents, by prevailing legislation and by this Shareholder's Compact.
- 4.2 Transnet's key role is to assist in lowering the cost of doing business in South Africa, enabling economic growth and security of supply through providing appropriate ports, rail and pipeline infrastructure as well as operations in a cost effective and efficient manner within acceptable benchmark standards.

RESTRICTED




4.3 The mandate may be amplified from time to time through a Statement of Strategic Intent from the Shareholder.

5. STRATEGIC OBJECTIVES

5.1 The Parties agree that the strategic objectives of Transnet fall into five main areas, namely:

5.1.1 Reduce the total cost of logistics as a percentage of transportable GDP;

5.1.2 Effect and accelerate modal shift by maximising the role of rail in the national transport task;

5.1.3 Leverage the private sector in the provision of both infrastructure and operations where required;

5.1.4 Integrate South Africa with the region and the rest of the continent; and

5.1.5 Optimise the social and economic impact of all interventions undertaken by the SOC in the achievement of these objectives.

5.2 The Parties acknowledge and agree that the focus of Transnet shall be on the following Key Performance Areas:

5.2.1 Develop and agree on a methodology to quantify and reliably measure Transnet's contribution to reducing the total cost of logistics as a percentage of transportable GDP;

5.2.2 Transformation of the surface transport market through dedicated management with a mandate to deliver an integrated domestic intermodal transport system, industry solutions, long term infrastructure and reliable, cost effective services whilst aggressively growing rail's market share in those contested sectors of the economy;

5.2.3 Ensure the provision of critical logistics infrastructure and capacity over the short term, however, aligned to a long term national plan that is geared towards meeting the growing demands of the total national economy;

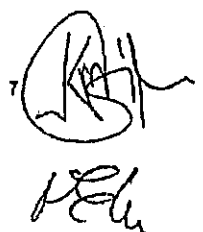
RESTRICTED

6

Handwritten signature and initials, possibly 'K. M.' and 'J. M.', in black ink.

- 5.2.4 Oversee a sustainable capital investment approach characterised by intelligent investment decisions, financial prudence and commercial sustainability to meet industry demands and customer expectations over the medium term;
- 5.2.5 Develop and implement a collaborative approach to private sector participation on a case by case basis with the intention to leverage collective resources in the provision of infrastructure and transport services in a way that does not compromise those strategic assets required to support the rollout of the capital expenditure programme;
- 5.2.6 Operational excellence across the entire organization informed by global best practise and driven by a performance culture that is firmly entrenched within the organisation;
- 5.2.7 On-going compliance with policy and regulation. In addition compliance to the policy environment with a view to support government in driving regional integration, economic transformation, beneficiation, industrialisation, aggressive job creation and the development of a supplier base that meets Broad Based Black Economic Empowerment ("BBBEE") criteria;
- 5.2.8 The implementation of global best practises with respect to safety, skills development and procurement. In terms of safety, a fundamental respect for the value of human life and resources. In terms of skills development the need to maintain and develop the intellectual capacity of the company and lastly with respect to procurement the need for transparent governance and tangible benefits for all social, economic and environmental stakeholders;
- 5.2.9 The introduction and establishment of a robust Centre of Excellence to drive research and the deployment of new and cutting-edge technologies to address the need for competitiveness, growing demand and cost savings;
- 5.2.10 Sustainable growth encompassing corporate social investment and environmental responsibility. This area of focus is becoming increasingly important as Transnet becomes increasingly prominent within the economy.

RESTRICTED



6. STRATEGIC INITIATIVES

The Parties agree and undertake to support the strategic initiatives as listed in Annexures A through G.

In addition, Transnet is required to report on a quarterly basis on the National Corridor Performance Measurement (NCPM) with respect to the following:

- a) Full cooperation and participation of Transnet to assist the Department in the execution of the NCPM project.
- b) Full participation of Transnet with respect to enabling an understanding of the Corridor its participants, key operational statistics and Transnet's involvement and activities.
- c) On-going data inputs for the policy view within NCPM
- d) Transnet to ensure migration from monthly data to weekly data on all operational indicators, where appropriate
- e) Transnet to ensure automation of data capturing process to NCPM system
- f) Provision of 2011/12 data to complete the requirement for historical data.

7. KEY PERFORMANCE INDICATORS AND EVALUATION

The Parties agree that:

- 7.1 Transnet's performance in relation to the strategic objectives will be measured with reference to both qualitative and quantitative Key Performance Indicators (KPIs) as set out in format, content and coverage of Annexure A, B, C, D, E, F and G.
- 7.2 Transnet shall report on all Shareholder's Compact KPIs, and results achieved by, the company and its subsidiaries in the Annual Report and Quarterly Reports.
- 7.3 Transnet shall align its Corporate Plan to the Shareholder's Compact.

8. SIGNIFICANCE AND MATERIALITY

In accordance with the provisions of Treasury Regulations 28.3, the framework for significance and materiality is set out in Annexure E.

RESTRICTED



9. PERIOD OF SHAREHOLDER'S COMPACT

- 9.1 This Shareholder's Compact is valid for period of one year.
- 9.2 The Parties hereby record and acknowledge that they are required, in terms of the Treasury Regulations, to annually conclude a shareholder's compact and agree that this Shareholder's Compact shall remain in full force and effect until a new Shareholder's Compact is concluded as required by the Treasury Regulations.
- 9.3 The process for the annual conclusion of a new Shareholder's Compact may be initiated by any one of the Parties through written notice. Upon receipt of such notice by the other Party, the Shareholder's Representative and the Board shall commence negotiation.

10. NO AMENDMENT

- 10.1 This Shareholder's Compact constitutes the whole agreement between the Parties relating to the subject matter hereof and supersedes any other discussions, agreements and/or understanding regarding the subject matter hereof.
- 10.2 It is recorded, acknowledged and agreed that no Party shall be entitled to amend the key performance areas and/or key performance indicators as detailed in Annexures "A" through "D" of this Shareholder's Compact.

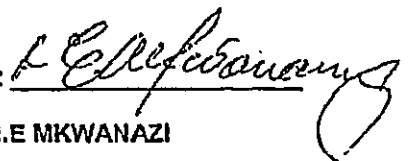
Signed: 

M.K.N. GIGABA

Minister of Public Enterprises

Shareholder Representative

Date: 2013/06/25

Signed: 

M.E. MKWANAZI

Chairperson

Transnet SOC Ltd

Date: 25/06/2013

ANNEXURE A: ^(a) STRATEGIC DELIVERABLES

Key Performance Area	Description of deliverables	Delivery timeline
Transnet's Sustainability Framework	Economic dividends	Mar-15
	Social dividends	Mar-15
	Environmental dividends	Mar-15
Cost of Logistics	Quantify Transnet's contribution to the Total cost of Logistics as a percentage (%) of transportable GDP.	Sep-13
	0.5% reduction in Total cost of Logistics by 2018/19 as per Market Demand Strategy.	Sep-13
Domestic Intermodal Solution	Quantify and commit to modal split target.	Sep-13
	Quantify the fixed infrastructure capacity, operational performance and financial performance of existing intermodal capacity.	Sep-13
	Develop a long term intermodal/container strategy supported by an appropriate infrastructure and funding plan.	Sep-13
NMPP strategy and Infrastructure plan	Develop a medium to long term strategy and infrastructure plan to drive Transnet Pipeline's market share.	Mar-14
Africa Business Development and Regional Integration	Develop a short medium and long strategy to improve intra-Africa trade from a transport perspective.	Jul-13
	Promote regional connectivity through the integration of the freight rail and maritime infrastructure.	Mar-14
	Position Transnet Engineering to become the preferred supplier of rolling stock within the African market.	Mar-14
Private Sector Participation (PSP)	Delivery of R2.5 billion in PSP funding as per 2012/13 Corporate Plan.	Subject to outcomes of Board meeting to be held on May 2013
	Identify clear and sustainable opportunities for PSP.	
	Identify and develop clear industry solutions within the various sectors supported by business cases for approval by the Shareholder.	
	Develop defined timeline for implementation of identified PSP opportunities.	Subject to PFMA Section 54 approval
	Concession of three branch lines as identified by Transnet and the Department	
^(b) Policy and Regulation	Full cooperation with the Department to finalise joint positions on rail and maritime policy	Ongoing
	On-going compliance with policy and regulation	Ongoing
Research and Development Excellence	Establishment of a R&D Centre of Excellence	Mar-14
	Quantify how technology has been leveraged to reduce capital outlay and reduce operating expenditure in all spheres of business.	Jun-14
	Quantify how technology has been leverage to improve productivity in all sphere of business	Jun-14
	Quantify how technology has been leverage to improve and increase modal shift.	Jun-14
	Quantify how technology has been leverage to increase market share	Jun-14

^(a) The board shall report on the progress of all strategic deliverables on a quarterly basis as well as within the Annual report.

^(b) The board shall track and report on the delivery of all commitments on a quarterly basis as well as within the Annual report.

RESTRICTED

10

259

ANNEXURE B: OPERATIONAL PERFORMANCE

Transnet Group

Key Performance Area	Key Performance Indicator	Unit of Measure	2013/14 Target
Financial value creation	Return on total average assets ^(a)	%	≥ 8.0
	Cash interest cover	Times	≥ 3.3
	Gearing	%	≤ 46.6
	Opex as a % of revenue	%	≤ 57.1
Innovation	Research and development cost	Rm	194

^(a) Excluding Port Regulator claw backs

Transnet Freight Rail

Key Performance Area	Key Performance Indicator		Unit of Measure	2013/14 Target
Financial	Return on total average assets		%	≥ 11.4
Tariffs	Average tariff increases	- GFB	%	≤ CPI+2
Market share	Volume	Total Volume	mt	≥ 229.7
		Bulk		
		- Export Coal	mt	≥ 77.0
		- Export Iron Ore	mt	≥ 61.5
		- Export Manganese (PE)	mt	≥ 5.1
		- Export Manganese (DBN)	mt	≥ 1.3
		- Export Coal non RBCT	mt	≥ 6.2
		- Eskom Coal	mt	≥ 11.8
		- Domestic Coal	mt	≥ 8.9
		- Chrome and Ferrochrome	mt	≥ 5.2
		- Domestic Iron Ore	mt	≥ 7.9
		- Domestic Manganese	mt	≥ 1.9
		- Mineral mining	mt	≥ 13
		- Other	mt	≥ 2.5
		Intermediate manufacturing and manufacturing		
		- Agriculture	mt	≥ 4.6
		- Bulk liquids	mt	≥ 2.1
		- Iron and Steel	mt	≥ 0.8
		- Wood and wood products	mt	≥ 2.5
		- Fertilisers	mt	≥ 0.1
		- Industrial chemicals	mt	≥ 0.9
		- Cement	mt	≥ 7.3
		- Intermodal Wholesale	mt	≥ 7.8
		- FMCG long distance	mt	≥ 0.8
		- Automotive	mt	≥ 0.5 (489974FBU)

RESTRICTED

ANNEXURE B: OPERATIONAL PERFORMANCE (Continued)

Transnet Freight Rail (Continued)

Key Performance Area	Key Performance Indicator	Unit of Measure	2013/14 Target
Productivity	Asset utilisation	Iron Ore	Gtkm/Ntkm
		Export Coal	Gtkm/Ntkm
		General Freight ^(a)	Gtkm/Ntkm
	Density	SSaldanha	Tonkm/Routekm
		RBaycor	Tonkm/Routekm
		Natalcor	Tonkm/Routekm
		NEastcor	Tonkm/Routekm
		Senracor	Tonkm/Routekm
		Capecor	Tonkm/Routekm
		NWestcor	Tonkm/Routekm
		Eastcor	Tonkm/Routekm
		Southcor	Tonkm/Routekm
		Northcor	Tonkm/Routekm
Service	On-time departure	- Coal Export	Average deviation from scheduled times (minutes)
		- Export Iron Ore	
		- General Freight	
	On-time arrival	- Coal Export	Average deviation from scheduled times (minutes)
		- Export Iron Ore	
		- General Freight	

^(a) GFB Asset utilisation will be further broken down in 2014-15 Shareholder Compact

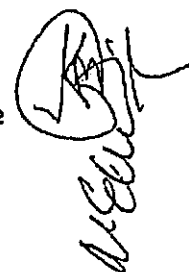
Transnet Engineering

Key Performance Area	Key Performance Indicator	Unit of Measure	2013/14 Target
Financial	External revenue	Rm	R2633m
Innovation	Research and development cost	Rm	R150m
^(a) Volume growth	Train cancellations due to Traction	%	≤ 8
	Net volume lost due to traction	ML	≤ 7
	Traction delays	%	≤ 40

^(a) Volume growth to be separated into Export Iron ore, export coal and GFB for the 2014-15 Shareholder's Compact

RESTRICTED

12



ANNEXURE B: OPERATIONAL PERFORMANCE (Continued)

Transnet National Ports Authority

Key Performance Area	Key Performance Indicator	Unit of Measure	2013/14 Target
Productivity	Anchorage	Hours	- Durban ≤ 3
			- Cape Town ≤ 3
			- Port Elizabeth ≤ 4
			- Ngqura ≤ 2
			- Richards Bay ≤ 3
	Ship Turnaround Time ^{a)}	Hours	Containers
			- Durban ≤ 9
			- Cape Town ≤ 10
			- Port Elizabeth ≤ 8
			- Port of East London ≤ 10
			- Richards Bay ≤ 10
			- Ngqura ≤ 9
		Hours	Dry bulk
			- Coal (RBCT) ≤ 7
			- Iron Ore (Saldanha) ≤ 5
			- Manganese (P.E) ≤ 9
	Berth Occupancy	Percentage (%)	- Durban ≤ 5
			- Cape Town ≤ 10
			- Port Elizabeth ≤ 10
			- Ngqura ≤ 5
	Berth Utilisation	Percentage (%)	- Durban ≤ 10
			- Cape Town ≤ 10
			- Port Elizabeth ≤ 10
			- Ngqura ≤ 75
			- East London ≤ 10
			- Richards Bay ≤ 10

^{a)} Shipping delays to be quantified and reported on a quarterly basis

RESTRICTED




ANNEXURE B: OPERATIONAL PERFORMANCE (Continued)

Transnet Port Terminal

Key Performance Area	Key Performance Indicator	Unit of Measure	2013/14 Target
Financial	Return on Total Average Assets	%	≥ 5.8
Tariff Increases	Average Tariff Increase (Containers)	%	≤ 6
Productivity	Dwell Time	DCT - Pier 1	
		- Imports	Days
		- Exports	Days
		- Transshipment ^(a)	Days
		DCT - Pier 2	
		- Imports	Days
		- Exports	Days
		- Transshipment	Days
		CTCT	
		- Imports	Days
		- Exports	Days
		- Transshipment	Days
Service Delivery	Moves per gross crane hour ^(b)	DCT - Pier 1	≥ 28
		DCT - Pier 2	≥ 30
		CTCT	≥ 32
		Ngqura	≥ 32
	Train turnaround time	DCT - Pier 1	Hours
		DCT - Pier 2	Hours
		CTCT	Hours
		Saldanha ^(c)	Minutes
		Richards Bay	Hours
		Port Elizabeth	Hours
	Truck turnaround time	DCT - Pier 1	Minutes
		DCT - Pier 2	Minutes
		CTCT	Minutes
		Ngqura	Minutes
		Richards Bay	Minutes


^(a) TPT shall not encourage transshipment dwell times of greater than 5 days^(b) TPT shall report on Moves/GCH for the Ports of Richards Bay and East London on a quarterly basis^(c) Rake process line inside tippler – Subject to service design review

Transnet Pipelines

Key Performance Area	Key Performance Indicator	Unit of Measure	2013/14 Target
Service reliability	Ordered vs. Delivered volumes (% of deliverables within 5% of order)	%	≥ 95
	Planned vs. Actual Delivery time (% of deliverables within 2 hours of plan)	%	≥ 80
	Operating cost per Ml.km (Nominal R/Ml.km) (Real R/Ml.km)	Rand	≤ 122
Capacity utilisation	NMPP- Actual usage : capacity at the time (Ml/week)	Ratio	≥ 48:84
Market share ^(a)	Total petroleum products	Billion litres	≥ 19.75

^(a) Volumes to be expressed as market share in Annual report

RESTRICTED



ANNEXURE C: SOCIAL IMPACT

Human Capital

Key Performance Area		Unit of Measure	2013/14 Target
Skills development	Training spend	% of personnel costs	4.6
	Technician trainees	Number of learners	330
	Engineering Trainees	Number of Learners	132
	Artisan trainees	Number of learners	1650
	Traineeship trainees	Number of learners	1980
(a) Employment creation	Jobs created (Transnet permanent employees)	Number of jobs	4336
Safety	DIFR (for all Transnet operational divisions)	Weighted average	0.75
	Employee fatalities	Number of fatalities	0
Productivity	Revenue per employee	R million	0.98

(a) Transnet is required to report on direct and indirect jobs created within the quarterly and annual reports. Employment resulting from the procurement activity shall be reported separately within the quarterly reports and Annual report.

Corporate Social Investment

Corporate Social Investment		Total CSI budget	R257m
Pholophepha I and Pholophepha II health care trains		Operating budget	R95m
Rural station in Eastern Cape, Northern Cape, North West, Limpopo, Free State, KwaZulu-Natal	Dental treatment	People	17,425
	Spectacles issued		28,700
	Individual counseling		700
	Counseling workshops		31,000
	Teenage girls education		3,600
	Health, diabetic, cancer screening		36,000
	Community volunteer training		720
	Prescriptions		38 125

RESTRICTED

15

264

ANNEXURE C: SOCIAL IMPACT (Continued)

Other Social Development

Educator Development			
Makana (EC), Motheo (FS), Moretele (NW), Mtubatuba and Durban South (KZN), Sekhukhuns (L)	350 teachers	Results improvement in Maths, science, English: Y1: 5%, Y2: 10%	R12.3m
	98% attendance		
	95% course completion		
	Learner performance improvement (Maths, Science, English): yr1: 5%; yr 2: 10%		
Orphan youth programme			R2m
Sports development			R30m
Container assistance			R10m
Transnet employee volunteer programme (Inanda (Durban), Motherwell (PE), Diepsloot (Jhb)			R26.4m

RESTRICTED

16

265



ANNEXURE D: ECONOMIC IMPACT

Key Performance Area	Unit of Measure	^(a) With PPPFA exemption	^(a) Without PPPFA exemption
Local Content	% of total spend	70	70
CSDP (SD value)	% of contract value invested in RSA	45	35
Skills development	% of total spend	6	6
BBBEE	% of total spend	87	70
Black Women Owned	% of total spend	8	5
Black Owned	% of total spend	15	10
Black Youth Owned	% of total spend	2	0.5
QSE/EME	% of total spend	15	10
People Living with Disability	% of total spend	0.5	0.25

^(a) The appropriate scenario shall be deployed depending on the status of the PPPFA exemption as at 31 March 2013

QSE = Qualifying Small Enterprise (Annual turnover 5m-35m)
EME = Exempted Micro Enterprise (Annual turnover of <5m)

ANNEXURE E: SIGNIFICANCE AND MATERIALITY FRAMEWORK

This appendix sets out the standing in terms of Sections 54 of the PFMA and provides guidance for the determination of the materiality limit in terms of section 55 (2) of the PFMA

PFMA	Description	Exemption from Section 54 of the PFMA
S54(2) (d)	Acquisition or disposal of a significant asset	1. If acquisition does not exceed 2% of the 31 December 2012 audited asset base value (which equates to R 3.9 billion), however the Department should receive a detailed notification for all acquisition and disposal of assets above R 2 billion.
S54(2) (b)	Acquisition or disposal of a significant partnership, trust, joint ventures, etc.	1. If partnership is specified in business plan. 2. If participation is not specified in corporate business plan but risk is R100m or below.
S54(2) (c)	Acquisition or disposal of a significant shareholding in a company.	1. If participation or disposal is specified in corporate business plan. 2. If participation or disposal is not specified in corporate business plan but capital risk is R100m or below.
S4(2) (e)	Commencement or cessation of a significant business activity.	1. If such commencement/cessation is specified in corporate business plan. 2. If such commencement/cessation is not specified in corporate business plan but capital at risk is R100m or below.

The Shareholder representative hereby determines the materiality limit for reporting in terms of section 55 (2) (b) (i), (ii) and (iii) is R25 million.

RESTRICTED

17
[Signature]
[Signature]

ANNEXURE F: CAPITAL EXPENDITURE

Project	Estimated Total Cost (ETC) R'm	Date of completion	^(a) Est. % completion at year end 31/03/2013	Target % completion at year end 31/03/2014	^(b) Schedule Performance Index	^(c) Cost performance index
Projects which have reached the execution phase - Front End Loading (FEL) 4						
1. Coal Line expansion to 81 mt	5,100	Mar-18	10	32	≥ 0.90	≥ 0.90
2. Acquisition of 85 Electric Locomotives for GFB	2,659	Mar-14	10.2	20.7	≥ 0.90	≥ 0.90
3. Acquisition of wagons for MDS ^(d)	19,595	Beyond 2019	10	19.60	≥ 0.90	≥ 0.90
4. Ngqura Container Terminal Ph2A	1,099	Mar-14	10	65	≥ 0.90	≥ 0.90
5. New Multi-Product Pipeline	23,400	Dec-13	76	98	≥ 0.90	≥ 0.90
6. Reconstruction of sheetpile quaywalls at Maydon Wharf	1,514	Dec-16	14	15	≥ 0.90	≥ 0.90
7. Straddle carrier replacement ^(d)	1,309	Mar-16	0	11	≥ 0.90	≥ 0.90
8. Acquisition of 465 Diesel locomotives for MDS volume growth	13,262	Beyond 2019	0	0	≥ 0.90	≥ 0.90
9. Acquisition of 599 Electric Locomotives for MDS volume growth	24,884	Beyond 2019	0	0	≥ 0.90	≥ 0.90
Projects which are yet to reach the execution phase						
10. Expansion of the Ore Line to 82,5mt ^(f)	10,888	Dec-17	FEL 3: 23	FEL 3: 100	na	na
11. Coal export line expansion to 97 Mtpa ^(f)	6,219	Beyond 2019	0	0	na	na
12. Manganese expansion to 15mt ^(f)	11,345	Mar-21	FEL 3: 71	FEL 3: 100	na	na
13. Swaziland rail link ^(f)	5,000	Mar-18	FEL 2: 75 FEL 3: 4	FEL 2: 100 FEL 3: 100	na	na
14. Waterberg expansion to 16mt ^(f)	5,090	Beyond 2019	FEL 3: 25	FEL3: 100	na	na
15. Deepening of DCT berths	4,500	Mar-19	0	0	na	na

(a) Percentage of completion certified as per acceptable standards

(b) Scheduled Performance Index=Budget cost of work performed/Budget of work scheduled

(c) Cost Performance Index=Budgeted costs of work performed/Actual cost of work performed

(d) The majority of projects making up these grounds do not yet have the appropriate Delegation of Authority approval.

(e) The majority of projects making up these Major groups are at various FEL stages and therefore their Estimated Total Cost is subject change

(f) Updated risk assessment per project reported on quarterly basis.

RESTRICTED

18

267

ANNEXURE G: ENERGY EFFICIENCY

Electricity Energy Efficiency

Division	Unit of Measure	% Efficiency gain YoY
TFR Traction	g/kkWh	≥ 1%
TFR Real Estate	kWh/m ²	≥ 2%
TP	kWh	≥ 5%
TPL	lkm/kWh	≥ 1%
TPT	lcn/kWh	≥ 2%
TNPA	employee/kWh	≥ 4%
TRE	man-hour/kWh	≥ 4%

Fuel Energy Efficiency

Division	Unit of Measure	% Efficiency gain YoY
TFR Traction	g/k/litre	≥ 1%
TPT	lcn/litre	≥ 2%
TRE	man-hour/litre	≥ 4%

Reporting Standards applied

Sustainability Report 2013	Global Reporting Initiative Guidelines, United Nations Global Compact Principles
Integrated Report 2013	King III, Companies Act, International Integrated Reporting Council framework

RESTRICTED

TRANSNET



ANNEXURE "A"

**TRANSNET DELEGATION OF AUTHORITY
FRAMEWORK
(EFFECTIVE FROM 1 JUNE 2013)**

**APPROVED BY THE TRANSNET BOARD OF
DIRECTORS ON 29 MAY 2013**

INDEX

	Page
1. Interpretation and Definitions	3
2. Scope	5
3. Application	5
4. Delegating Powers	5
5. Company Authorities	6
5.1. Capital Expenditure	6
5.2. Treasury	10
5.3. Finance	16
5.4. Procurement	17
5.5. Contracts Agreements	20
5.6. Legal	24
5.7. Human Resources	25
5.8. General	29

1 Interpretation and Definitions

The following words and expressions bear the following meanings, unless the context indicates otherwise:-

- 1.1 "Board" means the Board of Directors of the Company and includes the Board when it acts in the capacity as the Divisional Board of the deemed Authority under the National Ports Act No. 12 of 2005;
- 1.2 "Board Reserved Matters" means matters reserved by the Board as set out in Annexure A1 of Written resolution 2011/P2;
- 1.3 "CAPIC" means the Capital Investment Committee, a committee of the Group Executive Committee which has been established to make decisions regarding capital expenditure;
- 1.4 "CE" means Chief Executive of an Operating Division;
- 1.5 "Chairperson" means the person who is appointed as the Chairperson of the Board as per the MOI;
- 1.6 "Company" means Transnet SOC Ltd including its Operating Divisions and Specialist Units, with registration number 1990/000900/30 and "Transnet" shall have a corresponding meaning;
- 1.7 "Company Strategy" means the strategy for the Company as approved from time to time by the Board;
- 1.8 "Consultant" means a person, or partners in a firm, or a company or a close corporation who can provide expert or specialised advisory skills, but excludes anyone who also carries out the physical work or provides the end product for Transnet based on his own professional or expert advice. Such consultancy service normally pertains to a specific project and therefore non-repetitive in nature and confined to design work, investigation, or advice on management, financial, business or technical matters;

In short, a consultant does not supply the ultimate end product, but merely gives a recommendation, based on his expertise, of the best solution to a specific problem. That proposed solution, if acceptable to Transnet, still has to be acquired, built or erected by another party and may or may not be connected with the consultant. Excludes any professional services procurement package included in the approved asset procurement package plan for and approved physical asset project.
- 1.9 "Delegation of Authority Framework" means this document, recording the nature and extent of authorities required in order to implement certain actions by or on behalf of the company, including any sub-delegation of authority where permitted and "Delegation" shall have a corresponding meaning;
- 1.10 "FRMF" mean Financial Risk Management Framework
- 1.11 "GCE" means Transnet Chief Executive of the Company;
- 1.12 "GCFO" means Transnet Chief Financial Officer;
- 1.13 "GCSCO" means Transnet Chief Supply Chain Officer;
- 1.14 "Group Executive Committee" or "Group Exco" means the executive committee established to take responsibility for the day to day execution of strategy and running of the Company;
- 1.15 "Group Executive or Group Executive nominee" refers to the Group Executive responsible for the supporting business or his/her nominee;
- 1.16 "International agreements" means agreements entered into with entities incorporated in foreign jurisdictions or which are required to be construed in accordance with the laws of a foreign jurisdiction including the neighbouring countries;
- 1.17 "Memorandum of Incorporation" or "MOI" means the constitutive documents of the Company, as amended;
- 1.18 "Neighbouring Countries" means countries sharing a border with the Republic of South Africa;
- 1.19 Operating Divisions means the Operating Divisions of Transnet, namely, Transnet Freight Rail, Transnet Engineering, Transnet National Ports Authority, Transnet Port Terminals and Transnet Pipelines;

- 1.20 "PFMA" means the Public Financial Management Act 1 of 1999 (as amended), read together with its regulations' including Treasury Regulations;
- 1.21 "Prescribed Officer" means a person who, within a company, performs any function that has been designated by the Minister of Trade and Industry in terms of section 66(1), read with Regulation 38.
- 1.22 "Shareholder" means the Government of the Republic of South Africa represented by the Shareholder Minister.
- 1.23 "Shareholder Minister" means the Minister of Public Enterprises as defined in the MOI;
- 1.24 "Shareholder's Compact" means the shareholder's compact, being an agreement entered into pursuant to section 52 of the PFMA between the Shareholder representative and the Board from time to time;
- 1.25 "Specialist Unit" mean all business units of Transnet which have been deemed 'supporting businesses' in terms of the Company Strategy, these include Transnet Property, Transnet Foundation, Transnet Capital Projects and Transnet Corporate Centre. Where a Specialist Unit CE is not a member of the Group Exco, the Group Exco member responsible for such Specialist Unit shall sub-delegate powers to the Specialist Unit's CE;
- 1.26 "Subsidiary" means subsidiary as defined in the Companies Act 71 of 2008 (as amended) and Subsidiaries shall have a corresponding meaning;
- 1.27 "Transnet" means the Company with its Subsidiaries and Operating Divisions as stated in clause 1.6 above.
- 1.28 "Treasury Regulations" means the regulations issued in terms of section 76 of the PFMA, amended from time to time;
- 1.29 Transnet Total Asset Base; refers to the total value of the assets in Transnet and is set at the asset value indicated in the integrated report for the year; and
- 1.30 "VAT" means Value Added Tax. All amounts indicated in the document are exclusive of VAT.

2 Scope

This Delegation of Authority Framework records the nature and extent of the authorities delegated by the GCE to certain employees and members of the Group Exco and other authorities delegated in order to implement certain actions by or on behalf of the Company. It includes, to the extent necessary and/or incidental thereto, the authority to discharge all of the duties, obligations and powers imposed upon the deemed Authority under the National Ports Act 12 of 2005.

3 Application

3.1 This Delegation of Authority Framework applies to all employees of the Company, including its Operating Divisions and Specialist Units. It does not apply to any of the Company's subsidiaries. The respective Boards of Directors of the Company will prepare the requisite delegations of authority for those subsidiaries.

3.2 The persons set out in clause 5 below are granted the power and/or authority to perform their functions and responsibilities subject to the limits of authority defined in clause 5 below, provided that the exercise of such power and/or authority in terms of this delegation is not in conflict with the following:

- PFMA;
- Board Reserved Matters;
- Memorandum of Incorporation;
- Company Strategy;
- Shareholder's Compact;
- the Corporate Plan, Annual Budget and Borrowing Strategy and/or Funding Plan of the Company as approved by the Board from time to time;
- Enterprise Risk Management Framework; and
- Any approvals by the Board and the Minister of Finance for the delegation of the power to borrow money or issue a guarantee, indemnify or security, or enter into any other transaction that binds or may bind the Company to any future financial commitment in terms of section 66 of the PFMA.

3.3 This Delegation supersedes any prior Delegations of Authority Framework and takes effect upon the date determined by the Board of Directors.

3.4 Any proposal for amendments to this Delegation or to the authorities or the authorities delegated in this Delegation must be submitted in writing to the Transnet Company Secretary for consideration and approval by the Board of Directors.

4 Delegating Powers

4.1 A person authorised to exercise any of the authorities set out in clause 5 below ("original bearer of authority") may, in writing, sub-delegate to his/her subordinate ("designate") during his/her temporary absence or for an indefinite period, provided:

4.1.1 the authority is conferred by way of a certificate signed by the original bearer of authority, naming and identifying the designate, and the extent of the authority which is sub-delegated to the designate;

4.1.2 the sub-delegated authority shall only be exercised within the original bearer of authority's respective area of responsibility; and

4.1.3 the sub-delegated authority may be revoked at any time by the original bearer of authority.

4.2 Unless otherwise specifically indicated, approval of any of the matters listed in clause 5 below may be granted by a designate.

4.3 With respect to all matters and authorities specifically listed in clause 5 below, the delegated authority by the GCE to bind the Company is in regard to any business activity or transaction (or a series of related transactions) and is subject to the value in the aggregate of all payments or any consideration made or to be made for any such business activity or transaction(s) being complied with.

4.4 The original bearer of authority or designate must ensure that all the necessary procedures and/or approvals have been fulfilled prior to exercising any of the matters and authorities listed in clause 5 below.

5 Company Authorities

Limits of authority have been delegated by the Board of Directors to the Transnet Group Chief Executive. In the interest of good corporate governance, approval structures have been established in the Company. Requests for approval must follow the approved governing processes and structures for recommendation but the final approval vests with the delegated individual (for example CE, GCFO, GCE) as reflected in the specific delegations set out in this document.

In cases where business requirements necessitate that approval be obtained from the delegated authority without the review and recommendation by the relevant governance structures (CAPIC, Group Exco, etc.) this must be reported to the relevant governance structures immediately thereafter.

The authority to approve the Annual Corporate Plan and Budget of the Company vests with the Board of Directors, provided that it must be submitted to the Shareholder in terms of Section 52 of the PFMA.

5.1 Capital Expenditure

NOTE 1: Capital expenditure may only be authorised if the project has been so approved by CAPIC or the relevant divisional CAPIC in accordance with the limits set out in this Delegation of Authority Framework and capital funds have been allocated in the annual Budget of the Company.

NOTE 2: Capital expenditure may only be authorised if the project has been approved and a warrant number has been issued by the relevant authority. All requests for capital expenditure exceeding the Divisional CE's limit must be submitted to the project administrator at Transnet Financial Planning.

5.1.1 CAPEX in approved budget/Corporate Plan: To commence projects

Approval Authority →	OD Exco/CE excluding TFR	TFR Exco/CE	Transnet CAPIC/GCFO	Group Exco /GCE	Board Acquisitions and Disposals Committee	Board	Shareholder Minister
Operating Divisions	Up to but not exceeding R200m	Up to but not exceeding R400m	Up to but not exceeding R800m	Up to but not exceeding R1000m	Up to but not exceeding R2000m	Up to but not exceeding R3900m	Exceeding R3900m
Approval Authority →	Group Exco Member		Transnet CAPIC/GCFO	Group Exco /GCE	Board Acquisitions and Disposals Committee	Board	Shareholder Minister
Specialist Units	Up to but not exceeding R20m		Up to but not exceeding R600m	Up to but not exceeding R1000m	Up to but not exceeding R2000m	Up to but not exceeding R3900m	Exceeding R3900m

*Refer to Materiality and Significance Framework. If the set limit (R3900m) is exceeded then the Board has to consider and recommend to Shareholder Minister for approval.

- Approval limits are per individual project, reported on a monthly basis to Group Financial Planning.
- Amounts indicated above exclude the capitalisation of borrowing costs.
- All ICT projects requiring Transnet approval must be signed off by the Head: Enterprise Information Management Services.
- Board Acquisitions and Disposals Committee refers to the Acquisitions and Disposal Committee of the Board. Group Exco/GCE to be the final approval gate for all capitalisation of maintenance projects (COPEX) irrespective of the value of the project provided that it has been included in the Corporate Plan.
- Front end loading (FEL) studies for level 1 and 2 may be approved in terms of the operating expenditure DoA, FEL 3 studies may be approved as standalone (excluding execution) per the above table. Please refer to the Accounting Policy for Conceptual, Pre-feasibility and Feasibility Studies when capitalising FEL studies.
- Approvals exceeding R2000m but less than R3900m in ETC are to be reported to the Shareholder Minister

5.1.2 Unforeseen CAPEX (not included in budget/Corporate Plan)

Approval Authority →	OD Exco/CE excluding TFR	TFR Exco/CE	Transnet CAPIC/GCFO	Group Exco/GCE	Board Acquisitions and Disposals Committee	Board	Shareholder Minister
Operating Divisions	Up to but not exceeding R50m	Up to but not exceeding R75m	Up to but not exceeding R400m	Up to but not exceeding R500m	Up to but not exceeding R1000m	Up to but not exceeding R3900m	Exceeding R3900m
Approval Authority →	Group Exco Member		Transnet CAPIC/GCFO	Group Exco/GCE	Board Acquisitions and Disposals Committee	Board	Shareholder Minister
Specialist Units	Up to but not exceeding R20m		Up to but not exceeding R400m	Up to but not exceeding R500m	Up to but not exceeding R1000m	Up to but not exceeding R3900m	Exceeding R3900m

*Refer to Materiality and Significance Framework. If the set limit (currently R3900m) is exceeded then the Board has to consider and recommend to Shareholder Minister for approval.

- All unforeseen Capex approved by Operating Divisions/Specialist Units within their delegated authority, must be reported on a quarterly basis to Group Financial Planning.
- Amounts indicated above exclude the capitalisation of borrowing costs.
- All ICT projects requiring Transnet approval must be signed off by the Head: Enterprise Information Management Services
- Approval limits are per project at Operating Divisional level subject to an aggregate divisional limit of R200m per annum and R400m for TFR on condition that divisions remain within their annual approved capital budget (refer to 5.1.3.1).
- Divisional investment committees are to monitor the limits pertaining to the respective OD and to escalate submissions to Transnet if the respective OD limits are reached.
- If an unforeseen project will result in the divisional 7 year investment plan being increased then Group Exco needs to be approached for approval.

5.1.3 Increase in Estimated Total Cost (ETC) of Existing/Approved Projects

Approval Authority →	OD Exco/CE excluding TFR	TFR Exco/CE	Transnet CAPIC/GCFO	Group Exco/GCE	Board Acquisitions and Disposals Committee	Board
Operating Divisions	ETC may be increased to a maximum of R200m, increases beyond this amount may only be approved at Transnet Level	ETC may be increased to a maximum of R400m, increases beyond this amount may only be approved at Transnet Level	Up to but not exceeding R800m	Up to but not exceeding R1000m	Up to but not exceeding R1400m	Exceeding R1400m
Approval Authority →	Group Exco Member		Transnet CAPIC/GCFO	Group Exco/GCE	Board Acquisitions and Disposals Committee	Board
Specialist Units	ETC may be increased to a maximum of R20m, increases beyond this amount may only be approved at Transnet Level		Up to but not exceeding R800m	Up to but not exceeding R1000m	Up to but not exceeding R1400m	Exceeding R1400m

- Increase in ETC of projects already approved by the Shareholder Minister must be reported to the Shareholder Minister if the increase is in excess of 15%.

- All ICT projects requiring Transnet approval must be signed off by the Head: Information Management Services.
- All cost increases in excess of 25% of the approved budget for a project must be reported to Transnet CAPIC/GCFO.
- Amounts indicated above exclude the capitalisation of borrowing costs. Increases in CTC of a project solely due to the capitalisation of borrowing costs may be approved by the OD Exco/E. Project costs and capitalisation of borrowing costs are to be managed separately and may not be expended on projects interchangeably.

5.1.3.1 Any increase in excess of the annual approved capital investment budget must be submitted to Transnet CAPIC/GCFO for approval.

5.1.4 Asset Write-off/Scrapping: Movable Assets

Approval Authority →	OD Exco/CE excluding TFR	TFR Exco/CE	Transnet Capic/GCFO	Group Exco/GCE	Board Acquisitions and Disposals Committee	Board
Operating Divisions	Up to but not exceeding R10m	Up to but not exceeding R50m	Up to but not exceeding R100m	Up to but not exceeding R250m	Up to but not exceeding R100m	Exceeding R700m
Approval Authority →	Group Exco Member		Transnet Capic/GCFO	Group Exco/GCE	Board Acquisitions and Disposals Committee	Board
Specialist Units	Up to but not exceeding R5m		Up to but not exceeding R100m	Up to but not exceeding R250m	Up to but not exceeding R100m	Exceeding R700m

*Refer to Materiality and Significance Framework. If the set limit (currently R3900m) is exceeded then the Board has to consider and recommend to Shareholder Minister for approval.

- The above amounts refer to net book value and are a cumulative annual limit. Write-offs above R10m and above R50m in the case of TFR must be reported to Transnet CAPIC/GCFO quarterly.
- Divisional investment committees are to monitor the limits pertaining to the respective OD and to escalate submissions to Transnet if the respective OD limits are reached.

5.1.5 Asset write-off/Scrapping/Demolition of Immovable Assets (excluding land) e.g. building structures

Approval Authority →	OD Exco/CE excluding TFR	TFR Exco/CE	Transnet Capic/GCFO	Group Exco/GCE	Board Acquisitions and Disposals Committee	Board*
Operating Divisions	Up to but not exceeding R10m	Up to but not exceeding R50m	Up to but not exceeding R150m	Up to but not exceeding R250m	Up to but not exceeding R100m	Exceeding R300m
Approval Authority →	Group Exco Member		Transnet Capic/GCFO	Group Exco/GCE	Board Acquisitions and Disposals Committee	Board*
Specialist Units	Up to but not exceeding R5m		Up to but not exceeding R100m	Up to but not exceeding R250m	Up to but not exceeding R100m	Exceeding R300m

*Refer to Materiality and Significance Framework. If the set limit (currently R3900m) is exceeded then the Board to consider and recommend to Shareholder Minister for approval.

- The above amounts refer to an estimated market value at that point in time and are a cumulative annual limit.
- Divisional investment committees are to monitor the limits pertaining to the respective OD and to escalate submissions to Transnet if the respective OD limits are reached.
- Write-offs below R10m and below R50m in the case of TFR must be reported to Transnet CAPIC/GCFO quarterly.

5.1.6 Disposal of Movable Assets (excluding sale of scrap)

Approval Authority →	OD Exco/CE*	Transnet Capic/GCFO	Group Exco/GCE	Board Acquisitions and Disposals Committee	Board#
Operating Divisions	Up to but not exceeding R50m	Up to but not exceeding R100m	Up to but not exceeding R250m	Up to but not exceeding R700m	Exceeding R700m
Approval Authority →	Group Exco Member	Transnet Capic/GCFO	Group Exco/GCE	Board Acquisitions and Disposals Committee	Board#
Specialist Units	Up to but not exceeding R5m	Up to but not exceeding R100m	Up to but not exceeding R250m	Up to but not exceeding R700m	Exceeding R700m

*The above amounts refer to an estimated market value and are subject to a cumulative annual limit of R200m. For sale of scrap please refer to 5.5.1.

- Divisional investment committees are to monitor the limits pertaining to their OD and to escalate submissions to Transnet once the respective OD limits are reached.
- #Refer to Materiality and Significance Framework. If the set limit (currently R3900m) is exceeded then the Board to consider and recommend to Shareholder Minister for approval.

5.1.7 Management's intervention in addressing non-compliance with regard to the approval of capital projects

Approval Authority →	OD CE	GCFO	GCE
Operating Divisions	Nil	Nil	Unlimited
Approval Authority →	Group Exco Member	GCFO	GCE
Specialist Units	Nil	Nil	Unlimited

- Together with the application for approval of non-compliance, the requester must advise on the steps/corrective measures taken to avoid a repeat of the transgression within 30 days of the transgression being discovered.
- If the approval of non-compliance results in the annual divisional budget being exceeded, then the request must be submitted to Transnet CAPIC for approval (refer to 5.1.3.1).

5.1.8 Alienation/acquisition of immovable property (land and servitudes)

Approval Authority →	OD Exco/CE excluding TFR	TFR Exco/CE	Transnet Capic/GCFO	Group Exco/GC	Board Acquisitions and Disposals Committee	Board*
Operating Divisions	Up to but not exceeding R10m	Up to but not exceeding R50m	Up to but not exceeding R200m	Up to but not exceeding R350m	Up to but not exceeding R500m	Exceeding R500m
Approval Authority →	Group Exco Member		Transnet Capic/GCFO	Group Exco/GC	Board Acquisitions and Disposals Committee	Board*
Specialist Units	Up to but not exceeding R1m		Up to but not exceeding R200m	Up to but not exceeding R350m	Up to but not exceeding R500m	Exceeding R500m

*Refer to Materiality and Significance Framework. If the set limit (R3 900m) is exceeded then the Board to consider and recommend to Shareholder Minister for approval.

- Approval limits are per transaction and are with reference to market value
- All transactions entered into in terms of the above must be reported to Transnet CAPIC/GCFO
- Only immovable property on the non-core list, may be disposed of (refer to 5.1.8.1), such disposal may only be done through the Specialist Unit, Transnet Property.
- Amounts indicated above exclude the capitalisation of borrowing costs.

5.1.8.1 Newly Identified properties to be included on the non-core list (Book value of individual properties)

GE: Transnet Property	GCFO	GCE	Board Acquisitions and Disposals Committee	Board
Up to but not exceeding R50m	Up to but not exceeding R100m*	Up to but not exceeding R200m	Up to but not exceeding R300m	Exceeding R300m

* These disposals must be reported to Transnet Capic/Group Exco/Board Acquisitions and Disposals Committee/Transnet Board.

5.2 Treasury

Treasury Policies and Strategies

Approval Authority →	Group Treasurer	GCFO	GCE	Audit Committee	Board
Financial Risk Management Framework	Recommend	Recommend	Recommend	Recommend	Approve

NOTE 1: In respect of all transactions set out in paragraphs 5.2.1 to and including 5.2.10, the necessary legal advice must be obtained where applicable and persons executing such transactions must comply fully with the applicable Enterprise Risk Management Framework and any revised limits determined in terms of such framework and the provisions of the PFMA and, when in doubt, persons must consult the Treasury Compliance Officers and Transnet Finance or Transnet Legal Services.

NOTE 2: Only approved financial instruments as approved in terms of the applicable Treasury Financial Risk Management Framework approved by the Board and subject to such limits determined in accordance with such framework may be utilised in the Treasury operations.

5.2.1 InterTransnet Debt (Treasury inter Transnet debt write-off)

Approval Authority →	Deputy Treasurer: Back Office	Group Treasurer	GCFO	GCE
Operating Divisions	Up to but not exceeding R5m	Up to but not exceeding R10m	Up to but not exceeding R20m	Exceeding R20m
Specialist Units	Up to but not exceeding R2m	Up to but not exceeding R10m	Up to but not exceeding R20m	Exceeding R20m

All breaches of the above limits to be reported to the Audit Committee.

External debt write-off on financial instruments due to counter-party liquidation may only be approved by the GCE.

5.2.2 Maximum annual loss on all repo activities (Realised and unrealised)

Approval Authority →	Traders and Chief Trader	Deputy Treasurer: Front Office	Group Treasurer	GCFO	GCE
Group	Up to but not exceeding R1m	Up to but not exceeding R1.5m	Up to but not exceeding R2.5m	Up to but not exceeding R5m	Exceeding R5m

All breaches of the above limits to be reported to the Audit Committee

Note: The above limits are aggregate desk limits

5.2.3 Buy and sellback and sell and buyback transactions (Expressed in nominal terms)

Approval Authority →	Traders and Senior Traders	Chief Trader	Deputy Treasurer: Front Office	Group Treasurer	GCFO
Group	Up to but not exceeding R250m	Up to but not exceeding R500m	Up to but not exceeding R750m	Up to but not exceeding R1 000m	Exceeding R1 000m
Duration Limit	2 weeks	3 weeks	1 month	1 month	> 1 month

All breaches of the above limits (amount or tenure) to be reported to the Audit Committee.
Approval limits are per transaction/event

5.2.4 Foreign Exchange Spot Transactions Operational payments, not related to hedging, early take ups or extensions (expressed in USD equivalent)

Approval Authority →	Traders	Chief Trader	Deputy Treasurer: Front Office	Group Treasurer	GCFO
Group	Up to but not exceeding an aggregate equivalent of \$20m per day (desk total)	Up to but not exceeding an aggregate equivalent of \$40m per day (desk total)	Up to but not exceeding an aggregate equivalent of \$100m per day (desk total)	Up to but not exceeding an aggregate of \$250m per day (desk total)	Exceeding a daily equivalent of \$250m (desk total)

All breaches of the above limits to be reported to the Audit Committee.

5.2.5 Foreign Exchange Hedging Transactions New hedges or re-alignment of existing hedges (expressed in USD equivalent)

Approval Authority →	Deputy Treasurer Middle Office	Group Treasurer	GCFO
Group	Submissions not exceeding \$10m	Submissions not exceeding \$100m	Submissions exceeding \$100m
Tenure	Not exceeding 18 Months	Not exceeding 3 years	Exceeding 3 years

All breaches of the above limits (amount or tenure) to be reported to the Audit Committee.

5.2.6 Foreign Exchange Hedging Transactions: Extensions, early take ups (expressed in USD equivalent)

Approval Authority →	Traders	Chief Trader	Deputy Treasurer: Front Office	Group Treasurer
Group	Not exceeding an aggregate equivalent of \$20m per day (desk total)	Not exceeding an aggregate equivalent of \$50m per day (desk total)	Not exceeding an aggregate equivalent of \$100m per day (desk total)	Exceeding an aggregate of \$100m per day (desk total)

All breaches of the above limits to be reported to the Audit Committee.

Note: Where no specific limit is mentioned, the FRMF policy on foreign exchange rate risk will apply.

5.2.7 Approval of FX hedges to be hedged by external suppliers on their balance sheet for goods/services to be delivered to Transnet in respect of Rand agreements involving foreign content

Approval Authority →	Traders	Chief Trader	Deputy Treasurer: Front Office	Group Treasurer
Group	Not exceeding \$10m	Not exceeding \$25m	Not exceeding \$50m	Exceeding \$50m

All breaches of the above limits to be reported to the Audit Committee for noting.

The above limits are applicable per agreement.

Note: The Business Units must always obtain quotes on FX forward rates and liaise with the Treasury Trading desk that will verify the rates to ensure it is market related. The Business Units can only enter into the FX hedges with the supplier once the rates are accepted by the Treasury Trading desk via e mail. Once the above approvals are obtained, the Treasury Traders will provide sign off on the rate acceptance.

5.2.8 Interest Rate Risk Hedging

Approval Authority →	Notional Amounts	Group Treasurer	GCFO
Group	Notional amount of hedge expressed in USD (FX loans and leases)	Up to but not exceeding \$100m	Exceeding \$100m
	Notional amount of hedge expressed in ZAR (ZAR loans and leases)	Up to but not exceeding R1 000m	Exceeding R1 000m
Tenure		Not exceeding 5 years	Exceeding 5 years

All breaches of the above limits to be reported to the Audit Committee.

Note: Where no specific limit is mentioned, the FRMF policy on interest rate risk will apply.

The above limits are applicable per hedging submission.

5.2.9 Hedging of fuel risk exposures (commodity risk)

Approval Authority →	Group Treasurer	GCFO
Tenure	Not exceeding 6 months	Not Exceeding 18 months
Notional hedge expressed in RAND	Not exceeding R250m	Exceeding R250m

All breaches of the above limits to be reported to the Audit Committee.

Note: The maximum hedge should not exceed 75% of annual budgeted consumption inclusive of energy by income.

The above limits are applicable per hedging submission.

Note: Where no specific limit is mentioned, the FRMF policy on commodity risk will apply.

5.2.10 Granting of InterTransnet Loans (Interest-bearing only) to divisions/subsidiaries

Approval Authority →	Deputy Treasurer: Front Office	Group Treasurer	GCFO	
Operating Division	Up to but not exceeding R750m	Up to but not exceeding R1 000m	Exceeding R1 000m	
Subsidiary	Up to but not exceeding R10m	Up to but not exceeding R25m	Exceeding R25m	

These above limits are cumulative per financial year.

5.2.11 Letters of Credit

Approval Authority →	Deputy Treasurer: Front Office	Group Treasurer	GCFO	GCE
Transnet	Up to but not exceeding R100m	Up to but not exceeding R200m	Up to but not exceeding R300m	Exceeding R300m

All breaches of the above limits to be reported to the Audit Committee.

The above limits are per letter of credit.

Funding Portfolio

NOTE 1: Only derivatives approved in terms of the applicable Financial Risk Management Framework and subject to such limits determined in accordance with such framework may be utilised to hedge any risks.

NOTE 2: The total nominal funding amount per financial year in respect of Bonds and any other funding transactions shall be as determined per Board approved/Board amended Funding/Borrowing Plan.

NOTE 3: A. Signatories mean, subject to such approvals by the Board and the Minister of Finance in terms of section 66 of the PFMA as may be applicable, the Group Treasurer and any other officer so designated in writing by the GCFO.

B. Signatories mean, subject to such approvals by the Board and the Minister of Finance in terms of section 66 of the PFMA as may be applicable, persons so designated in writing by the Group Treasurer.

5.2.12 Loan/Funding documentation approvals per instrument per financial year

Approval Authority →	Group Treasurer	GCFO	GCE
Tapping of bonds	-	Not exceeding R5bn (Electronic signatures are utilised on pricing supplements as per standing approval)	Exceeding R5bn (Electronic signatures are utilised on pricing supplements as per standing approval)
Bank Loans (including overnight facilities)	Up to but not exceeding R1bn	Up to but not exceeding R2.5bn	Exceeding R2.5bn
Commercial Paper	-	Not exceeding R5bn (Electronic signatures are utilised on pricing supplements as per standing approval)	Exceeding R5bn (Electronic signatures are utilised on pricing supplements as per standing approval)
ECA supported funding	Up to but not exceeding R250m	Up to but not exceeding R1bn	Exceeding R1bn
New bond issues (in approved funding plan)	-	Up to but not exceeding R1bn	Exceeding R1bn
Development funding	Up to but not exceeding R250m	Up to but not exceeding R1bn	Exceeding R1bn
Foreign funding	-	Up to but not exceeding R1bn	Exceeding R1bn
Any other source of funding not stipulated above	-	Up to but not exceeding R1bn	Exceeding R1bn
The above is further subjected to the following annual aggregate limit			
	R1.5bn	R10bn	Limited to the annual Board approved borrowing plan *

The above is subject to the following:

- Be executed in accordance with the approved strategy as incorporated in the Corporate Plan (including any approved amendments).
- Be within the laid down cash holding limits of Transnet.
- All breaches of the above limits to be reported to the Audit Committee.
- * The GCE can increase funding requirements up to 10% of Board approved borrowing plan and needs to be ratified by Board.

5.2.13 Signing of legally binding agreements in respect of Treasury related activities (including ISDA, ISMA agreements and Bank facilities)

Only the GCE and/or the GCFO have authority to sign. The Group Treasurer may sign with specified delegation of authority.

5.2.14 Counterparty Limits: Setting of Limits

Approval Level			
Group Treasurer	GCFO	GCE	Board Audit Committee Counter Party Risk Limits ¹
Price Risk Limits ≤ R25m ³	Price Risk Limits ≤ R250 m ³	Price Risk Limits ≤ R500 m ³	
Recommendation of Bond Issue and Bond Issuer Limits	Approval of Bond Issue and Bond Issuer Limits		
Recommendation of Settlement Limits ²	Approval of Settlement Limits ²		
Recommendation of limits where Transnet is exposed to	Approval of limits where Transnet is exposed to		

counterparty issuer risk as a result of advance payment guarantees, performance bonds, retention bonds etc. issued under supplier agreement/contracts ³	counterparty issuer risk as a result of advance payment guarantees, performance bonds, retention bonds etc. issued under supplier agreement/contracts ³		
--	--	--	--

Note: Where no specific limit is mentioned, the FRMF policy on Counter Party Risk will apply.

Note¹: The approved counterparty risk may be utilised for price risk, investment risk as well as issuer risk (in respect of advance payment guarantees, performance bonds, retention bonds etc.) as long as the sum of the individual exposures remains within the overall Audit Committee approved risk limit.

Note²: Settlement risk limits are set at 1.5 times the approved counterparty limit as stipulated in the FRMF and will be approved with the counterparty limit.

Note³: In respect of counterparties not approved by Audit Committee

5.2.15 Appointment of Commercial Bankers and the Opening of Bank Accounts

	Group Treasurer	GCFO
All OD/SU	Recommendation to open bank accounts and the appointment of bankers.	Approval of new bank accounts and the appointment of bankers and the approval of all documentation relating to such accounts, including electronic banking documentation.
Process to follow	There is no delegation to any OD/SU to appoint commercial bankers or to open bank accounts, domestically or internationally; only the GCFO may make such appointments.	

5.2.16 Establishing financial policy with regard to insurance

Authority Level	GCFO after consulting with Chief Risk Officer. (Insurance role moved to Group Treasury according to the PWC Benchmarking Exercise Report)
Board Risk Committee to approve.	

5.2.17 Authorisation of cheque signatories, Test keys and EFT's

Signing Cheques	Two A signatories or one A and one B signatory
Signing Test keys for paying/receiving	Two A signatories or one A and one B signatory
Electronic transfer of funds	Two A signatories or one A and one B signatory

5.2.18 Payment instructions and confirmation notes

Signing payment instructions/ receipts/ settlement instructions:	Two A signatories or one A and one B signatory
Signing confirmation notes in respect of approved financial transactions executed:	One A signatory

5.2.19 Approval of Annual Borrowing Plan

Group	Board
Annual borrowing plan to be recommended by the Group Treasurer, GCFO and the Audit Committee for approval by the Board.	Approve the annual borrowing plan for execution by Treasury

5.2.20 Authorisation to enter into binding transactions

Group	Group Treasurer
	Authorise Treasury employees to enter into binding financial transactions on behalf of the Transnet

5.2.21 Issuing of Guarantees (subject to requirements of section 66 of the PFMA)

	Group Treasurer	GCFO	GCE	Board
Transnet	Up to but not exceeding R25m	Up to but not exceeding R200m	Up to but not exceeding R500m	Exceeding R500m

All breaches of the above limits to be reported to the Audit Committee.
Limits are per transaction.

5.2.22 Issuing Letters of Support

	Board
Group	Only the Board of Directors has authority to issue letters of support

5.2.23 Issuing of security per transaction (subject to section 66 of the PFMA)

	Group Treasurer	GCFO	GCE	Board
Group	Up to but not exceeding R250m	Up to but not exceeding R500m	Up to but not exceeding R1 000m	Exceeding R1 000m

The above limits are per transaction. All breaches of the above limits to be reported to the Audit Committee.

5.2.24 Advance Payment Guarantees (APG) and Performance Bonds (PB) in Supplier Agreements

	OD CFO	Treasury	Group CFO
Notional Value	Up to but not exceeding R25m	Up to but not exceeding R75m	Exceeding R75m
Issuer Acceptance		All issuers	All Issuers

- The limits are cumulative per annum
- The OD CFO is required to obtain legal acceptance from the Divisional Legal Department and Group Legal in respect of all APGs and PBs
- APGs and PBs should be constructed in a manner that they become payable on demand
- The minimum long term credit rating requirements may not be less than
 - A- from Fitch Ratings or Standard and Poors or
 - A3 from Moody's
 - Issuers not rated will not be accepted
 - Group Treasury may also consider an equivalent rating from other recognised rating agencies as contained in the FRMF

5.3 Finance

5.3.1 Bad Debt Write-off

Trade Debtors

Approval Authority →	OD Exco/CE* excluding TFR	TFR Exco/CE	GCFO	Group Exco/ GCE	Audit Committee	Board
Operating Divisions	Up to but not exceeding R10m	Up to but not exceeding R20m	Up to but not exceeding R100m	Up to but not exceeding R250m	Up to but not exceeding R500m	Exceeding R500m
Approval Authority →	Group Exco Member		Transnet Capex/GCFO	Group Exco/ GCE	Board Audit Committee	Board*
Specialist Units	Up to but not exceeding R5m		Up to but not exceeding R100m	Up to but not exceeding R250m	Up to but not exceeding R500m	Exceeding R500m

*Approval limits are R10m and R20m for TFR per transaction subject to an annual cumulative limit of R50m and R100m for TFR. Specialist unit limit is R5m cumulative per annum.

5.3.2 Setting of limits for credit facilities (Trade debtors)

Approval Authority →	Divisional CFO excluding TFR	OD Exco/CE* excluding TFR	TFR CFO	TFR CE	GCFO	GCE
Operating Divisions	Up to but not exceeding R10m	Up to but not exceeding R20m	Up to but not exceeding R100m	Up to but not exceeding R150m	Up to but not exceeding R300m	Exceeding R300m
Specialist Units	Up to but not exceeding R5m	Up to but not exceeding R10m	n/a	n/a	Up to but not exceeding R300m	Exceeding R300m

Limits are per individual customer/client. Credit limits are to be reviewed on an annual basis. The limits are applicable subject to the division following the credit evaluation process. Internal limits between ODs are not applicable.

5.3.3 Issuing of Credit notes

Approval Authority →	Divisional CFO	OD Exco *	GCFO	GCE
Operating Divisions	Up to but not exceeding R10m	Up to but not exceeding R20m	Up to but not exceeding R300m	Exceeding R300m
Specialist Units	Up to but not exceeding R5m	Up to but not exceeding R10m	Up to but not exceeding R300m	Exceeding R300m

Limits are per individual credit note and relates to external parties. Issuing of credit notes regarding Internal/Interdivisional transactions must be within the control of the divisional CFOs.

* Excludes the product reconciliation process at Transnet Pipelines where the Divisional CFO and Divisional COO approve transactions arising out of the product reconciliation process.

5.3.4 Exceeding the operational expenditure budget in total for the year (Operating Divisions/Specialist Units)

The Board of Directors to be informed at every meeting of the financial status and latest estimates of the Company

Approval Authority →	OD CE*	GCFO	GCE	Board
Operating Divisions	Up to but not exceeding 5% of approved budget	Up to but not exceeding 7.5% of approved budget	Exceeding 7.5% of approved budget to a maximum of 10%	>10%
Specialist Units	Up to but not exceeding 5% of approved budget	Up to but not exceeding 7.5% of approved budget	Exceeding 7.5% of approved budget to a maximum of 10%	> 10%

* To be reported quarterly to the GCFO and GCE together with mitigating action plans to ensure that key financial metrics are maintained or met.

Delegations for operational transactions that are too detailed to include in the Transnet Delegations of Authority Framework will be determined and applied in terms of the details set out by the CE/GE in conjunction with the CFO of the respective OD/SU.

5.4 Procurement

All procurement transactions (including reverse logistics – selling of goods) must fully comply with the approved Transnet Supply Chain Policy and Procurement Procedures Manual (PPM), as well as the Transnet Capital Projects Construction Procurement Policy, Processes, Procedures and Methods (CPPPPM) where applicable – Any commercial agreement for the purchase of goods or services must be signed off by an authorised employee of Supply Chain Management (Procurement) prior to signing of the contract to indicate that all the steps as per clause 5.5 below have been followed and that all procurement related governance has been adhered to.

5.4.1 Appointment of Consultants

Approval Authority →	OD CE*	GCFO	Group Exco/ GCE	Board Acquisitions and Disposals Committee	Board
Operating Divisions	Up to but not exceeding R25m	Up to but not exceeding R50m	Up to but not exceeding R200m	Up to but not exceeding R300m	Exceeding R300m
Approval Authority →	Group Exco Members	GCFO	GCE	Board Acquisitions and Disposals Committee	Board
Specialist Units	R10m	Up to but not exceeding R50m	Up to but not exceeding R200m	Up to but not exceeding R300m	Exceeding R300m

*Approval limits are cumulative per annum. Excludes appointment of consultants to perform feasibility studies for capital projects.

5.4.2 Approval to approach the market for Open Tenders

Approval Authority →	OD CE and TCP GE	GCSCO	GCFO	GCE	Board Acquisitions and Disposals Committee	Board
Operating Divisions	Up to but not exceeding R450m	Up to but not exceeding R525m	Up to but not exceeding R750m	Up to but not exceeding R1000m	Up to but not exceeding R2000m	Exceeding R2000m
Approval Authority →	Specialist Unit HOD (budget owner)	GCSCO	GCFO	GCE	Board Acquisitions and Disposals Committee	Board
Specialist Units	Up to but not exceeding R75m	Up to but not exceeding R525m	Up to but not exceeding R750m	Up to but not exceeding R1000m	Up to but not exceeding R2000m	Exceeding R2000m

*The OD CE may only delegate these powers to go to market with Open Tenders to Heads of Procurement. The Requisition (or Request to Purchase) issued to Procurement must be approved by the OD's Budget Owner or his duly authorised delegate. Such approved requisition or Request to Purchase will signify that the acquisition has been approved and that the necessary funds are available.

Submissions requiring approval of the GCSCO or higher must also include a procurement strategy document, signed off by the person with the delegated authority.

The Requisition (or Request to Purchase) issued to Procurement must be approved by the Specialist Unit's HOD or his duly authorised delegate. Such approved requisition or Request to Purchase will signify that the acquisition has been approved and that the necessary funds are available.

Submissions requiring approval of the GCSCO or higher must also include a procurement strategy document, signed off by the person with the delegated authority.

5.4.3 Approval to approach the market for confined tenders: Confinement of tenders (not subject to the quotation system)

Approval Authority →	OD CE and TCP GE	GCSCO	GCFO	GCE	Board Acquisitions and Disposals Committee	Board
Operating Divisions	Nil	Nil	Nil	Up to but not exceeding R250m	Up to but not exceeding R1000m	Exceeding R1000m
Approval Authority →	Group Exco Members	GCSCO	GCFO	GCE	Board Acquisitions and Disposals Committee	Board
Specialist Units	Nil	Nil	Nil	Up to but not exceeding R250m	Up to but not exceeding R1000m	Exceeding R1000m

The limits are per transaction/confinement. All requests for approval of confinements must be made by the OD CE/Group Exco Member to the GCE. The OD Specialist Unit shall prepare the submission in collaboration with Transnet Integrated supply chain management (ISC M) to ensure that the rules for confinement are met.

In instances where confinement is confidential the GCE may approve such confinement without the confinement request being routed via any other authority.

5.4.4. Management's intervention to address non-compliance with procurement policies and procedures

Approval Authority →	OD CE and TCP GE	GCFO	GCE	Board Acquisitions and Disposals Committee	Board
Operating Divisions	Nil	Nil	Up to but not exceeding R50m	Up to but not exceeding R1000m	Exceeding R1000m
Approval Authority →	Group Exco Members	GCFO	GCE	Board Acquisitions and Disposals Committee	Board
SU	Nil	Nil	Up to but not exceeding R50m	Up to but not exceeding R1000m	Exceeding R1000m

All requests for approval of non-compliance must be made by the OD CE/Group Exco member to the GCE. The OD/Specialist Unit shall prepare the submission in collaboration with Transnet ISCM to ensure that the rules for the addressing of non-compliance are met. Together with the application for approval of non-compliance, the requestor must advise on the steps/corrective measures taken to avoid a repeat of the transgression within 30 days of the transgression being discovered.

5.4.5 Establishing Procurement policy (opex, capex and disposals)

Authority Level	Board Acquisitions and Disposals Committee
-----------------	--

5.4.6 Procurement process approval

NOTE: Each OD/SU will have its own main Acquisition Council (AC) which will consider and approve all procurement processes, as well as the disposal of scrap, falling within its jurisdiction from R2 million, but not exceeding R500 million. This is subject to the discretion of the OD/SU CE to lower the R2 million threshold, or to create Secondary Regional/Local Acquisition Councils. The OD/SU CE may also delegate certain process approval powers to the relevant Manager for matters below the Secondary Acquisition Councils' delegation. Transactions exceeding the OD/SU CE's Delegated Powers will also be considered by the OD's main AC for recommendation to the higher approval body (e.g. the BADC). If it concurs with the recommendation, the matter will be referred to the relevant person/structure with the delegation of authority for approval. Should any process approval body not agree with the recommendation, the matter must be referred back to the recommending officer(s) for reconsideration or re-motivation.

Approval Authority →	OD and TCP (Secondary and/or Main) Acquisition Councils	Group Chief Supply Chain Officer	GCFO	GCE	Board Acquisitions and Disposals Committee	Board
Operating Divisions including TCP	Up to but not exceeding R450m	Up to but not exceeding R525m	Up to but not exceeding R750m	Up to but not exceeding R1000m	Up to but not exceeding R2000m	Exceeding R2000m
Approval Authority	Specialist Unit (Secondary and/or Main) Acquisition Councils	Group Chief Supply Chain Officer	GCFO	GCE	Board Acquisitions and Disposals Committee	Board
Specialist Units excluding TCP	Up to but not exceeding R5m subject to the contract period not exceeding 5 years	Up to but not exceeding R525m	Up to but not exceeding R750m	Up to but not exceeding R1000m	Up to but not exceeding R2000m	Exceeding R2000m

5.5 Contracts/Agreements

- NOTE 1:** Any person who has been authorised to execute any legal documents including deeds, leases, assignments, contracts, applications, financial instruments, external submissions to or on behalf of Transnet and/or its OD or any other legal documents may only do so with the prior advice of the relevant Legal Services department as set out in the Transnet Legal Policy.
- NOTE 2:** Unless otherwise indicated in the authorities below, the authority to execute a contract or other binding document carries with it like authority to cancel or modify it, but only with the prior written advice of the relevant Legal Services department as set out in the Transnet Legal Policy and if it relates to Procurement Contracts, the approval of the relevant Acquisition Council (as per the Procurement Procedures Manual - PPM).
- NOTE 3:** Any person authorised to enter into an agreement/contract or other binding document involving capital expenditure must have obtained prior financial approval in terms of the procedures set out in 5.1 prior to entering into such a CAPEX contract.
- NOTE 4:** Approval limits are per transaction/contract.
- NOTE 5:** The authority to execute a contract or other binding document carries with it the understanding that an authorised payment required thereby will be made once proof of receipt has been obtained. No person is authorised to obligate the company to an amount greater than such payment or create more onerous obligations than those contained in the contract or other binding document. Increases to the original scope of the binding document must be supported by authorised amendment.
- NOTE 6:** In terms of the PPM all amendments to contracts must be approved by the Manager (i.e. a person with the relevant delegated powers) who originally signed the initial contract as well as by the relevant Acquisition Council where the amendment exceeds 10% of the original contract value. For higher value contracts (i.e. those signed by the operating division's CE, the GCFO or GCE), it is advisable to obtain a written mandate from that official empowering a delegate to administer such contract and to effect changes to such contract not exceeding 10% of the initially approved contract value.

5.5.1 Enter into and signing of Contracts/Agreements and award of business: (including the sale of scrap)

Approval Authority →	OD CE and TCP GE		Group Chief Supply Chain Officer	GCFO	GCE	Board Acquisitions and Disposals Committee	Board
Operating Divisions	Up to but not exceeding R450m		Up to but not exceeding R525m	Up to but not exceeding R750m	Up to but not exceeding R1000m	Up to but not exceeding R2000m	Exceeding R2000m
Approval Authority →	Specialist Unit CE	Group Exco members	Group Chief Supply Chain Officer	GCFO	GCE	Board Acquisitions and Disposals Committee	Board
Specialist units excluding TCP	Up to but not exceeding R5m subject to the contract period not exceeding 5 years	Up to but not exceeding R30m	Up to but not exceeding R525m,	Up to but not exceeding R750m	Up to but not exceeding R1000m	Up to but not exceeding R2000m	Exceeding R2000m

Values are per contract for the full term of the contract (Total value of contract excluding VAT) on condition that approval has been obtained for the related expenditure over the period. Please refer to the conditions stipulated below. Payments: Once the decision to contract has been issued, contract execution will be governed by the Operating Divisions, including the payment process provided that the contract amount is not exceeded.

5.5.1.1 Contracts > R500m, Including Transnet's top 60% value opex items and capex contracts

Prior to entering into a high value (greater than R500m) / highly complex contract (especially for Transnet's top 60% value opex items as dealt with by Transnet ISCM Strategic Sourcing commodity teams), any authorised official must first liaise with a multi-disciplinary team of experts at Transnet Corporate Office, who should each sign off on the following parts of any agreement/contract or other binding document:

- Group Legal Services - entire document
- Transnet GCFO to sign-off after sign-off from the finance departments (Group Finance/Reporting, Financial Planning, Tax and Treasury).
- Contracts less than R450m within the OD's limit of authority, require a similar process as set out above to be followed by the relevant OD.

5.5.1.2 International Contracts/Agreements (all contracts)

- Approval to enter into an agreement/contract or other binding document involving foreign currency exposure (including *international agreements*) may not be sub-delegated lower than to the Chief Procurement Officer (CPO) of an OD. Approval of the divisional CFO is required to enter into the contracts that may result in foreign currency exposure.
- The duly authorised official must obtain prior written approval in respect of FX agreements above R50m from Group Legal, Group Treasury, Group Tax and Group Reporting, both where the contract will be concluded in foreign currency and especially in such cases where foreign contracts will be concluded in South African Rand, as this may expose Transnet to an embedded derivative. All FX agreements above R100m must apart from the above also obtain written approval from the GCFO.

5.5.2 Enter into and Signing of Revenue Contracts/Agreements and authority to Issue binding quotes locally: (excluding lease contracts and the sale of scrap)

Approval Authority →	OD CE Limit per Annum per contract up to but not exceeding 5 years	GCFO Limit per Annum per contract up to but not exceeding 5 years	GCE Limit per Annum per contract up to but not exceeding 5 years	Board Acquisitions and Disposals Committee Limit per Annum per contract and contracts exceeding 5 years	Board Limit per Annum per contract and contracts exceeding 5 years
Operating Divisions	Up to but not exceeding R300m	Up to but not exceeding R500m	Up to but not exceeding R1000m	Up to but not exceeding R3000m	Exceeding R3000m
Approval Authority →	Specialist Unit CE Limit per Annum per contract up to but not exceeding 5 years	GCFO Limit per Annum per contract up to but not exceeding 5 years	GCE Limit per Annum per contract up to but not exceeding 5 years	Board Acquisitions and Disposals Committee Limit per Annum per contract and contracts exceeding 5 years	Board Limit per Annum per contract and contracts exceeding 5 years
Specialist units	Up to but not exceeding R10m	Up to but not exceeding R500m	Up to but not exceeding R1000m	Up to but not exceeding R3000m	Exceeding R3000m

- Transnet integrated customer agreements where a service incorporates more than one division must be signed off by the GCFO and the Group Executive: Commercial in addition to sign off by the OD CE's, up to but not exceeding revenue of R500m per annum not exceeding 5 years.

- If the contract period is below 12 months the contract value is to be annualised and the delegated authority required to approve the transaction will be determined by the annualised amount.
- All limits indicated above are exclusive of VAT
- Board approval is required if ANY one of the following limits are exceeded:
 - The contract period exceeds 5 years
 - The annual value of the contract exceeds R3000m.
 - The total value of the contract over the contract life exceeds R15000m.

5.5.3 Enter into and Signing of Revenue Contracts/Agreements and authority to issue binding quotes internationally including cross border contracts: (excluding lease contracts and the sale of scrap)

Approval Authority →	GCFO Limit per Annum per contract up to but not exceeding 5 years	GCE Limit per Annum per contract up to but not exceeding 5 years	Board Acquisitions and Disposals Committee Limit per Annum per contract and contracts exceeding 5 years	Board Limit per Annum per contract and contracts exceeding 5 years
Operating Divisions	Up to but not exceeding R500m	Up to but not exceeding R1000m	Up to but not exceeding R3000m	Exceeding R3000m
Approval Authority →	GCFO Limit per Annum per contract up to but not exceeding 5 years	GCE Limit per Annum per contract up to but not exceeding 5 years	Board Acquisitions and Disposals Committee Limit per Annum per contract and contracts exceeding 5 years	Board Limit per Annum per contract and contracts exceeding 5 years
Specialist units	Up to but not exceeding R500m	Up to but not exceeding R1000m	Up to but not exceeding R3000m	Exceeding R3000m

5.5.4 Internal Contracts

Contracts between divisions such as service level agreements and project specific agreements may be entered into between OD CE's.

5.5.5 Property and Lease Agreements

All external Property Lease Agreements (excluding vacant land) as well as other expenditure leases.

Approval Authority →	OD CE and TCP GE	Transnet Property GE	GCFO	GCE	Board Acquisitions and Disposals Committee
Operating Divisions	Up to but not exceeding R15m annualised	Up to but not exceeding R50m annualised	Up to but not exceeding R200m full term	Up to but not exceeding R500m full term	Exceeding R500m full term
	Tenure not exceeding 5 years	Tenure not exceeding 5 years	Tenure not exceeding 10 years	Tenure not exceeding 15 years	Tenure exceeding 15 years

- Tenders that include alienation/leasing out of land for a period longer than 5 years must be submitted to the GCE for approval prior to going out on tender or RFP.
- Cession of leases: All cession or assignment of Lease agreements shall be approved by the Group CFO or Group Executive: Transnet Property. For cession of leases at OD level the Chief Executive of the respective OD may approve cession or assignment of lease agreements.
- Cession of lease agreements with a change to material terms of the existing lease e.g. extension or shortening of the lease period, change of rental terms etc. may be approved in terms of the above limits i.e. where the original lease was approved in terms of the delegated authority above, changes of material terms to be approved by the same approval body.

- All external Lease Agreements (> 5 years) of properties on land/properties adjacent to other land/properties of ODs and/or belonging to Transnet Property, must be communicated and agreed with the relevant division/Transnet Property before entering into any Lease Agreements.
- All leases for vacant land may only be approved by the GCE with the above limits for the GCE applicable i.e. if the lease value exceeds R500m or the tenure exceeds 15 years then Board Acquisitions and Disposals Committee approval is required. For the purposes of this transaction vacant land is considered to be undeveloped land.
- In cases where vacant land is leased out with its own rental premium applicable to it and a separate rental premium for improvements located on the portion of the same leased site, although part of one lease transaction – to the extent that the proposed lease has lettable vacant land, the GCE shall approve such lease transactions in line with his limits of authority as stated in the table above.
- Interdivisional leases for vacant land may be entered into and signed by the respective OD CEs/GE: TCP/GE: Transnet Property.
- Special Delegation to apply to the CE of TNPA in compliance with the National Ports Act of 2005 as amended.
- Internal leases between Transnet Property, Operating Divisions and Specialist Units may be signed by the CEs of the respective ODs/SUs.

5.6 Legal Services

NOTE: The provision of legal services must be in accordance with the Transnet Legal Policy. In respect of all litigation the bearer of the authority may, after taking legal advice from Transnet, execute all documents and do all things necessary to give effect to his/her authorisation including submission through governance structures.

5.6.1 Commencing or settling any litigation, arbitration

Approval Authority →	Divisional Head: Legal and Risk	OD CE, GE: Transnet Property and GE:TCP	GE: Group Legal Services	GCFO	GCE
Operating Divisions	Up to but not exceeding R2m	Up to but not exceeding R10m. Greater than R10m but less than R35m with concurrence of GE: Group Legal Services	Up to but not exceeding R50m	Up to but not exceeding R100m with concurrence of GE: Group Legal Services	Exceeding R100m

Approval limits are per litigation matter and relate to the settlement amount of that particular matter. Commencement may be effected by an authorised person from the legal function

5.6.2

Any disputes with government entities or where the outcome of any litigation, arbitration or similar proceedings is likely to have a material effect on the business, financial condition or prospects of the Company	Board of Directors
Matters which pose a reputational risk to the Company should be submitted for consideration.	Board Risk Committee

5.6.3

Defending, subject to paragraph 5.6.1 above and Transnet Legal Policy, any litigation (actions or applications) in court or any other competent forum	GE: Group Legal Services/ OD CE
---	------------------------------------

5.6.4 Subject to the Transnet Legal Policy, the appointment of external advisors attorneys, advocates and any other external legal advisors.

Approval Authority →	OD CE	GE: Group Legal Services	GCE
OPERATING DIVISION	Up to but not exceeding R10m	Up to but not exceeding R50m	Exceeding R50m
	Specialist Units CEs and Heads of Legal	GE: Group Legal Services	GCE
Specialist Units CEs and Heads of Legal	Up to but not exceeding R5m	Up to but not exceeding R50m	Exceeding R50m

5 Human Resources

INTRODUCTION

The Delegation of Authority for Human Resources provides for controls and good governance in the following areas:

- Organisation Management
- Personnel Appointments and Remuneration
- Appointment of Fixed Term Contract Employees
- Interim / Ad-hoc Remuneration Adjustments
- Rewards / Awards / Exceptional Payments / *Ex-gratia* Awards
- Suspension of Employees
- Dismissal of Employees
- Mutual Separation Agreements
- Collective Bargaining and Trade Union Recognition
- Deviation from approved Human Resources Policies

PRINCIPLES

1. Any approval in the Human Resources environment must be obtained from a manager who is at least two hierarchical reporting levels higher than the employee for whom authorization is required.
2. When acting in a higher capacity, decision for own portfolio or department that will ordinarily be recommended by the acting incumbent must be referred to one level higher.
3. Where an incumbent acts for a period of longer than three months, the full powers of delegation of the position in which the person is acting, may be transferred to the acting incumbent.
4. Each OD may implement stricter delegations and increase the level of authority above those set out in the document. Any such change must be in writing.
5. Board approval is required for the appointment and remuneration of the Transnet GCE and GCFO.
6. The Remuneration, Social and Ethics Committee (REMSEC) provides final approval for the annual reward allocation including the salary mandate.
7. The REMSEC provides final approval for the remuneration packages for Group Exco according to the DPE Remuneration standards.
8. All matters relating to the position of the GCE and GCFO are reserved for the Board and Shareholder Minister in line with the Company's governing legislation and mandates.

ABBREVIATIONS

The abbreviations used in the Human Resources Delegation of Authority are set out in the table below.

FA	Final Approval
FA:CC	Final Approval for Corporate Centre
R	Recommendation
A	Has provided advice
C	Consultation
N	Noting
GE: HR	Group Executive: Human Resources
CE, GE	Chief Executive of OD or relevant Group Executive of Corporate Staff Department
GM: HRE	General Manager: Human Resources Enablement
GM: ER	General Manager: Group Employee Relations
OD HR GM	General Manager: Human Resources at the Operating Division
LM: GM	Line Management - General Manager

The table below sets out the delegation framework for Human Resources.

1 Organisation Management: Creation of New Positions / Change in Positions / Restructuring						
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> No permanent or fixed term contract position can be created or the grade level changed unless the approved Organisation Management governance was followed in respect of the evaluation of positions and ratification of grade levels. 						
HUMAN RESOURCES	REMSEC	GCE	GE HR	OD CE/ Group Executive	OD HR GM	LM GM
1.1 Group Exco (A level)	FA	R				
1.2 General Managers (B level)		FA	R	R		
1.3 Executive Managers (C level)			A	FA	R	R
1.4 Senior Management (D level and below)					FA	R

- 2 Personnel Remuneration**
- The REMSEC reviews the GCE's assessment of performance and approves/recommends the remuneration of Group Exco Members, Prescribed Officers and Extended Exco to the Board for approval by the Shareholder
 - The remuneration of the abovementioned category of employees shall be in terms of the Remuneration Standards.
 - The appointment and remuneration of all management level employees (levels A to F) will be guided by the Guidelines and Salary Bands issued by the Group Remuneration Office. These Guidelines and Salary Bands will take into account the occupational specific categories.
 - For managers in levels A and B the Group Remuneration Office will recommend the appropriate remuneration bands based on market information and internal parity. Approval of the final appointment and remuneration package will be in terms of the delegations below.
 - Each OD will apply the Guidelines and Salary Bands when appointing and structuring the packages of management employees in levels C and below. Approval of the final appointment and remuneration package will be in terms of the delegations below.
 - After salary adjustments and before a mandate is sought for the next financial year, the Group Remuneration Office will conduct a comparative analysis of salaries across ODs to inform the Group Guidelines and Salary Bands of managers for the new financial year. Affordability and the need for internal and external parity will inform these guidelines.

HUMAN RESOURCES	REMSEC & CORP GOV	GCE	GE HR	OD CE/ Group Executive	OD HR GM	LM GM
2.1 Group Exco (A level)	C	FA	R			
2.2 General Managers (B level)		FA	R	R		
2.3 Executive Managers (C level)			A	FA	R	R
2.4 Senior Management (D level and below)					FA	R

* The Chairpersons of Remuneration, Social and Ethics and the Corporate Governance and Nominations Committees will be consulted by the GCE for the appointment of Group Exco Members (other than executive directors). The consultation will be through a memorandum submitted to the Chairpersons of the Committees

3 Appointment of Fixed-Term Contract Employees

A person appointed on a fixed-term contract (for a specific period of time or to perform a specific project) must be appointed into a graded position.

HUMAN RESOURCES	REMSEC	GCE	GE HR	OD CE/ Group Executive	OD HR GM	LM GM
3.1 Group Exco (A Level)	FA	R				
3.2 General Managers (B level)		FA	R	R		
3.3 Executive Managers (C level)				FA	R	R
3.4 Senior Management (D level and below)					FA	R

4 Counter Offers and Interim Salary Adjustments

- In line with the Group Remuneration Philosophy approved by the REMSEC, there will be no interim / ad-hoc remuneration adjustments.

If an employee produces a written and current counter offer of employment with details of the remuneration package, and Transnet seeks to retain the employee based on the criticality of the employee's skill, an interim adjustment of the employee's current remuneration package may be offered in terms of the delegations below. Any counter offer must be in accordance with the Group Guidelines and Salary Bands Issued by Group Remuneration.

HUMAN RESOURCES	REMSEC	GCE	GE HR	OD CE/ Group Executive	OD HR GM	GM-HRE	LM GM
4.1 Group Exco (A Level)	FA	R	N			R	
4.2 General Managers (B level)		FA	R	R		R	
4.3 Executive Managers (C level)			FA	R	R	R	R
4.4 Senior Management (D level and below)					FA	FA:CC	R

5 Internal Rewards / Awards / Exceptional Payments / Ex-gratia Awards

The amounts reflected below are per initiative (not per individual employee payment) per annum

HUMAN RESOURCES	Board	REMSEC	GCE	GE HR	GCFO	OD CE/ Group Executive	OD HR GM	GM-HRE	LM GM
5.1 R10m and above	FA	R	R	R				R	
5.2 Between R5m but not exceeding R10m		FA	R	R				R	
5.3 Between R50 000 but not exceeding R5m			FA	R		R		R	
5.4 Between R20 000 but not exceeding R50 000				FA		FA	R	R	R
5.5 Up to but not exceeding R20 000				FA		FA	R	R	R
5.6 Up to but not exceeding R 10 000						FA	R	R	R

6 Suspension of Employees								
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The suspension of all employees is per the delegations of authority below. In the case of the suspension of a bargaining unit employee, the relevant OD Employee Relations Manager must recommend the suspension based on the merits of the case. 								
HUMAN RESOURCES	GCE	GE HR	OD CE/ Group Executive	OD HR GM	GM ER	LM GM	Line Manager	ER Manager
6.1 Group Exco (A level)	FA	R			R			
6.2 General Managers (B level)	FA	R	R		R			
6.3 Executive Managers (C level)		FA	R	R	A	R		
6.4 Senior Management (D level to F level)				R	A	FA	R	A
6.5 Bargaining unit employees							FA	R

7 Dismissal of Employees								
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The dismissal of any employee for reasons of discipline or incapacity must be preceded by a fair hearing in line with Transnet policies. The dismissal of an employee for operational requirements must be preceded by a fair consultation process. 								
HUMAN RESOURCES	GCE	GE HR	OD CE/ Group Executive	OD HR GM	GM ER	LM GM	Line Manager	ER Manager
7.1 Group Exco (A level)	FA	R			R			
7.2 General Managers (B level)	FA	R	R		A			
7.3 Executive Managers (C level)		A	FA	R	R	R		A
7.4 Senior Management (D level to F level)			A	R	R	FA	R	A
7.5 Bargaining unit employees							FA	R

8 Mutual Separation								
Terms and conditions and financial settlement amounts of mutual separation agreements for A – D Roles will be guided by the Guidelines issued by the Group Remuneration Office.								
HUMAN RESOURCES	REMSEC	GCE	GE HR	OD CE/ Group Executive	OD HR GM	GM ER	LM GM	
8.1 Group Exco (A level)	FA	R	R				R	
8.2 General Managers (B level)		FA	R	R			R	
8.3 Executive Managers (C level and below)			FA	R	R	R	R	R

9 Collective Bargaining and Trade Union Recognition								
HUMAN RESOURCES	REMSEC	GCE	GE HR	OD CE/ Group Executive	OD HR GM	GM ER	LM GM	
9.1 Conclusion of any Collective Agreements with Unions excluding shift patterns			FA	R	R	R		
9.2 Mandate for salary and wage negotiations	FA	R	R			R		
9.3 Recognition of Trade Union and Signing of Recognition Agreement	N	N	FA	R	R	R		

10 Deviation from Approved Human Resources Policies and recommendation of Governance related policies								
HUMAN RESOURCES	Group Exco	GCE	GCFO	GE HR	OD CE/ Group Exco	GM ER	LM GM	
10.1 Any deviation from a Transnet HR Policy		FA		R	R	R	R	R
10.2 Recommendation of Policies to Group Exco	FA			R				
10.3 Report all human capital risks	N			R				

5.8.7 International Business Travel (including travel to African countries)

	Approval Authority
Below CE level at Operating Division*	GCE
CE of Operating Division	GCE
Corporate Centre	GCE
Specialist Unit	GCE
Group Executives	GCE
GCE and Chairperson	User – Retrospective review by GCE or Chairperson and vice versa.

*CE of OD must recommend and the GCE to approve

5.8.8 Domestic Business Travel

	Approval Authority
Chairperson/GCE/Group Exco Members	User
CE of Specialist Unit	Group Exco member responsible
General Managers/Extended Exco	OD CE/OD CFO/Group Executives
All other levels	Extended Exco

Travel: All travel must be in line with the approved Travel Policy.

Extended Exco members at an OD/SU unit may sub-delegate to the appropriate lower level.

5.8.9 Communication

	Approval Authority
External communication on strategy and operations	GM: Public and Corporate Affairs or GCE or his Designate
Communication on operational issues relating to an OD	Group Exco Member responsible for OD
Communication with the Shareholder Minister	Office of the GCE or Chairperson of the Board of Directors

Approval to attend seminars and or conduct presentations to external parties which may result in indirect communication may be approved by a Divisional Exco member

5.8.10 Establishment of Special Purpose Vehicles (SPVs), Public Private Partnerships (PPPs) and Trusts

	Approval Authority
Establishment of SPVs, PPPs and Trusts	GCE may approve after recommendation by the GCFO and GE: Group Legal Services. The transaction to be reported to the Board - acquisitions and Disposals Committee

5.8.11 Restructuring and sale of business

	Approval Authority
Restructuring or sale of business	Transnet Board of Directors in accordance with Section 54 of the PFMA

5.8.12 Pension Fund and Medical Fund Rule Amendments as recommended by the Board of Trustees of the Funds

	Approval Authority
Changes to the rules of the pension and medical fund that do not require Ministerial approval	GCE and GCFO
Rule amendments that require Ministerial approval	Board to recommend to the Minister of Public Enterprises for approval

5.8.13 Application for Environmental Authorisation

- All environmental impact assessment or basic assessment applications must be prepared by a competent independent environmental assessment practitioner/consultant, unless exemption from this provision has been obtained in writing by the Department of Environmental Affairs and under the supervision of the Environmental Department in the OD/SU.
- The application for environmental authorisation must be signed as per the approval authority below.

	Approval authority to act as applicant for an environmental authorisation for Transnet SOC Ltd
Operating Division	Project Manager/ Operations Manager/Environmental Manager
Specialist Unit (Transnet Property)	Chief Operations Officer of Property
Specialist Unit (Transnet Capital Projects)	Project Director

- The applicant remains legally responsible for the compliance with the environmental authorisation throughout the implementation of the authorisation.
- Should an authorisation for new capital projects contain operational elements after formal handover of the project by TDP, the DEA needs to be informed in writing of the change in names and acknowledgement from DEA be filed.
- Should any of the above applicants leave Transnet, the DEA needs to be informed in writing of the new person responsible for the implementation of the environmental authorisation.

5.8 General Delegations

5.8.1 Chartering of Aircraft

Authority Level	OD CE	GCFO	GCE
Chartering of Aircraft	NIL	Up to but not exceeding R3m	Exceeding R3m
Chartering of helicopters for operations	R250 000*	Up to but not exceeding R1m	Exceeding R1m

* The limits for OD CEs are cumulative per aircraft per month.

5.8.2 Mobile phones: Authorising payments exceeding monthly limits (reflected in mobile phone contract)

Transnet Wide	Group Exco Member	GCFO	GCE
	Up to but not exceeding R10 000 per month	Up to but not exceeding R20000 per month	Exceeding R20000 per month

5.8.3 Entertainment Expenditure

Authority Level	OD CE	Group Executives	GCE
	Up to but not exceeding R50000 per occasion	Up to but not exceeding R50000 per occasion	Amounts exceeding R50000 per occasion

Costs incurred by any person on behalf of the Company must be authorised by that person's superior and must be within the approved budgetary limits. Supporting documentation should be marked cancelled to prevent re-use thereof. All entertainment expenses must be business related expenses.

5.8.4 Rewards/Awards/Exceptional Payments to external parties: (Examples: *Ex-gratia* awards, exceptional performance, recognition payments)

	OD CE	GCFO	GCE	REMSEC	Board
Operating Divisions	Up to but not exceeding R50000	Up to but not exceeding R100000	Up to but not exceeding R5m	Up to but not exceeding R10m	Exceeding R10m
Specialist units	Group Exco Members	GCFO	GCE	REMSEC	Board
	Up to but not exceeding R50000	Up to but not exceeding R100000	Up to but not exceeding R5m	Up to but not exceeding R10m	Exceeding R10m

5.8 Sponsorships and Donations

Approval Authority →	OD CE	GCFO	GCE	REMSEC	Board
Operating Divisions	Up to but not exceeding R5m	Up to but not exceeding R7m	Up to but not exceeding R10m	Up to but not exceeding R20m	Exceeding R20m
Approval Authority →	Group Exco Members	GCFO	GCE	REMSEC	Board
Specialist Units	Up to but not exceeding R2m	Up to but not exceeding R7m	Up to but not exceeding R10m	Up to but not exceeding R20m	Exceeding R20m

Approval limits are cumulative per annum e.g. the OD CE can approve a total amount of R5m per annum for sponsorships and donations.

5.8. Annual filing of tariffs with regulators

- Public Policy and Regulation Committee: Approves tariff increase applications from Operating Divisions.
- OD CE in concurrence with the GCFO: Filing of Tariffs with relevant Regulatory body.

Appendix 17

300



INTEGRATED SUPPLY CHAIN MANAGEMENT

TRANSNET PROCUREMENT PROCEDURES MANUAL [PPM]

**Version 1
August 2012**

PROCUREMENT PROCEDURES MANUAL**SECTION A**

Background and Context

SECTION B

Procurement Planning

SECTION C

Go To Market

SECTION D

Evaluation and Adjudication

SECTION E

Contract Management

SECTION F

Governance Structures

Appendices

FOR INTERNAL USE ONLY

PROCUREMENT PROCEDURES MANUAL

TABLE OF CONTENTS

SECTION A – BACKGROUND AND CONTEXT	1
CHAPTER 1 : INTRODUCTION	1
1.1 NATIONAL OBJECTIVES	1
1.2 INTEGRATED SUPPLY CHAIN MANAGEMENT ("ISCM") PROCUREMENT OBJECTIVES	1
1.3 ISCM CONTROL OBJECTIVES	1
CHAPTER 2 : DEFINITIONS, ABBREVIATIONS AND ACRONYMS	2
CHAPTER 3 : SCOPE AND EXCLUSIONS	2
3.1 PROCUREMENT PROCEDURES	2
3.2 COMPLIANCE WITH THE PPM	2
3.3 PURCHASING PROCEDURES	2
3.4 PPM EXCLUSIONS	2
3.5 APPLICATION	3
CHAPTER 4 : APPLICABLE LEGISLATION AND POLICIES	3
4.1 LEGISLATION	3
4.2 POLICIES	3
CHAPTER 5 : CODE OF ETHICS	3
5.1 SUPPLY CHAIN CODE OF ETHICS	3
5.2 CONFIDENTIAL INFORMATION AND TRADE SECRETS	7
5.3 INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS OF SUPPLIERS/TRANSNET	7
5.4 GIFTS AND GRATUITIES	3
5.5 DECLARATION OF INTEREST	3
5.6 FRAUD AND CORRUPTION	1
5.7 SANCTIONS	1
CHAPTER 6 : DELEGATION OF AUTHORITY FOR PROCUREMENT PROCESSES	2
6.1 HOW DELEGATION OF AUTHORITY WORKS	2
SECTION B – PROCUREMENT PLANNING	3
TYPICAL PROCUREMENT CYCLE	3
CHAPTER 7 : DEMAND PLANNING & MANAGEMENT	1
CHAPTER 8 : INTERNAL PROCUREMENT / INTERDIVISIONAL SUPPORT POLICY	1
8.1 INTERDIVISIONAL RELATIONSHIPS	1
8.2 STRATEGIC SPECIALIST UNITS	1
8.3 ABILITY OF TRANSNET ODS TO PERFORM	2
8.4 COMPULSORY UTILISATION OF SPECIALIST UNITS	2
8.5 INTERDIVISIONAL SUPPORT POLICY	2
8.6 MEMORANDUM OF UNDERSTANDING	2
8.7 DISPUTES	2
8.8 SERVICE LEVEL AGREEMENT	2
8.9 INTERDIVISIONAL PRICING	3
8.10 NON-CORE BUSINESSES	3
8.11 AC INVOLVEMENT	3
CHAPTER 9 : CONTRACT OPTIONS	4
9.1 CHOICE OF CONTRACT	4
9.2 CONTRACTS FOR A PERIOD LONGER THAN TWO YEARS	5

9.3	STANDARD TRANSNET TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF CONTRACT	56
9.4	CONSOLIDATION OF CONTRACTS	56
9.5	CHOICE OF SALES/PURCHASE TERMS FOR IMPORTED GOODS (INCOTERMS).....	56
CHAPTER 10 : PREFERENTIAL PROCUREMENT APPROACH AND DESIRED OUTCOMES.....		57
10.1	TARGETS.....	57
10.2	MECHANISMS	57
10.3	MEASUREMENT OF B-BBEE STATUS	60
CHAPTER 11 : LOCAL CONTENT		70
CHAPTER 12 : DETERMINING SD APPROACH AND DESIRED SD OUTCOMES		73
12.1	SD CATEGORIES	73
12.2	CATEGORISATION OF TRANSACTIONS INTO THE RIGHT SD QUADRANT	74
12.3	SUPPLIER DEVELOPMENT (SD) EVALUATION CRITERIA	75
CHAPTER 13 : DETERMINING BID EVALUATION CRITERIA		79
13.1	CHOOSING AN APPROPRIATE EVALUATION METHOD.....	79
CHAPTER 14 : MAIN PROCUREMENT MECHANISMS		85
14.1	FACTORS TO CONSIDER IN SELECTING THE APPROPRIATE PROCUREMENT MECHANISM	85
14.2	PROHIBITED PRACTICES	87
14.3	THE QUOTATION SYSTEM FOR VALUES BELOW R2 MILLION REQUEST FOR QUOTATION ("RFQ")	87
14.4	THE OPEN BID PROCESS (RFP)	90
14.5	APPROVED LIST PURCHASES	92
14.6	TWO-STAGE BIDDING SYSTEM (RFI/RFP PROCESS)	97
CHAPTER 15 : SPECIAL CASES		100
15.2	CONFINEMENTS.....	100
15.3	EMERGENCY PROCEDURE	103
15.4	HIGH VALUE TENDER PROCESS (HVTP).....	104
15.5	UNSOLICITED BIDS.....	106
15.6	CONTRACT CONSOLIDATION	108
15.7	ACQUISITIONS ASSOCIATED WITH INCOME GENERATING CONTRACTS	111
SECTION C – GO TO MARKET		112
CHAPTER 16 : BID PREPARATION		114
16.1	COMPILING BIDS - GENERAL	114
16.2	EVALUATION CRITERIA IN BID DOCUMENTS	114
16.3	TIMEFRAMES	116
16.4	VALIDITY PERIOD.....	117
16.5	ESSENTIAL REQUIREMENTS IN BID DOCUMENT.....	117
16.6	SIGN-OFF OF BID DOCUMENTATION AND GO-TO-MARKET STRATEGY.....	119
CHAPTER 17 : BID ADMINISTRATION.....		120
17.1	PHASE 1: ISSUE OF BIDS.....	120
17.2	PHASE 2: RECEIPT AND SAFEGUARDING OF BIDS	125
17.3	PHASE 3: OPENING OF BIDS	127
17.4	PHASE 4: AMENDMENTS AND COMMUNICATION AFTER CLOSING DATE	129
SECTION D – EVALUATION AND ADJUDICATION.....		132
CHAPTER 18 : EVALUATION AND RECOMMENDATION		133
18.1	TEST FOR ADMINISTRATIVE RESPONSIVENESS	133
18.2	PREPARATION FOR EVALUATION	135
18.3	TEST FOR SUBSTANTIVE RESPONSIVENESS.....	137

18.4	EVALUATE THE BID AGAINST PRE-DETERMINED CRITERIA	138
18.5	FINAL EVALUATION	142
18.6	RECOMMENDATION	146
CHAPTER 19 : POST TENDER NEGOTIATION.....		148
19.1	POST TENDER NEGOTIATION (PTN).....	148
19.2	AUTHORITY TO ENGAGE IN PTN (transactions falling within AC jurisdiction)	148
19.3	STANDING AUTHORITY TO PTN (transactions falling below AC jurisdiction)	149
19.4	PTN PROCESS.....	149
19.5	APPROVAL TO AWARD BUSINESS AFTER PTN	150
CHAPTER 20 : ADJUDICATION		151
20.1	GENERAL PRINCIPLES	151
20.2	THE ROLE OF THE AC DURING ADJUDICATION	151
20.3	RISK EVALUATION	152
20.4	SPLITTING OF BUSINESS.....	152
20.5	DISAGREEMENT REGARDING AWARD OF BUSINESS	152
20.6	NON AWARD / CANCELLATION OF BIDS	152
SECTION E – CONTRACT MANAGEMENT		154
CHAPTER 21 : AWARD OF BUSINESS AND CONTRACTING PROCESS		155
21.1	APPROVAL OF ACCEPTANCE OF BIDS NOT TO BE ANTICIPATED.....	155
21.2	DECISION TO ACCEPT BIDS OR OFFERS	155
21.3	NOTICES OF ACCEPTANCE AND NON-ACCEPTANCE OF BIDS TO BE FINALISED	155
21.4	APPLICATIONS RECEIVED IN TERMS OF PAIA	156
21.5	DELIVERY OF ACCEPTANCE TO BIDDER.....	156
21.6	FORMAL WRITTEN CONTRACT (LETTER OF AWARD)	156
21.7	CONTRACTING WITH SECOND-RANKED BIDDER.....	158
21.8	APPROVAL OF CONTRACTS FOR PERIODS EXCEEDING TWO YEARS.....	159
CHAPTER 22 : POST AWARD CONTRACT MANAGEMENT		160
22.1	POST-AWARD FUNCTIONS.....	160
22.2	SERVICE DELIVERY MANAGEMENT	161
22.4	CONTRACT ADMINISTRATION	168
22.5	INDICATIONS OF SUCCESSFUL CONTRACT MANAGEMENT	173
CHAPTER 23 : BLACKLISTING PROCEDURES AND GUIDELINES.....		175
23.1	DEFINITION	175
23.2	GROUND FOR BLACKLISTING.....	175
23.3	WHO MAY BE BLACKLISTED?	176
23.4	FACTORS TO CONSIDER BEFORE TAKING THE DECISION TO BLACKLIST	177
23.5	GUIDELINES FOR DETERMINING AN APPROPRIATE PERIOD FOR BLACKLISTING	177
23.6	BLACKLISTING PROCEDURE.....	178
23.7	APPEAL AGAINST DECISION TO BLACKLIST	179
23.8	RESCISSION OF A DECISION TO BLACKLIST	179
23.9	ENFORCEMENT OF THE TRANSNET LIST OF EXCLUDED BIDDERS.....	179
23.10	ANCILLARY ACTIONS	179
SECTION F – GOVERNANCE STRUCTURES		181
CHAPTER 24 : FUNCTIONS OF GOVERNANCE STRUCTURES AND DEPARTMENTS.....		182
24.1	MAIN ACQUISITION COUNCILS (Main AC).....	182
24.2	TRANSNET ACQUISITION COUNCIL (TAC)	193
24.3	PROCUREMENT OMBUDSMAN	194

305

FOR INTERNAL USE ONLY

PROCUREMENT PROCEDURES MANUAL

24.4	CAPITAL INVESTMENT COMMITTEE (CAPIC)	195
24.5	BOARD ACQUISITIONS AND DISPOSALS COMMITTEE (BADC)	196
24.6	INTEGRATED SUPPLY CHAIN MANAGEMENT (ISCM)	199

APPENDIX A: CONTROL FRAMEWORK

APPENDIX B: ROLES & RESPONSIBILITIES

APPENDIX C: ICC INCOTERMS 2010

APPENDIX D: B-BBEE PREFERENCE POINTS CLAIM FORM

APPENDIX E: DECLARATION CERTIFICATE FOR LOCAL PRODUCTION AND CONTENT (SBD 6.2)

APPENDIX F: MATRIX FOR APPROVAL OF EMERGENCY PROCEDURES

ISSUED BY:



Garry Pita

Group Chief Supply Chain Officer

Date: 6 SEPTEMBER 2012

**SECTION A:
BACKGROUND
AND
CONTEXT**

Chapter 1: Introduction

- National Objectives
- ISCM Procurement Objectives
- ISCM Control Objectives

**Chapter 2: Definitions, Abbreviations and
Acronyms**

Chapter 3: Scope and Exclusions

Chapter 4: Applicable Legislation and Policies

Chapter 5: Code of Ethics

**Chapter 6: Delegation of Authority for
Procurement Processes**

Procurement planning

Go to Market

Evaluation and Adjudication

Contract Management

Functions of Governance Structures

Appendices

CHAPTER 1 : INTRODUCTION

Transnet SOC Ltd ("Transnet") is fully owned by the South African government and operates as a corporate entity. It is aimed at supporting and contributing to the country's freight logistics network by developing South African industry, reducing the cost of doing business, ensuring efficient and profitable operations, whilst at the same time promoting critical developmental and empowerment objectives.

Section 217 of the Constitution Act 108 of 1996 and section 51(1)(a)(iii) of the Public Finance Management Act 1 of 1999 ("PFMA") stipulate that Transnet must have and maintain an appropriate procurement and provisioning system which is fair, equitable, transparent, competitive and cost-effective.

Transnet's Supply Chain Policy and this Procurement Procedures Manual ("PPM") give effect to these statutory requirements. The aim of the Supply Chain Policy is to ensure that Transnet gets value for money in the procurement of Goods and Services in order to fulfil its mandate whilst redressing the economic imbalances that have been caused by unfair discrimination in the past. Transnet shall therefore carry out its procurement processes as cost-effectively as possible whilst meeting its commercial, regulatory and socio-economic goals. The Policy ensures a coherent framework within which procurement principles and compliance controls are applied across Transnet.

The PPM seeks to operationalise the objectives of the Supply Chain Policy.

1.1 NATIONAL OBJECTIVES

The Transnet supply chain function should firstly be seen in the national context. Government's economic development policies such as the New Growth Path ("NGP") emphasise the role that State Owned Companies ("SOCs") should play as key agents in a developmental state to accelerate national development by leveraging their procurement spend to ensure that key goals such as job creation, skills transfer and empowerment take place. As one of the major State Owned Companies, Transnet has a pivotal role to play in ensuring that Government's economic development policy goals are met.

1.2 INTEGRATED SUPPLY CHAIN MANAGEMENT ("ISCM") PROCUREMENT OBJECTIVES

1.2.1 Transnet's procurement objectives are ensuring security of supply of goods and services that Transnet requires to fulfil its mandate, and achievement of key socio-economic goals, eg. job creation, empowerment. All Transnet's procurement activities shall be implemented in line with the following best practice principles:

1.2.2 Fairness and Transparency:

- equal treatment of bidders;
- openness and accountability; and
- ethical conduct.

1.2.3 Social Equity:

- Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment ("B-BBEE"), Preferential Procurement and Supplier Development.

1.2.4 Value for money:

- competitiveness; and
- cost effectiveness.

1.2.5 Due regard must be given to the importance of:

- a) the promotion of Transnet's Interdivisional Support Policy; and
- b) the development, promotion and support of Transnet's Supply Chain Code of Ethics, which requires that all commercial conduct be based on ethical and moral values and sound business practice. This value system governs all commercial behaviour within Transnet.

- 1.2.6 Transnet will strive to procure Goods and Services which contribute to its mission: To anticipate and satisfy the requirements of its customers for a highly responsive and cost-effective transportation Service. In order to achieve this, Transnet is committed to working with suppliers who share its goals of continuous improvement in service, Quality and reduction of Total Cost of Ownership (TCO).
- 1.2.7 Transnet prefers not to do business with any agents ("middlemen"), who do not add significant value to the supply chain. Transnet would rather contract directly with the overseas and/or local Original Equipment Manufacturers (OEMs). In the case of dealing with overseas OEMs for relevant SD targeted commodities such as rolling stock and port equipment, Transnet will negotiate meaningful SD local capability and capacity building initiatives as part of their supply agreements with Transnet.
- 1.2.8 Transnet commits to clarity in its communication of requirements. It furthermore commits to being professional, courteous, fair, factual and responsive in its business dealings.
- 1.2.9 Transnet supports good corporate governance by ensuring the preservation of the highest standards of integrity, objectivity, fairness, efficiency and professionalism.
- 1.2.10 The purpose of one Supply Chain Policy and a uniform set of procedures for the whole Transnet Group is to facilitate a uniform interpretation internally, whilst complying with the requirements of Section 51(1) (a) of the PFMA and Section 217 of the Constitution.

1.3 ISCM CONTROL OBJECTIVES

Transnet's ISCM function is aimed at achieving the following control objectives:

- *only* Goods and Services required by the organisation are acquired;
- *all* Goods and Services required by the organisation are acquired;
- The demand for Goods and Services is appropriately planned and managed;
- Goods and Services required are acquired from the most appropriate supplier at the right time, right cost and right Quality;
- critical socio-economic objectives such as B-BBEE, job creation, skills transfer, etc are achieved;
- transactions are properly accounted for and approved (timeously, accurately and completely);
- accurate and timeous information will be produced for management, ensuring the integrity of the process;
- overall processes exhibit integrity and are efficient in meeting supply chain objectives in relation to strategy;
- optimum working capital balances for inventory and cash will be maintained; and
- all Goods and Services acquired are managed from demand to finalisation considering appropriate security.

FOR INTERNAL USE ONLY

PROCUREMENT PROCEDURES MANUAL

NOTE: The detailed Business Critical Activities (BCAs) and Business Critical Controls (BCCs) derived from the above ISCM Control Objectives are attached hereto as Appendix A (*Control Framework*).

CHAPTER 2 : DEFINITIONS, ABBREVIATIONS AND ACRONYMS

TERM	DEFINITION, ABBREVIATION OR ACRONYM
Acceptable Bid	Any bid which, in all respects, complies with the specifications and conditions of bid as set out in the bid document
Acquisition Council [AC]	The main Acquisition Council of an Operating Division, Specialist Unit or Business. Unless specifically stated otherwise "AC" also includes sub-Acquisition Councils operating under the auspices of the ACs and which caters for transactions falling below the minimum threshold of the main AC, e.g. Acquisition Councils operating on a local or regional basis, as well as the TAC catering for Corporate Head Office and transversal contracts
Advance Payment Guarantees [APGs]	Is a guarantee issued by a financial institution, on behalf of a supplier to a buyer, in relation to any advance payment that is made by the buyer to the supplier to allow the work to commence. The guarantee protects the buyer against the risk of non-performance as the buyer can claim reimbursement of the advance payment against the guarantee in such a case
Advertisement	A public invitation to submit bids for the provision of Goods or Services
Alternative Bid	Is a bid that purports to satisfy a stated need but does not fully comply with the laid down specification of the RFX. Alternative Bids are allowed at the discretion of Transnet
B-BBEE	Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment
B-BBEE Enterprise	Any supplier or contractor who has been rated anything from a Level 8 (10 % recognition level) to a Level 1 (135% recognition level), as defined in the B-BBEE Act and Codes of Good Practice issued by the DTI
Bid	A written offer in a prescribed form in response to an invitation by Transnet for the provision of Services, works or Goods, through price quotations, advertised open bids, approved lists, confinements or proposals
Bidder	Any person/Enterprise which has submitted a Bid
Black People	Is a generic term which means Africans, Coloureds and Indians
Board Acquisitions & Disposals Committee [BADC]	A sub-committee of the Transnet Board of Directors tasked with providing oversight and approval for acquisitions and disposals falling within its delegation of authority
Board of Directors [BOD]	The Board of Directors of Transnet SOC Ltd
Buyer	Any person in Procurement or ISCM in any Transnet entity, who has the necessary delegated powers to undertake specific procurement functions with regard to transactions falling within his/her DoA, i.e. the R-value of the transaction

TERM	DEFINITION, ABBREVIATION OR ACRONYM
Carrier	Any person who, in a contract of carriage of goods, undertakes to perform or to procure the performance of carriage, by rail, road, sea, air, inland waterway or by a combination of such modes (used in definitions of Incoterms)
Centre(s) of Excellence [COE(s)]	Cross-divisional teams strategically focusing on a particular functional area. They focus on tactical issues relating to the functional area, and are aimed at identifying and leveraging on the areas of excellence in Transnet. Key strategic objectives will be executed through the COEs with a risk mitigation plan supported by Enterprise Risk Management (ERM)
Chief Executive Officer [CEO]	The Chief Executive Officer at the head of a Transnet Division with appropriate delegated authorities which are in line with the Transnet Group Delegation of Authority (Group Limits of Authority)
Chief Financial Officer [CFO]	A Chief Financial Officer in an Operating Division of Transnet
Construction Industry Development Board [CIDB] bid/contract	Any construction related bid/contract, as defined in, and regulated by the Construction Industry Development Board, by virtue of the CIDB Act. This includes new construction activities as well as the maintenance of existing civil, mechanical or electrical structures
Confinement	A procurement process restricted to one or a limited number of Bidders
Consultant	A person, company or a close corporation that provides expert or specialised advisory skills / services. A consultant does not supply the ultimate end product, but provides a recommendation of the best solution to a specific need based on his/her expertise.
Chief Procurement Officer [CPO]	The Chief Procurement Officer of a Division of Transnet or a Specialist Unit
Cross Functional Evaluation Team [CFET]	A team that is involved in the evaluation of bids regarding transactions of a high value or where the quality / functionality criteria is complex and a simple yes /no answer on technical compliance is not possible or viable.
Cross Functional Sourcing Team [CFST]	A team that is involved in the procurement of transactions of a high value or where the quality / functionality criteria are complex. As they represent various functions, a holistic overview over the process will be ensured.
Delegation of Authority [DoA]	The extent of authority required in order to implement certain actions by or on behalf of the company, including any sub-delegation of authority where permitted. This includes the power to retrospectively authorise, condone or rescind a decision already taken by a sub-delegate.
Exempted Micro Enterprise [EME]	An enterprise with an annual turnover of less than R5 million, as defined by the DTI's Codes of Good Practice
Expression of Interest [EOI]	Means a request for Bidders to register their interest in providing specified Goods or Services and to submit their credentials so they may be invited to submit a Bid should they qualify or are selected to do so.

TERM	DEFINITION, ABBREVIATION OR ACRONYM
Enterprise	A trading business (a company, close corporation, partnership or any other form of business) external to Transnet.
Entity	Used in the Transnet context to describe an Internal Transnet Operating Division, Specialist Unit, Transnet business or the various Group Functions comprising the Corporate Centre
Fronting	A deliberate circumvention or attempted circumvention of the BBEE Act and the Codes. Fronting commonly involves reliance on data or claims of compliance based on misrepresentations of facts, whether made by the party claiming compliance or by any other person.
Fruitless and Wasteful Expenditure	Expenditure that was made in vain and could have been avoided had reasonable care been taken. The paying of exorbitant prices which are not market related is also regarded as fruitless and wasteful expenditure.
Further Recognition Criteria (Current) [FRC Current]	A mechanism used to evaluate preference, based on the extent to which a bidder's current B-BBEE status in terms of ownership, management control and employment equity meets or exceeds a stipulated minimum target.
Further Recognition Criteria (Future) [FRC Future]	A mechanism used to evaluate preference based on the extent to which an enterprise commits to improving or sustaining its B-BBEE performance over the contract period in excess of stipulated minimum targets. These criteria focus on ownership, management control, employment equity, preferential procurement and enterprise development.
Goods	Any physical object or objects which has value, whether raw or processed, movable or immovable.
Group	All Operating Divisions, Specialist Units, Businesses as well as the various different Group Functions comprising the Corporate Centre
Group Chief Executive [GCE]	The person in the Corporate Centre appointed as the Transnet Group Chief Executive, duly appointed by the Minister of Public Enterprises, or the person acting in his/her stead, at any given time, in terms of a proper mandate.
Group Chief Financial Officer [GCFO]	The Group Chief Financial Officer in the Group Corporate Head Office, who reports directly to the GCE, or the person acting in his/her stead, at any given time, in terms of a proper mandate.
Group Chief Supply Chain Officer [GCSCO]	The General Manager who heads up the Integrated Supply Chain Management function in the Corporate Head Office, or the person acting in his/her stead, at any given time, in terms of a proper mandate.
High Value Tender Process [HVTP]	A process that is used in the procurement of high value goods/services. This process includes a number of gateway reviews during key steps of the tender process, in order to ensure that any flaws in the process are detected timeously.
IC³ Supplier Development Matrix	A framework utilised to categorise SD opportunities on a matrix based on their value, extent of industrial leverage and strategic importance to Transnet. The matrix is adapted from the DPE Supplier Classification Matrix focused on Increased Competitiveness, Capability and Capacity.

TERM	DEFINITION, ABBREVIATION OR ACRONYM
Imported content	That portion of the Bid price represented by the cost of components, parts or materials which have been or are still to be imported (whether by the supplier or its subcontractors) and which costs are inclusive of the costs abroad, plus freight and other direct importation costs, such as landing costs, dock dues, import duty, sales duty or other similar tax or duty at the South African port of entry
Incoterms	(ICC Incoterms 2010) means, in relation to international trade (sale and purchase of Goods), the globally accepted purchase terms for Goods, used to indicate the costs to be incurred by the seller and the buyer and the point at which the risk of the Goods passes from the seller to the buyer See Appendix C for detailed definitions of all Incoterms
Integrated Supply Chain Management [ISCM]	The Integrated Supply Chain Management function as a whole including all Operating Divisions and Centres of Excellence
Irregular Expenditure	Expenditure incurred in contravention of, or that is not in accordance with a requirement of any applicable legislation, including the PFMA
Letter of Award	Is issued when a Bidder is selected as the Successful Bidder. The letter of award informs the Successful Bidder unequivocally that he/she was awarded the business
Letter of Intent (LOI)	Is issued when a Bidder is selected as the Preferred Bidder. The LOI informs the Preferred Bidder of Transnet's intention to negotiate and conclude a contract with it
Local Content (LC)	The portion of the Bid price or quotation which is not included in the Imported Content, provided that local manufacture does take place
Manager	Means any employee in Transnet, by whatever designation he/she is known, who has been delegated certain specific powers in terms of a proper Delegation of Authority
Material Amendment	An amendment which increases the scope, cost or risk of a contract by more than 10% of the original contract value
Market Demand Strategy (MDS)	The Transnet strategy to invest in capital infrastructure in order to meet market demands for increased efficiency and effectiveness in delivery of Transnet's services
Non-Disclosure Agreement [NDA]	A confidentiality agreement between two or more parties
Open Bid	A public request to do business which has been properly advertised and to which any member of the public can submit a Bid
Operating Division [OD]	An operating division of Transnet, namely TFR, TPT, TNPA, TPL and TRE
Parcelling	The practice of deliberately splitting business into smaller portions to keep the transaction value within one's own Delegation of Authority, or to keep it below the threshold of an AC or a person with higher Delegation of Authority

TERM	DEFINITION, ABBREVIATION OR ACRONYM
Parent Company Guarantee	A guarantee by a parent company of a supplier's performance under its contract with a buyer, where the supplier is a subsidiary of the parent company.
Performance Bonds (PBs)	A performance bond from a bank guarantees performance under a contract from commencement to completion. The bank issuing the performance bond undertakes to pay a specified sum of money to the buyer if the supplier does not fulfil its contractual obligations.
Post Tender Negotiations [PTN]	Negotiations between Transnet and one or more shortlisted Bidders after the Bids have been evaluated, but before the business has been awarded
Preferred Bidder	Means a Bidder that has been identified through an evaluation process as the Bidder with whom Transnet intends to conclude a contract subject to the successful completion of contract negotiations
Prequalification Criteria	These are criteria that have to be met for a Bid to be deemed as responsive, e.g. registration with a specific professional body, specific accreditation, etc
Qualifying Small Enterprise [QSE]	An enterprise with a turnover between R5m and R35m, as defined by the DTI's Codes of Good Practice
Quality (Functionality)	The totality of features and characteristics of Goods or Service that bears on its ability to satisfy a stated or implied needs
Rental or Lease	The use of Goods and/or moveable assets for a period and for consideration (compensation)
Request for Information [RFI]	An invitation to a broad base of potential suppliers to provide written information about their capabilities to meet a stated Transnet need. An RFI is primarily used in instances where Transnet is not clear about the precise specifications and/or scope of work required to meet its needs for specified Goods or Services. The information received through an RFI process is typically used to pre-qualify suppliers for consideration before an RFP for the Goods/Service is issued
Request for Quotation [RFQ]	Request for Quotation is used for transactions <R2m. However, CEOs may at their discretion lower the quotation limit
Request for Proposal [RFP]	Request for Proposal is used on the open Bid process i.e. for transactions > R2 million. However, CEOs may at their discretion lower the minimum threshold for open Bids
Request for ... [RFX]	A generic term which can be used interchangeably with either RFI, RFQ or RFP
Service	The provision of labour or work, including knowledge-based expertise, carried out by hand, or with the assistance of equipment and plant
SOC	State Owned Company
Supplier Development (SD)	Improving the socio-economic environment as required by the NGP by creating competitive local suppliers via Enterprise Development, the Competitive Supplier Development Programme and other initiatives such as Preferential Procurement. This results in a reduction in capital leakage and creates a supply base that can be competitive to market its Goods on the International market leading to

TERM	DEFINITION/ABBREVIATION OR ACRONYM
	Increased exports.
Successful Bidder	Means a Bidder that has been identified as the Bidder to which business has been awarded
Tender Evaluation and Recommendation Report [TEAR]	A report that must be submitted by the evaluation team to the AC setting out an overview of the bid evaluation process, evaluation methodology, reasons for elimination of Bidders, a recommendation for the award of the tender as well as all supporting evaluation scorecards
Transnet Acquisition Council [TAC]	Acquisition Council catering for Corporate Head Office procurement and Centred transversal procurement
Transnet Capital Projects [TCP]	Transnet Capital Projects - a Specialist Unit of Transnet
Transnet Freight Rail [TFR]	Transnet Freight Rail - an Operating Division of Transnet
Transnet National Ports Authority [TNPA]	Transnet National Ports Authority - an Operating Division of Transnet
Transnet Pipelines [TPL]	Transnet Pipelines - an Operating Division of Transnet
Transnet Port Terminals [TPT]	Transnet Port Terminals - an Operating Division of Transnet
Transnet Properties (TP)	Transnet Properties - a Specialist Unit of Transnet
Transnet Corporate Centre [TCC]	The Head Office of Transnet SOC Ltd
Transnet SOC Ltd	Transnet SOC Ltd, Registration No. 1990/000900/30 Incorporated in terms of the Companies Act 71 of 2008, as amended which includes all Operating Divisions, Specialist Units and/or subsidiaries
Transnet Rail Engineering [TRE]	Transnet Rail Engineering - an Operating Division of Transnet
Unsolicited Bid	A unilateral request from a person or enterprise to do business with Transnet without Bids or quotations having been invited by Transnet
Working day	Any day other than a Saturday, Sunday or public holiday
Year	Any defined period of 12 (twelve) consecutive months

Note: Words capitalised in the document have been defined in this Chapter.

CHAPTER 3 : SCOPE AND EXCLUSIONS

Save for the exclusions mentioned in Table 1 below and acquisitions that are governed by the Transnet Capital Projects ("TCP") Construction Procurement Policy, Processes, Procedures and Methods Manual (the Construction Manual), the PPM is applicable to all acquisitions across the Transnet Group regardless of the value of the transaction. The Construction Manual has been aligned to the Construction Industry Development Board ("CIDB") Act and Standards for Uniformity and applies to all construction-related acquisitions across Transnet. The PPM applies to construction-related acquisitions only where the Construction Manual is silent on an issue.

The PPM sets minimum standards for compliance, however, CEs and their duly appointed Acquisition Councils ("ACs") may impose more stringent rules and thresholds than those laid down in the PPM.

3.1 PROCUREMENT PROCEDURES

Transnet's Procurement Procedures as encapsulated in this document (the PPM), aim to establish the framework within which procurement activities are to be conducted at Transnet. These procedures are derived from the Transnet Supply Chain Policy, and should be read in conjunction with delegated powers granted in terms of the Delegation of Authority Framework. Other formal procedural manuals, directives, circulars or practice notes may be issued from time to time, either from ISCM, or from an Operating Division ("OD"), AC or Group Function and these should be read in conjunction with this Manual. However, it must be noted that any directive that changes any substantive principles of the PPM will be issued only on approval from the BADC. Where any conflict arises between such directives and the PPM, the later dated document shall prevail.

3.2 COMPLIANCE WITH THE PPM

Subject to paragraph 3.4 below, all procurement within Transnet must be conducted in accordance with the PPM.

3.2.1 Non-compliance with the PPM will be regarded in a serious light as it could result in Irregular Expenditure and/or Fruitless and Wasteful Expenditure in terms of the PFMA.

3.2.2 Section 51(1)(e) of the PFMA places an obligation on Transnet to take the necessary appropriate action regarding acts of financial misconduct.

Failure to comply with the provisions of the PPM will lead to disciplinary action and depending on the severity of the non-compliance, possible dismissal and/or legal action. As a general rule, condonation of non compliance with procurement policies and procedures is not permitted in terms of the PPM.

3.3 PURCHASING PROCEDURES

These procedures cover the purchasing and supply of all Goods, Services (tangible and intangible), fixed assets and the appointment of consultants. The aforementioned are in respect of both Operational and Capital expenditure.

3.3.1 Ferrous and non-ferrous scrap

The process of appointing contractors for the disposal of ferrous scrap (steel) and non-ferrous scrap is subject to the PPM. Due to the high value Income-generating nature of such disposals as well as the high risk of theft, the disposal of scrap is in addition governed by a separate, detailed "Scrap Disposal Policy and Procedures". This policy is available on the iSCM Transnet Intranet.

3.4 PPM EXCLUSIONS

The transactions and processes tabled below are excluded from this Procurement Procedures Manual:

TABLE 1

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Individuals (temporary staff), including contract workers employed by Transnet Human Resources. (However, the appointment of a recruitment agency, Consultant, consultancy firm or a firm providing a Service to Transnet must follow the PPM)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Petty cash purchases, subject to such instructions as issued from time to time
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Inspection Services in connection with the procurement / sale of Goods / assets
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The rendering of Services by or to government departments, SOCs or other public entities provided that rates charged by such institutions are market related or certified as fair and reasonable
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Media advertising (excluding campaigns involving professional advertising agencies)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Income generating transactions (i.e. where Transnet's Infrastructure, etc. is utilised to provide a Service; including instances where cross-divisional support is engaged for strategic or other reasons. However, procurement relating to such income-generating contracts must follow the PPM - see Chapter 9 (<i>Contract Options</i>))
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Water and electricity which is supplied to Transnet, including the provision of Services, as well as the relocation of such Services as a result of Transnet's activities (e.g. the relocation of power lines or water mains due to the construction of a new railway line)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Rates and taxes and other levies raised by local authorities or provincial administrations, both of which are excluded from these procedures, by virtue of the fact that they can only be obtained from the particular local authority, but which are for purposes of good corporate governance, paid by means of blanket orders, or other approved methods
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Purchase of Goods at auctions
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sale of Goods at auctions but excluding the appointment of auctioneers
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Letting and hiring of dwellings, and acquisition and alienation of houses or acquisition of land for houses in terms of prescribed housing policy
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Letting and hiring, and acquisition and disposal of all immovable assets. Refer to the Transnet Group Delegation of Authority, available on the ISCM Transnet Intranet.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sponsorships and donations, which are strictly governed by Delegated Powers
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Disposal of non-core businesses by the Transnet Restructuring Department, which is strictly governed by the Restructuring Committee, a sub-committee of Transnet's EXCO. Such disposals are on the strict proviso that any employee of the Transnet Restructuring Department, a Transnet Board member or a senior Manager (or higher) in the Transnet Group or any of its divisions will be disqualified from the Bidding process for the said non-core businesses for a period of 18 months from the date of his/her exit from Transnet
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The disposal of all movable assets, e.g. the disposal of redundant PC equipment, cell phones, office equipment and furniture must be properly controlled in terms of the individual policies/procedures governing such disposals. These policies and procedures are available on the ISCM Transnet Intranet.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The provision of degree or diploma certificates by tertiary institutions, attendance of training courses, seminars and conferences, provided that such transactions are approved by the person with the required DoA.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Any such exclusions which a Transnet Division may apply for through ISCM and which have been duly approved by the Transnet Group Chief Executive ("GCE") or the Transnet Group Chief Financial Officer ("GCFO") in accordance with guidelines which may be issued from time to time.

FOR INTERNAL USE ONLY

PROCUREMENT PROCEDURES MANUAL

3.5 APPLICATION

This version of the PPM applies to all new procurement processes which have been initiated on or after the commencement date of this document. Procurement processes initiated prior to the commencement date must be dealt with in accordance with the rules that were applicable at the time (i.e. the May 2009 version of the PPM).

CHAPTER 4 : APPLICABLE LEGISLATION AND POLICIES**4.1 LEGISLATION**

The Government of the Republic of South Africa, through the Department of Public Enterprise, is the sole shareholder of Transnet. The following legislation has been taken into consideration in the formulation of this document:

TABLE 2

LEGISLATION AND GOVERNMENT POLICY
• The Administrative Adjudication of Road Traffic Offences Act, 46 of 1998
• The Arbitration Act, 42 of 1965
• The Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment Act, 53 of 2003 as amended, including the Department of Trade & Industry's Codes of Good Practice
• The Companies Act, 71 of 2008 as amended
• The Competition Act, 89 of 1998 as amended
• The Competitive Supplier Development Programme (CSDP)
• The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa Act, 108 of 1996
• The Construction Industry Development Board Act (CIDB Act), 38 of 2000
• The Conventional Penalties Act, 15 of 1962
• The Copyright Act, 98 of 1978
• The Currency and Exchange Act, 9 of 1933
• The Designs Act, 195 of 1993
• The Electronic Communications and Transaction Act, 25 of 2002
• The Framework for the Operationalisation of Government's Procurement Policies In State Owned Enterprises (dated 31 July 2001)
• The Industrial Policy Action Plan II
• The King III Report on Corporate Governance
• The Local Procurement Accord
• The National Ports Act, 12 of 2005
• The National Railway Safety Regulator Act, 16 of 2002
• The New Growth Path (NGP)
• The Occupational Health and Safety Act, 85 of 1993
• The Patents Act, 57 of 1978
• The Preferential Procurement Policy Framework Act (PPPFA), 5 of 2000 as amended, Regulations of 2011 - effective December 2011 (Transnet has applied for exemption and has been granted partial exemption for a period of 12 months. Further developments in this regard will be published in PPM Directives).
• The Prevention and Combating of Corrupt Activities Act, 12 of 2004 as amended
• The Promotion of Access to Information Act (PAIA), 2 of 2000 as amended
• The Promotion of Administrative Justice Act, 3 of 2000
• The Public Finance Management Act (PFMA), 1 of 1999 as amended (Transnet is not bound by the Supply Chain regulations issued in terms of this Act)

LEGISLATION AND GOVERNMENT POLICY
• The Promotion of Administrative Justice Act (PAJA), 3 of 2000 as amended
• The Second-Hand Goods Act, 6 of 2009
• The Standards Act, 8 of 2008
• The Trade Marks Act, 194 of 1993
• The Value Added Tax Act, 89 of 1991

4.2 POLICIES

4.2.1 General Overview of Transnet Policies

The following policies and procedures which are available on the Transnet Intranet are supplementary to this PPM and should be taken into consideration, where applicable. Parties using the PPM must apply the most recent edition of the documents listed in Table 3 below

TABLE 3

TRANSNET POLICIES AND PROCEDURES	LOCATION
• Transnet Code of Ethics	Company Secretary Intranet portal
• Cell phone Policy	ICT Intranet Portal
• PC Disposal Policy	ICT Intranet Portal
• Contracting Procedures Manual	ISCM Intranet portal
• Construction procurement policy, processes, procedures and methods within Transnet Capital Projects	TCP Intranet portal
• Declaration of Interest and Related Party Disclosure Policy	Company Secretary Intranet portal
• Delegation of Authority Framework	Company Secretary Intranet portal
• Gifts Policy	Company Secretary Intranet portal
• Supply Chain Policy	ISCM Intranet portal
• Procure to Pay Procedures(P2P)	ISCM Intranet portal
• High Value Tender Process	ISCM Intranet portal
• Records Management Policy	Company Secretary Intranet portal
• Reverse Logistics Procedure	ISCM Intranet portal
• Scrap Policy	ISCM Intranet portal
• Supplier Development Policy	ISCM Intranet portal
• Transnet Strategy for Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment	ISCM Intranet portal
• Transnet Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment Policy for Procurement	ISCM Intranet portal

4.2.2 Preferential Procurement

a) Strategic Intent

Patterns of racial inequality (as well as other forms of social inequality) stubbornly persist almost two decades after the demise of apartheid. There is also a huge disparity in income distribution between social groupings. Transnet will therefore act as a responsible corporate citizen in the context of its B-BBEE endeavours, by utilising various strategies to promote empowerment more vigorously. Such strategies must be applied subject to the discipline of our constitutional framework to ensure that the overall objectives of a non-racial and non-sexist society are achieved. Transnet will also apply these strategies in a manner as to ensure that the constitutional principles of fairness, equity, transparency, competitiveness and cost-effectiveness are not materially undermined.

The strategies referred to above include (but are not limited to) the following:

- allowing preference in accordance with the B-BBEE status of an enterprise, based on its B-BBEE scorecard;
- increasing the weighting allocated to preference in a particular bid beyond the 10 or 20 points allocated in terms of the PPPFA;
- allowing Further Recognition Criteria points to an enterprise whose **current** black ownership, management control or employment equity **meets or exceeds** a stipulated minimum target (This will be referred to as FRC Current);
- allowing points for Further Recognition Criteria points based on the extent to which an enterprise commits to **improving or sustaining its B-BBEE performance** over the contract period in the following areas in excess of stipulated minimum targets: ownership, management control, employment equity, preferential procurement and enterprise development (This will be referred to as FRC Future);
- setting minimum B-BBEE levels as a pre-qualification criterion to participate in a bid process;
- limiting participation in a bid process to persons or entities owned by persons who have been disadvantaged by unfair discrimination;
- requiring bidding entities to form Joint Ventures (JVs) with black owned entities, alternatively to sub contract a minimum percentage of the contract to black owned companies;
- stipulating that an Enterprise will not be awarded points for its B-BBEE status level if it has indicated in its Bid response that it intends sub-contracting more than 25% of the value of the contract to any other Enterprise that does not qualify for at least the points that such a Bidder qualifies for, unless the intended subcontractor is an EME that has the capability and ability to execute the sub-contract;
- stipulating that an Enterprise who has been awarded a contract may not sub-contract more than 25% of the value of the contract to any other Enterprise that does not have an equal or higher BBEE status level than the Enterprise concerned, unless the contract is subcontracted to an EME that has the capability and ability to execute the sub-contract.
- Requiring winning bidders to take steps to ensure:
 - management and daily operational involvement by Black professionals and managers as prescribed in the different sector charters;
 - skills transfer and training; and
 - employment creation and employment equity.

The underlying objective of the Preferential Procurement methodology is to create an enabling environment for B-BBEE Enterprises to access available procurement opportunities within Transnet and to add value to the supply chain. B-BBEE Enterprises will therefore be engaged as:

- principal contractors;
- joint venture partners;
- professional service providers;
- subcontractors, suppliers and/or manufacturers.

b) Scope and applicability

- (i) Transnet's approach to Preferential Procurement applies to all purchases of Goods and Services and will apply to all QSEs, EMEs as well as to large enterprises.
- (ii) The approach shall apply to and impact on all levels (Rand value) and types of Bids. It will also apply to any disposal, letting or leasing of assets and the acquisition or granting of any right for and on behalf of Transnet. The objective is to design innovative ways to promote Black Economic Empowerment.
- (iii) Bid documents must specifically state that B-BBEE preference in terms of the DTI Codes of Good Practice and/or other relevant Charters will apply.

c) Objectives

- (i) Transnet encourages and will recognise all improvement in current and future supplier ratings.
- (ii) Transnet will encourage value-adding joint ventures with B-BBEE Enterprises. Bidders may develop joint ventures in order to comply with Transnet's B-BBEE requirements. The following documents shall form part of their submission:
 - ownership documents showing the status of the partners to the joint venture;
 - Joint Venture Agreement;
 - Joint Venture Declaration Form; and
 - any other documents as may be required by Transnet.
- (iii) Transnet accepts that bidders often create JVs for a specific project only, on the basis that the JV will only be created if they are successful in winning the business and a contract is awarded to them. This is known as an unincorporated JV. A JV will qualify for points as an unincorporated entity provided that the entity submits their consolidated B-BBEE scorecard as if they were a group structure and that such a consolidated scorecard is prepared for every separate tender. The Bidders must also submit a Joint Venture Agreement for the unincorporated JV.

d) Preferential procurement targets and reporting

- (i) To promote preference in the procurement of Goods and Services, targets will be set by the B-BBEE Forum and implemented by all the ODs.
- (ii) The overriding principle in the setting of such targets is that a sectoral approach will be adopted. Thus for sectors where there is a high probability of finding B-BBEE Enterprises or where there is a need to accelerate transformation, the target may be set higher.

Transnet's approach to preferential procurement is dealt with in more detail in Chapter 10.

4.2.3 Supplier Development – Strategic Intent

a) Background

Government economic development policies such as the New Growth Path (NGP) and IPAP II have increased the focus on how procurement at SOCs such as Transnet can be leveraged to achieve the national goals of reducing unemployment, ensuring industrialisation and developing local suppliers.

Transnet strives to provide a competitive Service, while at the same time, creating opportunities for new entrants to the market and stimulating job creation through the implementation of its SD mission.

Transnet's mission is to transform its supplier base by engaging in targeted SD or B-BBEE initiatives to support local capability and capacity building and industrialisation whilst providing meaningful opportunities for South Africans with particular emphasis on:

- Black youth;
- Black women;
- small businesses;
- people with disabilities; and/or
- rural integration, upliftment and development.

Leveraging procurement to influence the development of the local supplier industry is key to realising Government's objectives relating to growth, employment creation and equality. Achieving SD objectives will provide the following key benefits for Transnet and the broader South African society:

- Acceleration of local capability and capacity building and transformation of local business by promoting technology transfer, skills development and job creation;
- Focused regional development and upliftment of rural communities;
- Increase in Local Content – security of supply, reduced cycle times, reduced exposure to foreign currency and reduction of supply chain costs (over time);
- Transformation of supplier dominance from large international or national monopolies in order to create more opportunities for locally owned and/or Black owned suppliers; and
- Improved B-BBEE rating for Transnet

A Transnet SD strategy, SD policy and SD plan forms the framework within which Transnet will implement its SD initiatives.

b) Applicability

All transactions involving SD should be evaluated against the IC³ Supplier Development Matrix. This matrix (*Figure [1]* below) categorises transactions according to three principles:

- **Value leverage** refers to transactions where the financial scale of the transaction allows the buyer the opportunity to negotiate SD.
- **Industrial leverage** refers to transactions whereby the nature of the procurement is such that the scale and the industrial complexity of the item being purchased allow for local supply chain development around a particular industry.
- **Strategic importance** to Transnet refers to the extent to which the Goods to be procured has an impact on Transnet's core business.

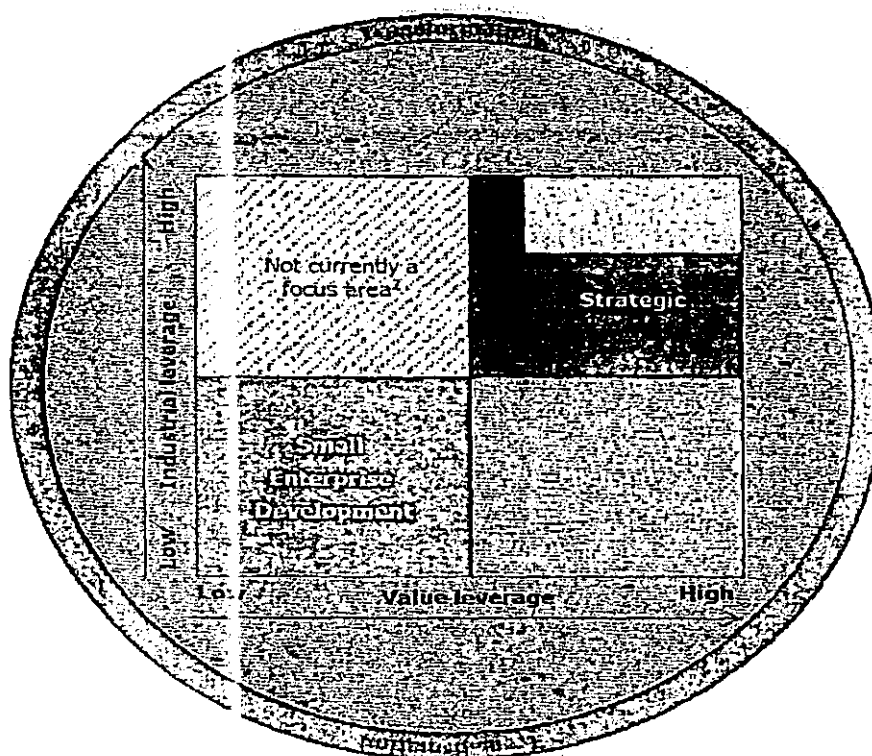


Figure [1] - IC³ SD Classification Matrix

The IC³ Supplier Development Classification Matrix (refer Figure [1] above) assists in categorising opportunities according to their Industrial leverage, value leverage and strategic importance to Transnet.

Once opportunities are identified it will be possible to identify the tools that should be implemented to maximise the full supplier development potential from these opportunities.

Based on the classification of a specific transaction, there will be certain SD objectives that Transnet will seek to meet. These objectives are all aligned to national objectives, and explained in more detail in Chapter 12 (*Determining SD Approach and Desired Outcomes*).

CHAPTER 5 : CODE OF ETHICS**5.1 SUPPLY CHAIN CODE OF ETHICS**

5.1.1 Transnet's Code of Ethics sets ethical standards for business practice and individual business conduct. It assists all Transnet stakeholders with their ethical deliberations and decisions. The objective of the Code of Ethics as it relates specifically to the Supply Chain environment is to set the standard by which all Transnet Board members and employees (including employees employed on fixed term contracts and temporary employees) are expected to act when engaging in any supply chain related activities. This will earn Transnet the reputation of being:

- a) transparent and fair in all dealings and disclosures;
- b) politically unbiased;
- c) committed to providing Quality Goods and Services;
- d) committed to transformation and empowerment;
- e) proud of its integrity and credibility;
- f) consistent in honouring its social, legal and moral obligations;
- g) responsible and accountable; and
- h) reliable and aware of the need to foster loyalty and long enduring relationships with all its stakeholders.

5.1.2 All Transnet employees should uphold the following key values:

- a) act with integrity and professionalism at all times;
- b) be honest;
- c) be committed and dedicated to high Quality performance;
- d) be customer orientated;
- e) respect and maintain the confidentiality of sensitive information gained through association with Transnet;
- f) maintain accurate, honest and complete records in appropriate detail;
- g) protect Transnet's assets;
- h) treat all suppliers with respect and dignity and foster a productive environment free of harassment, intimidation and discrimination;
- i) refrain from using a position of authority and / or facilities provided by Transnet to further their own interests or that of friends and relatives;
- j) desist from allowing personal interests to influence business decisions or tasks and disclose any actual or potential conflict of interest;
- k) honour the content and spirit of all business transactions and not abuse Transnet's name; and
- l) maintain an attitude of zero tolerance toward any form of bribery, corruption and inducements.

5.1.3 While considering the advantages of maintaining a continuing relationship with a supplier, Transnet ISCM must avoid any arrangement which in the long term might compromise fair competition or prevent Transnet from achieving optimal value.

5.1.4 No sale to or purchase from a Transnet employee is permitted under any circumstances. This excludes sales by auction or such other exceptions as may be authorised by management from time to time.

5.1.5 Former employees of Transnet shall not be restricted from doing business with Transnet unless they have been restricted from doing so in terms of paragraph 5.1.6 below. Due diligence should be exercised by evaluation teams to determine whether any undue influence/unfair advantage could have been possible between any Transnet employees and the former employee. This should be brought to the AC's attention, and should be stated clearly in submissions to the AC or to the delegated Manager for transactions falling below the AC's jurisdiction.

- 5.1.6 Former employees of Transnet who were dismissed following disciplinary action or who had resigned to circumvent disciplinary action following charges relating to dishonesty (e.g. bribery, corruption, theft, etc.) shall be formally excluded from future business dealings with Transnet. They will be blacklisted for a specific period and their names shall appear on Transnet's List of Excluded Bidders (see Chapter 23 on *Blacklisting*).

5.2 CONFIDENTIAL INFORMATION AND TRADE SECRETS

- 5.2.1 Employees have access to information related to Transnet's business strategies and contractual relationships with third parties. This information must be regarded as trade secrets. It includes intellectual property, know-how, processes, techniques, technical detail, methods of operating, cost and source of material, pricing and purchasing policies, systems design and development information. It also includes the contractual and financial arrangements between Transnet and its customers and suppliers. In this regard, all employees have a duty of trust and confidence and a duty to act at all times in the best interests of Transnet. The disclosure of trade secrets or any other confidential information could cause serious damage to Transnet, and possibly claims of damages for breach of contract against Transnet.
- 5.2.2 No employee may discuss or disclose prices which have been quoted or charged to Transnet.
- 5.2.3 No employee may disclose information which would, or could be perceived to place a Bidder in a better position than its competitors, or which would put Transnet at a disadvantage against Bidders or suppliers.
- 5.2.4 Where it is necessary to disclose confidential information to potential suppliers in order to solicit Bids, Non-Disclosure Agreements ("NDAs") must form part of the bid documentation. The NDAs must be signed by all Bidders.

5.3 INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS OF SUPPLIERS/TRANSNET

- 5.3.1 Transnet will acknowledge and respect suppliers' intellectual property (IP) rights. Transnet will also seek to promote fair competition.
- 5.3.2 It is recommended that in cases where the IP of suppliers is at stake, Transnet should hold clarification sessions with potential Bidders in order to clarify the position regarding IP rights. Furthermore, before concluding a contract, Transnet should ensure that all issues of IP are properly addressed in the contract and that both parties understand the nature of the agreement.
- 5.3.3 Depending on the merits of each case, one of the following approaches will be followed and must be stipulated upfront in the Request for Proposal ("RFP") document:-
- Transnet may choose to pay the supplier outright for its IP in the Goods and purchase the Goods with its IP. In such instances, the supplier relinquishes its rights to the IP and Transnet acquires all rights to the Goods. This applies to all specifications, drawings and/or prototypes. Transnet will disclose this at RFP stage and all aspects pertaining to IP will be negotiated and captured in the contract between the parties. Transnet shall have the right to procure its future requirements via an Open Bid process and the original designer/developer will be free to participate.
 - Transnet may choose to share the IP with the supplier where Goods were jointly developed by Transnet and the supplier. In this scenario, Transnet shares the IP and the royalties emanating from the development of the Goods. This must be clearly set out in the contract between the parties.
 - Where an existing patented article is required by Transnet, Transnet may choose to confine the tender to the manufacturer concerned or issue an Open Bid stating that the patented item or "anything similar" is required. In

this instance the supplier remains the owner of the IP in respect of the article.

5.4 GIFTS AND GRATUITIES

- 5.4.1 All business decisions and transactions must be made with uncompromised integrity, honesty and objective judgment. Transnet does recognise that in executing its business and applying industry norms, employees may be required to accept or give gifts as a token of appreciation. The Transnet Gifts Policy regulates and controls the acceptance and giving of gifts.
- 5.4.2 The acceptance and giving of gifts exceeding the value (currently R750.00) stipulated in the Transnet Gifts Policy, as amended from time to time is prohibited.
- 5.4.3 The occasional exchange of gifts not exceeding this value may be accepted, provided that such gifts are not specifically intended to influence any procurement or sales decisions and are:
 - a) Declared to the employee's Immediate Manager; and
 - b) Recorded in a Declaration of Gifts Register.
- 5.4.4 Under no circumstances should gifts be accepted from prospective suppliers, regardless of value, during any bid evaluation period including a period of 12 months after such bid has been awarded. This may be perceived as undue and improper influence over the bid process.
- 5.4.5 Gratuities, bribes or kickbacks of any kind must never be solicited, accepted or offered, either directly or indirectly. This includes money, loans, equity, special privileges, personal favours, benefits or Services. Such favours will be considered bribery. This is unlawful and the appropriate criminal / civil action will be enforced. If a supplier or employee offers or accepts such "favours" or bribes, it must immediately be reported to the Manager in charge of the function for appropriate action. In accordance with the ordinary principles of delictual liability, Transnet is entitled to recover all damages suffered as a result of the employee's corrupt or negligent conduct from that employee. Any person who has offered a bribe to a Transnet employee may also face criminal or civil action and/or exclusion from future Transnet business.
- 5.4.6 Employees are not permitted to accept gifts or buy Goods or Services at artificially low prices, not available to the public. Employees are also not allowed to accept personal favours and hospitality which might be deemed by others, to impinge upon the employee's sound business judgment.
- 5.4.7 Overseas visits on invitation by and at the expense of prospective suppliers will under no circumstances be permitted. Should an overseas visit be deemed necessary for the purposes of evaluating the supplier, this should be for Transnet's own account. All overseas visits have to be fully motivated in terms of the normal procedures for overseas visits. If current suppliers offer to pay for Transnet employees to travel to their offices or plants overseas, these requests need to be properly motivated and approved by the GCE or the relevant divisional CEO or Group Executive.
- 5.4.8 The following business courtesies are allowed, provided that the cost per instance does not exceed the amount as stipulated in the Gifts Policy:
 - a) entertainment;
 - b) advertising material of small intrinsic value such as pens, paper-knives (letter opener), diaries, calendars, etc.
- 5.4.9 A monetary limit will not be placed on the following:
 - a) business meals; and
 - b) hospitality packages to sports, arts and culture events held in the Republic of South Africa, with the objective of enhancing business relationships. Gifts received while on overseas business trips and from foreign delegates, which

exceed the limit set in the Transnet Gifts Policy, should be accepted, entered into the gifts register and submitted to the Group Company Secretariat for disposal in terms of the Gifts Policy.

- 5.4.10 In addition to the procedure for accepting gifts set out in the Gifts Policy, Supply Chain staff may only accept gifts after approval from their Manager. Supply Chain staff must declare all gifts irrespective of value. Supply Chain Managers must keep a proper gift register of all gifts and hospitality offered to their employees by suppliers and contractors, and vice versa. Unauthorised gifts that have not been accepted (e.g. exceeding the above mentioned limit) should also be entered into the gift register with an indication that they have been returned to the supplier or surrendered to Transnet or any other appropriate action that may have been taken.
- 5.4.11 All Supply Chain gift registers must be submitted to the relevant AC Chairperson for review on a quarterly basis. A Gift Register Template is attached to the Transnet Gifts Policy and must be used at all times to ensure that all relevant information and signatures of approval are captured.

5.5 DECLARATION OF INTEREST

- 5.5.1 In terms of the Companies Act 71 of 2008, directors or officers of a company have a duty to disclose their interests in contracts.
- 5.5.2 For the purposes of the Transnet Declaration of Interest and Related Party Disclosure Policy the requirement to disclose interests in contracts is extended to include all employees.
- 5.5.3 The Transnet Declaration of Interest and Related Party Disclosure Policy defines a conflict of interest as "a situation in which private interests or personal considerations affect, may affect, or may be perceived to affect, an employee's judgment in acting in the best interests of Transnet. This includes using an employee's position, confidential information, corporate time, material or facilities for:
- *private gain or advancement; or*
 - *the expectation of private gain or advancement of the employee or any member of the employee's family, or friends or business associates of the employee."*
- 5.5.4 The Transnet Declaration of Interest and Related Party Disclosure Policy places a duty on all employees who have an interest, either directly or indirectly, in any new or existing contracts with an entity external to Transnet which may conduct, or does conduct business with Transnet, to declare such interest.
- 5.5.5 A direct interest in a bid includes the following:
- i) Where the employee or Transnet Board member is -
 - (i) a shareholder, member or director of a bidding enterprise;
 - (ii) a shareholder, member or director of the holding company of a bidding enterprise; or
 - (iii) a shareholder, member or director of a subsidiary of a bidding enterprise.
 - ii) Where the employee or Transnet Board member is a direct family member or a close friend or associate of a person who is -
 - (i) a shareholder, member or director of a bidding enterprise;
 - (ii) a shareholder, member or director of the holding company of a bidding enterprise; or
 - (iii) a shareholder, member or director of a subsidiary of a bidding enterprise.
- 5.5.6 Declaration of a direct interest will result in automatic recusal of an employee.

5.5.7 An indirect interest may include, but is not limited to:

- a) being involved with the drafting of the specification or bid documents;
- b) being involved with issuing / advertising of the bid; or
- c) being involved in the evaluation, and subsequently being involved in the adjudication of the bid (applicable to members and/or alternates serving on the relevant AC).

5.5.8 Any indirect interest of an employee in a bid or offer must be declared and the Manager concerned will determine whether the employee should recuse him/herself. The reasons for this decision must be officially recorded and kept on file.

5.5.9 Bid documents must always contain a clause for prospective Bidders to declare any possible direct family or business relationship with a Transnet employee. Direct family or business relationships includes husband/wife, children (own and step), parents and grandparents (own and in-law), brothers and sisters (own, step and in-laws) and business associates.

5.5.10 Although business with Enterprises that have relationships with Transnet employees in terms of 5.5.9 above is not prohibited, it is imperative that it be properly declared and explicitly pointed out in the submission to the AC. This will allow the AC to consider all relevant facts and decide whether such involvement by a Transnet employee could be regarded as fair or whether other prospective Bidders will be prejudiced or may be perceived to have been prejudiced thereby. Bidders failing to declare such relationship(s) will be disqualified from the bid process. Contracts concluded without adherence to this rule, will be terminated and disciplinary action will be taken against the relevant Transnet employee(s). The company or companies involved will be placed on Transnet's List of Excluded Bidders.

5.5.11 All Transnet employees / board members involved in procurement activities are under a duty to declare their interests as soon as they become aware that they have a direct or indirect interest in a particular matter. If any doubt arises as to whether an interest should be declared or not, the employee concerned shall seek guidance from the office of the Company Secretary. The following must be noted with regard to the duty to declare interests:

- a) In terms of the "Declaration of Interest and Related Party Disclosures Policy" all employees are required to submit an annual declaration of interest. These declarations are kept by the Group Company Secretary for employees at Group. Depending on the specific OD, declarations are kept by the OD Company Secretary, Compliance officer or the Legal department in respect of OD employees;
- b) in addition to annual declarations, all employees involved in procurement should make a quarterly declaration of interest which must be kept by the relevant Manager;
- c) all employees involved in the evaluation, Post Tender Negotiation ("PTN") or adjudication of Bids must sign a declaration of interest certificate indicating whether or not they have an interest in the matter at hand. This declaration must be placed on the relevant bid file; and
- d) employees involved in procurement activities other than evaluation, post tender negotiation, or adjudication (such as buyers) will only be required to declare an interest if they in fact have an interest in a particular matter. Should such an employee not make any declaration in a particular matter, he/she will

be deemed not to have an interest in the matter. If it is later discovered that an employee did have an interest which he/she failed to declare, such employee will be found to have failed to comply with the duty to declare conflicts of interests.

- e) A proper register of Declarations of Interest should also be kept by Managers responsible for departments involved in purchasing and disposal functions as well as by the Secretariats of the relevant ACs.

5.6 FRAUD AND CORRUPTION

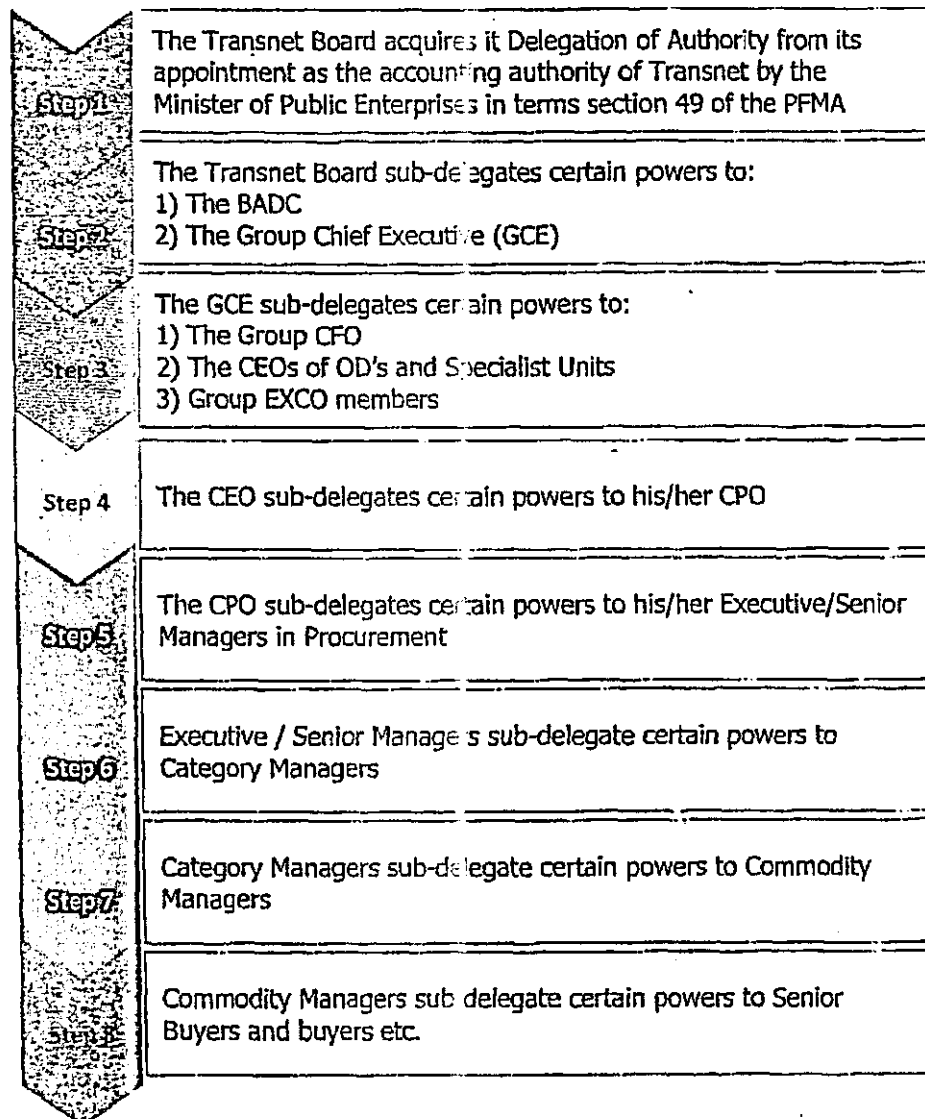
- 5.6.1 Transnet insists on honesty, integrity and acting beyond reproach at all times and will not tolerate any form of improper influencing, bribery, corruption, fraud or any other unethical conduct on the part of Bidders / Transnet employees.
- 5.6.2 If Transnet's GCFO (or a duly authorised person) has determined that a Bidder / contractor / supplier has or has caused to be promised, offered or given to an Transnet employee, any bribe, commission, or any unauthorized gift, loan, advantage or other consideration, Transnet shall be entitled to revoke the bid / contract by following the process that governs the Exclusion of Bidders. Upon approval by the GCFO or duly authorized delegate, Transnet will be entitled to place any Bidder / contractor / supplier who has contravened the provisions of Transnet's business ethics on its List of Excluded Bidders. Furthermore, in terms of section 34 of the Prevention and Combating of Corrupt Activities Act 12 of 2004, Transnet will refer all matters of suspected corruption to the South African Police Services (SAPS) for further investigation.
- 5.6.3 Transnet reserves the right to exclude a Bidder from further business and/or to cancel all existing contracts, should a Bidder/supplier be found to have acted in bad faith or engaged in misconduct towards Transnet. Furthermore, no part of a contract may be subcontracted to an Excluded Bidder.
- 5.6.4 Bid documents should always contain a clause indicating that any suspected fraud, corruption or other unethical activities should be reported to Transnet Tip-off: Anonymous at any of the following addresses and contact numbers. Confidentiality is guaranteed at all times.
- Toll-free anonymous hotline : 0800 003 056
 - Email : Transnet@tip-offs.com
 - Fax number : 0800 007 788
 - Freepost DN 298, Umhlanga Rocks, 4320

5.7 SANCTION

Non-compliance with the Code of Ethics is considered to be misconduct and employee may be subject to disciplinary procedures that could lead to dismissal as well as criminal and/or civil action.

CHAPTER 6 : DELEGATION OF AUTHORITY FOR PROCUREMENT PROCESSES**6.1. HOW DELEGATION OF AUTHORITY WORKS**

Figure 2 below explains how authority is delegated from the Minister of Public Enterprise to the various structures and persons within Transnet via a series of sub-delegations:

How Delegation of Authority works within the context of Procurement**Figure [2] – Delegation of Authority**

6.2. DELEGATION OF AUTHORITY FRAMEWORK

The Transnet Delegation of Authority (DoA) Framework sets out the powers delegated to certain officials (e.g. GCE, GCFO, OD CEO, etc) to perform specified tasks in relation to various areas of operation (e.g. finance, treasury, procurement, etc). The following powers, depicted in Table 4 below, are derived from the Transnet Delegation of Authority Framework dated 1 May 2012. However, please note that these monetary limits are amended from time to time. Employees are therefore required to familiarise themselves with the monetary limits contained in the current DoA Framework.

TABLE 4

Procurement delegation	Approval Authority (R million)							
	Group Exco Members (Specialist Units, excl. TCP)	CEO/ HOD (budget owner) of Specialist Unit, excl. TCP	OD CEOs & TCP GE	GCSCO	GCFO	GCE	BADC	Board
Appointment of Consultants - Clause 5.4.1 of DoA Framework (Cumulative per annum)	≤R10m	Nil	≤R25m	Nil	≤R50m	≤R200m	≤R300m	>R300m
Approval to approach market with Open Bids - Clause 5.4.2 of DoA Framework	Nil	≤R75m	≤R450m	≤R525m	≤R600m	≤R750m	≤R1,500m	>R1,500m
Approval to approach market with Confined Bids - Clause 5.4.3 of DoA Framework	Nil	Nil	Nil	Nil	Nil	≤R250m	≤R1,000m	>R1,000m
Management's Intervention to address non-compliance with procurement policies & procedures - Clause 5.4.4 of DoA Framework (Condonation)	Nil	Nil	Nil	Nil	Nil	≤R50m	≤R1,000m	>R1,000m
Entry into & signing of contracts - Clause 5.5.1 of DoA Framework	≤R30m	≤R5m subject to the contract period not exceeding 5 Years	≤R450m	≤R525m	≤R600m	≤R750m	≤R1,500m	>R1,500m

6.3. POWERS VESTED IN TRANSNET OFFICIALS

It is important to bear in mind that not all powers vested in Transnet officials are contained in the DoA Framework. In the procurement context, certain powers are also vested in officials in terms of this PPM whilst other powers are inherent to the job function e.g. the day to day running of the procurement function. Figure 3 below explains the powers vested in Transnet officials in terms of the DoA Framework, the PPM and their job function, respectively:





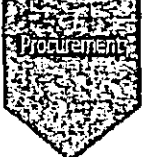
Delegatee	From Whom	Delegation in terms of Transnet DoA Framework	Powers acquired in terms of the PPM	Delegation in terms of a general blanket delegation
	Transnet Board	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Approve Confinements ≤ R250m • Consultants ≤ R50m • Condonations ≤ R250m • Going to market on open tender & sign contracts ≤ R500m 	Final arbiter for appeals on blacklisting	Responsible for the day-to-day running of Transnet
	GCE	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Consultants ≤ R25m • Going to market on open tender & sign contracts ≤ R400m 	Approve decision to blacklist	N/A to procurement
	GCE	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Approve consultants ≤ R5m • Going to market on open tenders & sign contracts ≤ R300m 	Approve OD Approved Lists Appoint AC & Chair/ members Mediate disagreements between AC and line/procurement, etc.	Responsible for the day-to-day running of the operating division
	OD CEO	Going to market on open tenders & sign contracts depending on the value delegated by the OD CEO	Delegate powers to CFSTs, CFET & PTN teams, empower procurement to utilise quotation system & emergency purchases and initiate blacklisting proceedings	Responsible for the day-to-day running of the OD procurement function
	OD CPO	Going to market on open tenders & sign contracts depending on the value delegated by the OD CPO	Facilitate CFSTs, CFET & PTN teams Utilise quotation system and emergency purchases, issue open tenders and initiate blacklisting cases	Responsible for the day-to-day procurement tasks and functions

Figure [3] – Types of Delegated Authorities

6.4. DOA SUMMARY

Figures 4 to 9 below collectively represent a summary of the Delegations of Authority required for various procurement approval processes and thresholds as at 1 May 2012. However, please note that these monetary limits are amended from time to time. Employees are therefore required to familiarise themselves with the monetary limits contained in the current DoA Framework.

Procurement approval processes at Transnet

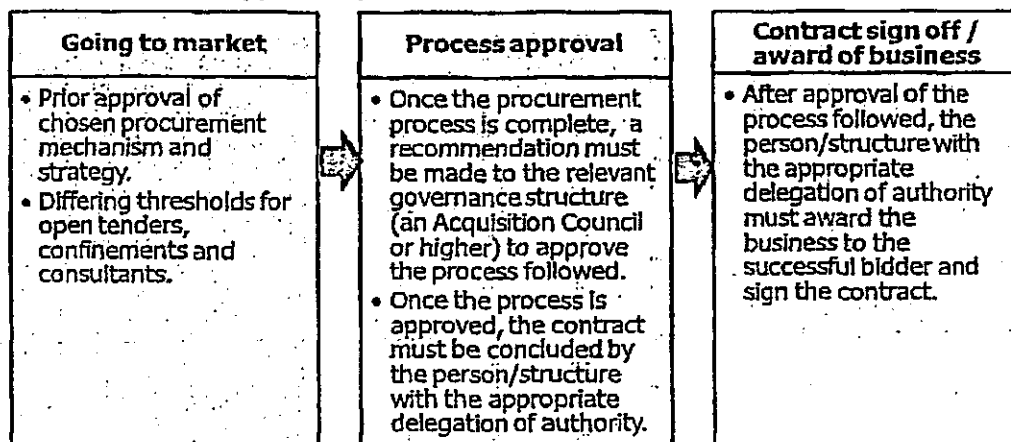


Figure [4] – Procurement approval processes

The thresholds applicable to the various approval steps are depicted in the diagrams below.

(a) Thresholds for approval to go to market

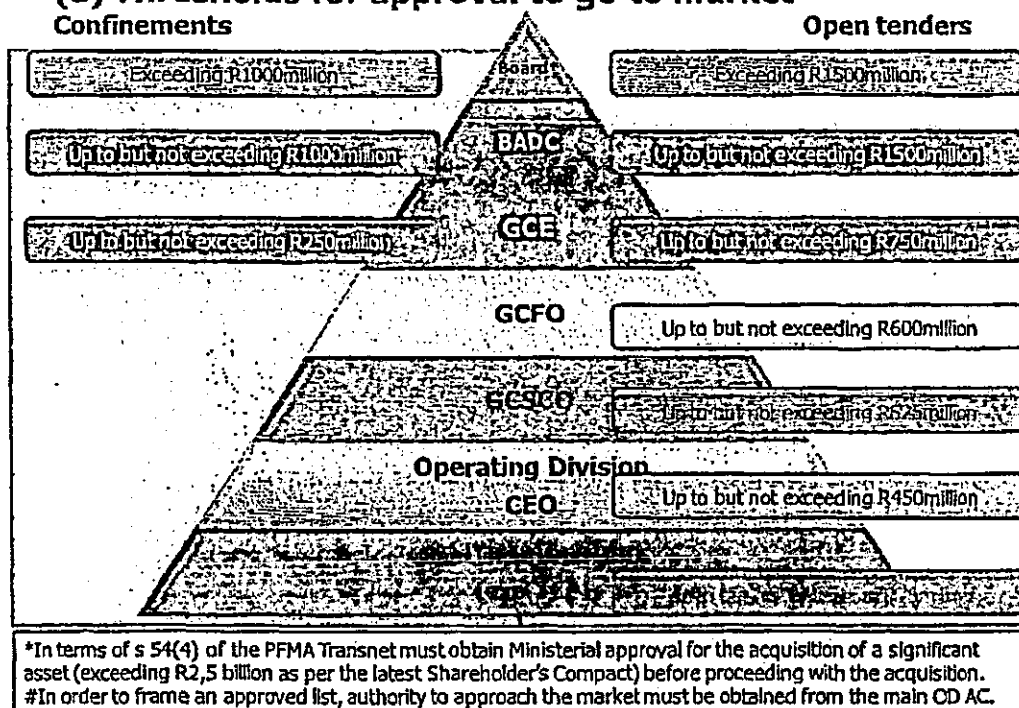
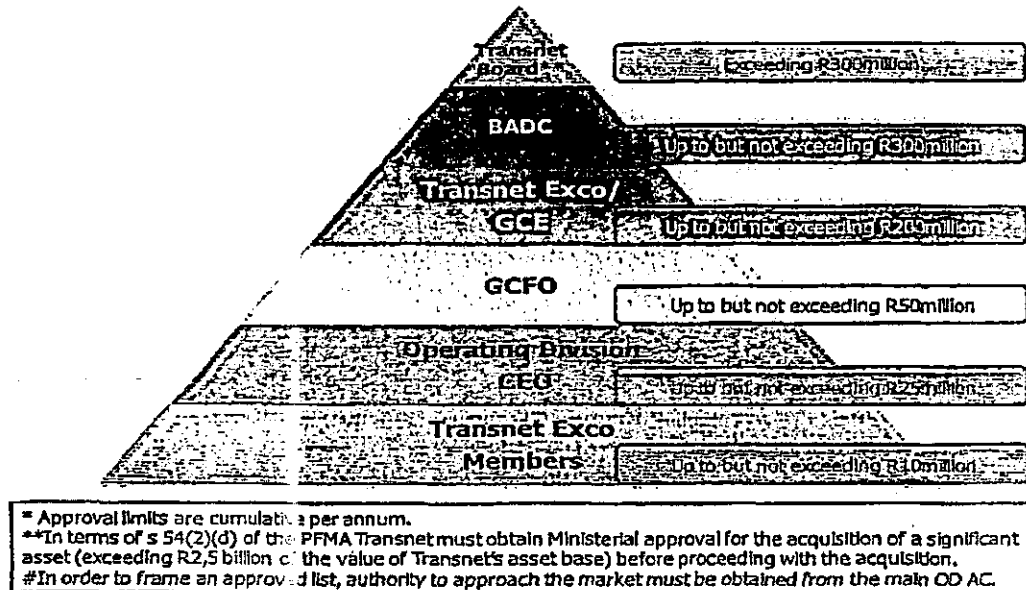
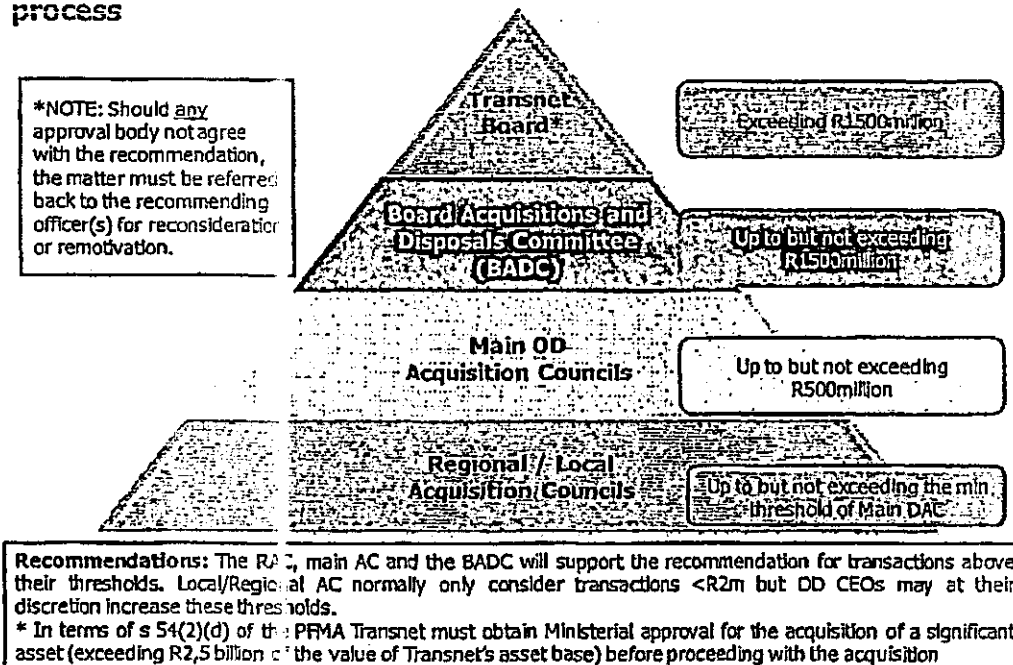
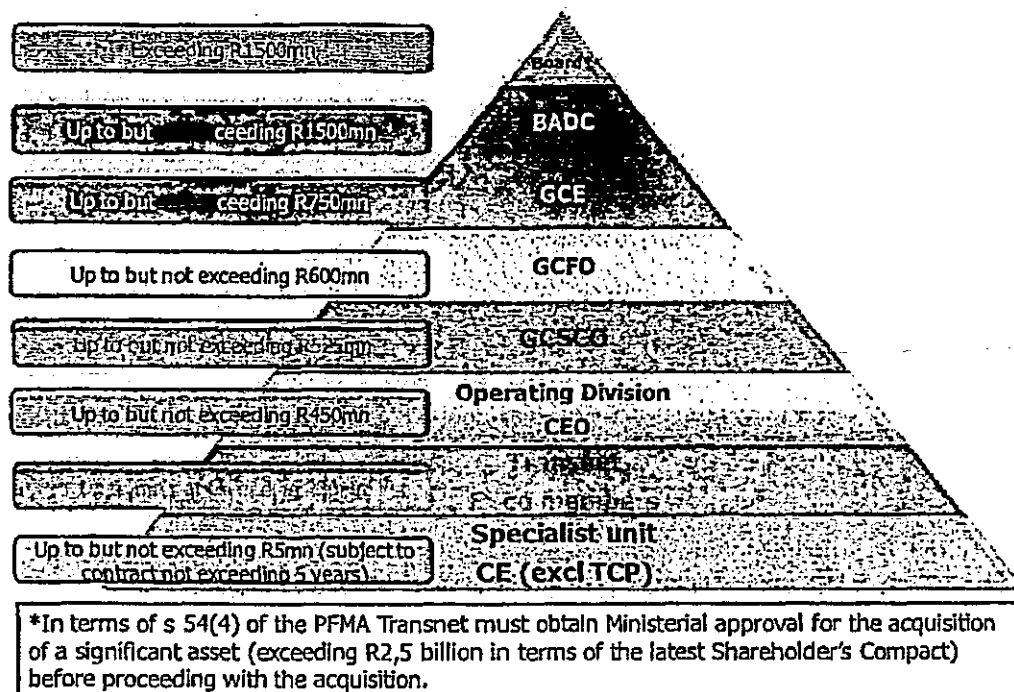
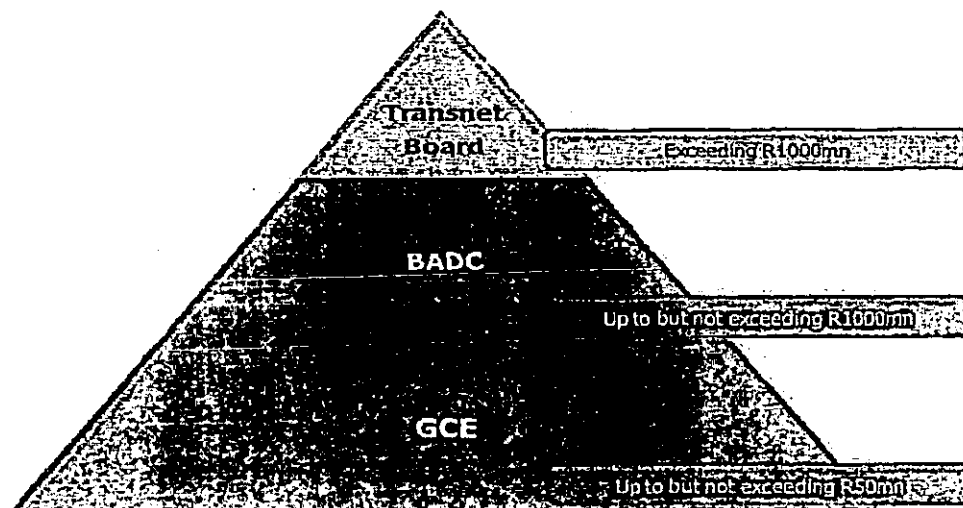


Figure [5] – Thresholds for approval to go to market

(b) Appointment of consultants***Figure [6] – Appointment of consultants****(c) Thresholds for Governance Structure approval of process****Figure [7] – Thresholds for governance structure approval of process**

(d) Thresholds for contract sign off / award of business**Figure [8] – Thresholds for contract sign off / award of business****(e) Management's intervention to address non compliance with procurement policies & procedures (Condonations)****Figure [9] – Management's intervention to address non-compliance with procurement policies & procedures**

Background and Context

SECTION B:

**PROCUREMENT
PLANNING**

Chapter 7: Demand Planning & Demand Management

- Preface
- Demand levers
- Role of procurement in managing demand
- Demand process
- Checklist for demand planning & management
- Sourcing Strategy

Chapter 8: Internal Procurement / Interdivisional Support

Chapter 9: Contract Options

- Summary of contract options
- Contracts > 2 years
- Standard Transnet Terms and Conditions

Chapter 10: Preferential Procurement Approach

- Targets
- Mechanisms
- Measurement of BBBEE status

Chapter 11: Local Content

Chapter 12: Supplier Development Approach

- Categories of SD transactions
- Process of categorising transactions
- Evaluation criteria

Chapter 13: Determining Evaluation Criteria

- Choosing an appropriate evaluation method
- Determining evaluation criteria
- Determine weightings of evaluation criteria

Chapter 14: Main Procurement Mechanisms

- Quotation system
- The open bid process (RFP)
- Approved list purchases
- Two stage bidding process

Chapter 15: Special Cases

- Confinements
- Emergency procedure
- High Value Tender Process
- Unsolicited bids
- Contract consolidation
- Acquisitions associated with income generating contracts

Go to Market

Evaluation and Adjudication

Contract Management

Functions of Governance Structures

Appendices

FOR INTERNAL USE ONLY

PROCUREMENT PROCEDURES MANUAL

TYPICAL PROCUREMENT CYCLE

Figure 10 below depicts a typical procurement cycle. Comprehensive guidance on each of these steps is dealt with in the Chapters that follow:

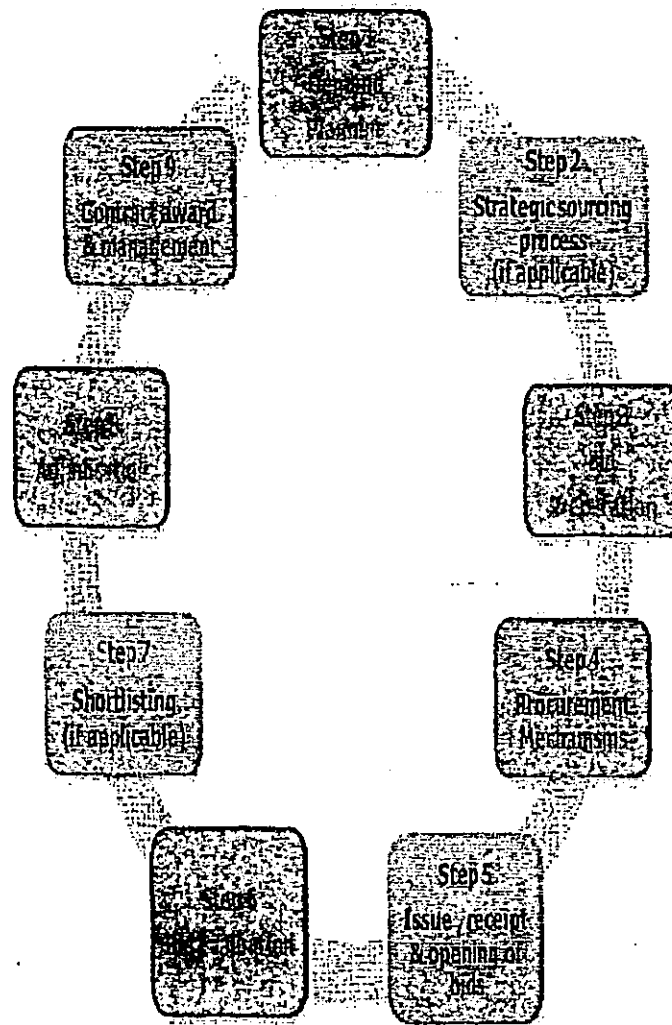


Figure [10] – The Procurement Cycle

Background and Context

SECTION B:**PROCUREMENT
PLANNING****Chapter 7: Demand Planning & Demand Management**

- Preface
- Demand levers
- Role of procurement in managing demand
- Demand process
- Checklist for demand planning & management
- Sourcing Strategy

Chapter 8: Internal Procurement / Interdivisional Support**Chapter 9: Contract Options**

- Summary of contract options
- Contracts > 2 years
- Standard Transnet Terms and Conditions

Chapter 10: Preferential Procurement Approach

- Targets
- Mechanisms
- Measurement of BBBEE status

Chapter 11: Local Content**Chapter 12: Supplier Development Approach**

- Categories of SD transactions
- Process of categorising transactions
- Evaluation criteria

Chapter 13: Determining Evaluation Criteria

- Choosing an appropriate evaluation method
- Determining evaluation criteria
- Determine weightings of evaluation criteria

Chapter 14: Main Procurement Mechanisms

- Quotation system
- The open bid process (RFP)
- Approved list purchases
- Two stage bidding process

Chapter 15: Special Cases

- Confinements
- Emergency procedure
- High Value Tender Process
- Unsolicited bids
- Contract consolidation
- Acquisitions associated with income generating contracts

Go to Market

Evaluation and Adjudication

Contract Management

Functions of Governance Structures

Appendices

CHAPTER 7 : DEMAND PLANNING & DEMAND MANAGEMENT**7.1. PREFACE**

- 7.1.1. Demand is a business requirement for Goods/Services raised by the business/OD and received by the procurement department for further processing, such as sourcing and payment. There are 2 areas of demand i.e. demand planning and demand management.
- 7.1.2. Demand Planning is the first step in the procurement process, where:
 - 7.1.2.1. the business needs are assessed in order to ensure that the required Goods/Services are procured so as to meet the business requirements of Transnet;
 - 7.1.2.2. specifications are precisely determined;
 - 7.1.2.3. requirements are linked to budget; and
 - 7.1.2.4. the supplying industry has been analysed and constraints identified and assessed.
- 7.1.3. Demand planning is a medium term and cross functional planning process supported by a series of meetings that promote alignment, decision making and coordinated action towards achievement of financial budgets and organizational strategy.
- 7.1.4. Demand Management is about understanding the factors that drive demand for people and products and using this knowledge to identify and implement new and innovative ways to eliminate, reduce or serve demand more efficiently and by doing so reduce costs.
- 7.1.5. Demand management is about understanding the factors that drive demand for Goods/Services and about using this knowledge to identify and implement new and innovative ways to eliminate, reduce or serve demand more efficiently and to support robust demand planning – and in so doing optimise value and quality by enabling suppliers to have a forward looking view of requirements expected of them and adequately plan production and by enabling the procurement department to adequately prepare itself and work more efficiently and effectively. Demand management therefore involves the reviewing, monitoring and improving of demand.
- 7.1.6. Demand review is a strategic decision process ensuring that all stakeholders are fully aware and agree to the Goods/Services that are to be procured, why it is to be procured, how it is to be procured, and the cost.
- 7.1.7. Demand monitoring is a tactical process ensuring that only the required quantity and Quality of Goods/Services are sourced from the right suppliers.
- 7.1.8. Demand improvement is a strategic and a tactical process ensuring that the quality of demand improves continuously as the demand management process matures, with initiatives such as reducing the demand and rationalising the Goods/Service portfolio.

7.1.9. Therefore, the purpose of demand planning and management is to ensure that the resources required to fulfil the requirements identified in Transnet's Corporate Plan are delivered at the correct price, time and place and that the delivered quantity and quality will satisfy those requirements.

7.1.10. The intention of demand planning is to:

- 7.1.10.1. to have a clear view of the demand requirements for major strategic commodities;
- 7.1.10.2. to ensure that end-users and the procurement department are brought closer together in order to enhance efficiency and achieve value for money; and
- 7.1.10.3. to foster an improved working relationship of openness between Transnet and its suppliers and/or service providers.

7.2. DEMAND LEVERS

A demand consists of various demand levers that are managed by the demand planning and management process. These levers are:

TABLE 5

SOURCE	The origin of the demand such as the initiating department or OD
REASON	The motivation for the demand such as why these Goods/Services need to be sourced
QUANTITY	Review the number/scope of the Goods/Services required
SPECIFICATION	Opportunity to simplify/standardise specifications
TIMEFRAME	Reduce demand frequency
COST	The indicative cost of the Goods/Services that need to be sourced
PREFERRED SUPPLIER	The preferred supplier (if any) for the requested Goods/Services Other potential suppliers who could also be in a position to supply the same Goods/Services

7.3. ROLE OF PROCUREMENT IN MANAGING DEMAND

Procurement needs to manage the demand for Goods/Services by:

- analysing demand levers and sourcing data that will enable a more accurate view/prediction of demand;;
- identifying opportunities for improvement of the entire demand management function;
- short-listing and prioritising improvement initiatives;
- developing and implementing an action plan for identified initiatives;
- monitoring the progress of improvement of the initiatives; and
- conducting regular assessment of the effectiveness and relevance of improvement initiatives.

7.4. DEMAND PROCESS

Figure 11 below gives an outline of the main steps in the demand management process.

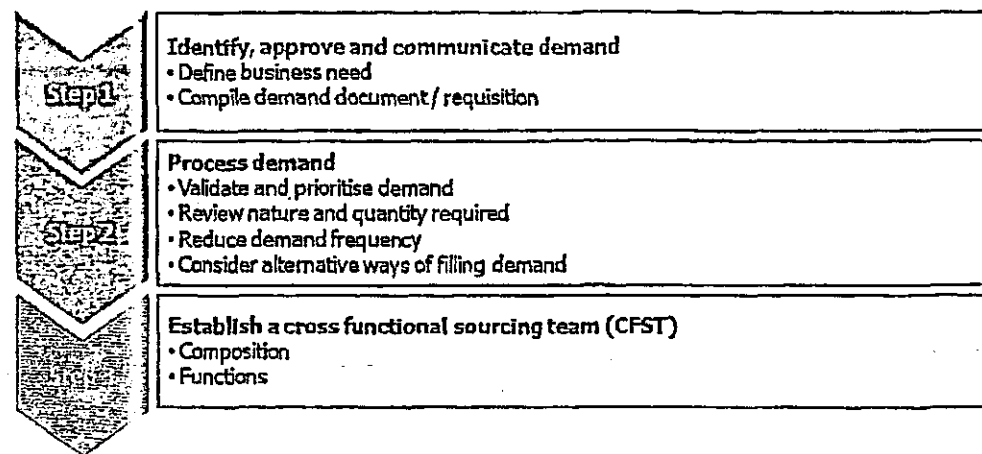
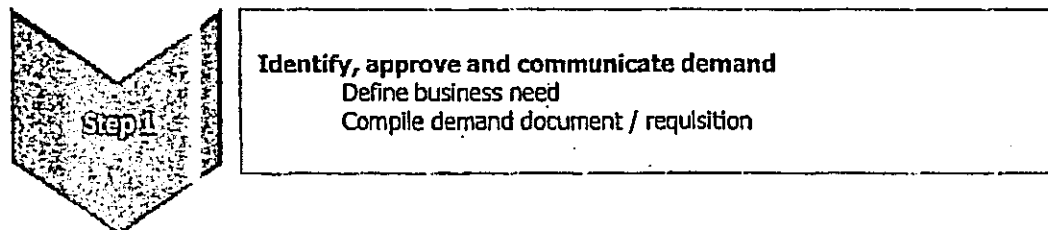


Figure [11] – Demand Steps

For sourcing events falling within the threshold for High Value Tenders, refer to the "High Value Tender Process (HVTP)" available on the ISCM Transnet Intranet.

**OPERATIONS (end users) are responsible for completing
STEP 1**



7.4.1. STEP 1 : Identify, approve and communicate demand

a) Definition of business need

The end users in the business (operations) need to follow the steps outlined below, in order to ensure that there is a clearly defined need in the business:-

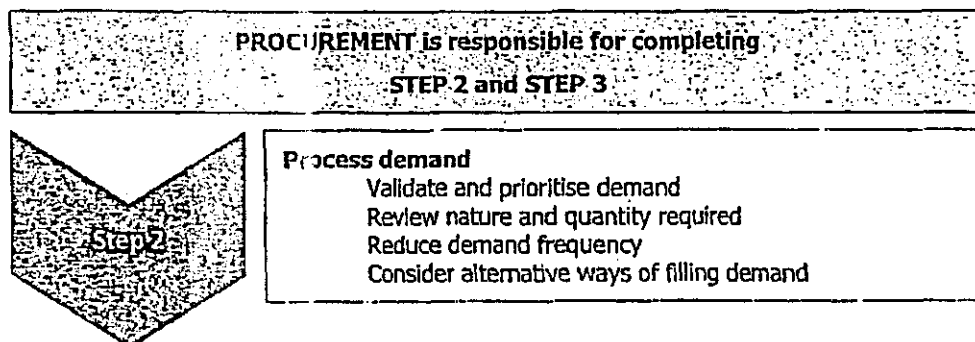
- (i) conduct a needs analysis to establish requirements relating to the business, taking into account all required capital acquisitions, planned maintenance, and other operational needs – this will be informed by both future requirements (based upon Transnet's Corporate Plan); as well as market demand forecasts (based upon Transnet's current client base demand and/or commitments made by Transnet's sales department);
- (ii) establish and consolidate the reasons for the need;
- (iii) ratify the need irrespective of whether it is a CAPEX or OPEX acquisition and apply for and obtain budget approval; and
- (iv) draw up an annual procurement plan.

b) Compilation of demand document (per transaction)

The end users in the business (operations) are responsible to provide procurement with a detailed demand requisition. This should provide a clear description of the function, required specifications, drawings, and where applicable it should:-

- (i) Indicate the quantity/-ies required;
- (ii) Indicate the frequency/-ies required;
- (iii) Indicate the quality required;
- (iv) Indicate the unit of measure;
- (v) Indicate packaging, if applicable;
- (vi) attach the relevant specification/drawing, where applicable;
- (vii) provide previous price or estimated costs and budgetary requirements;
- (viii) Indicate the expected delivery date(s) and delivery address(es);
- (ix) Indicate any logistical and/or storage requirements;
- (x) any material obsolescence risks; and
- (xi) suggest potential source/s of supply and a brief analysis of the supplier industry landscape, if available.

The demand document should first be approved at an operational level. Once that is completed, it should be submitted to procurement. Operations should submit this document timeously, and allow sufficient time to acquire the Goods/Services, given lead times and governance processes.



7.4.2. STEP 2 : Processing Demand

a) **Validate and prioritise demand**

Procurement shall establish the following:

- (i) Is the demand document/requisition duly approved by operations?
- (ii) Is this a critical demand? ("Critical" is defined as having an impact on the Service provided by Transnet or the profit made by Transnet).
- (iii) What would be the impact on operations if the procurement did not occur?

b) **Review nature and quantity required**

Procurement shall establish and review the following:

- (i) Establish whether this is a requirement for Goods or a Service?
 - (ii) If Goods are required, whether the demand will be on-going or once-off?
 - (iii) If Goods are required, determine how many types of items and quantity of each item are required in total by operations at present time and going forward? What are the options (if any) for reducing volume?
 - (iv) If a Service is required, determine for what length of time the Service is required? (Indicate length of Transnet's previous use (if any) of the specific Service). Could this be reduced or extended?
 - (v) Determine the estimated value of the sourcing event (if not provided by operations) to establish which sourcing process must be followed:
 - if below R2 million, or lower threshold set by the OD CEO for Open Bids, use the quotation system (see Chapter 14);
 - if over R2 million use an "open RFX", approach (see Chapter 14); and
 - if within the threshold for High Value Tenders, use the High Value Tender process (see ISCM Transnet Internet portal).
- c) **Reduce demand frequency**
Procurement shall establish and review the following:-
- (i) If the Goods to be purchased will require additional purchases going forward, is it reasonable for an "as-and-when call off" contract to be established? State reasons either for or against an "as-and-when call off" contract.
 - (ii) If a Service is required, what is the length of the anticipated contract? Explain rationale for this time period.
- d) **Consider alternative ways of fulfilling demand**
Procurement shall establish and review the following whether:-
- (i) the required Goods can be re-engineered or reclaimed from existing assets or Goods;
 - (ii) any other OD can manufacture the required Goods or provide the required Service;
 - (iii) the Goods are currently available in another OD with spare capacity;
 - (iv) this is a stock item; or
 - (v) this item is available on a current contract-- even if it is potentially at another OD.



Establish a cross functional sourcing team (CFST)

Composition
Functions

7.4.3. STEP 3 : Establish a Cross Functional Sourcing Team ("CFST") in the case of acquisitions greater than R5 million or where the quality criteria is not a simple yes/no decision

a) Rationale for the formation of a CFST

Demand management shall be a cross-functional exercise with a view to ensuring that end users, procurement and all stakeholders are brought together in order to enhance efficiency and achieve value.

b) Composition of the CFST

Procurement shall establish a CFST, consisting of at least the following roles: Procurement, operations (end users), SD (including B-BBEE) and risk. Other possible representatives are finance, treasury, maintenance, logistics/warehousing, disposal and legal or governance.

In instances where the sourcing event is uncomplicated and the risk to Transnet is low, the CFST can be comprised of only procurement and Quality (technical) representatives.

Procurement must ensure that the CFST consists of the relevant expertise; and that the size of the team is not of such a nature that it cannot function effectively. Nonetheless, in all instances, procurement and operations must reach agreement on the composition of the CFST.

In order for the CFST to be effective, consistent attendance by the same members is required for continuity.

c) Functions of the CFST

(i) Determining specifications:-

"Specification" is the terminology used to describe the requirement for goods.

If Goods are being sourced, consider whether there is any opportunity to purchase standard "off-the-shelf" Goods.

If there are technical specifications:-

- these must be compiled with a view to promoting the broadest possible competition, whilst still assuring that critical elements of performance or other requirements are achieved;
- ascertain whether similar (albeit not identical) Goods are currently in use elsewhere in Transnet, which could enable standardisation;
- Interrogate the specification, i.e. determine whether it is possible to provide a functional/performance-based specification rather than a detailed specification;
- determine whether the specification has been over-engineered; and
- verify that the specification is not biased in favour of a particular brand or type of Goods.
- If a functional specification is the chosen option, the following must be observed and described in detail:

- functions and characteristics;
- desired performance and/or result parameters, based on both inputs and outputs;
- method statement templates on how outputs will be reached; and
- inclusion of relevant KPIs.

If a detailed specification will be issued, ensure that the latest specification is used, and that the quality standards (e.g. SANS, ISO) are included where applicable. In addition, ensure that the drawings are up to date and that detailed descriptions of manufacturing processes, workmanship and/or materials are indicated.

The following must be observed and indicated in the RFX in respect of functional as well as detailed specifications:

- the location(s) of required provision;
- details of qualifications required where appropriate;
- details of the conditions in which the Goods must operate;
- environmental and safety features;
- packaging, marking and labelling requirements;
- inspection or testing requirements;
- documentation required, i.e. manuals, user guides, licenses, test certificates, etc.;
- size/dimensions;
- Integration with other Goods/Services;
- security requirements;
- health, safety, electrical, environmental requirements;
- training requirements, if applicable;
- timing considerations; and
- interfaces with other systems.

(ii) Determining Terms of Reference

"Terms of Reference" (ToR) is the terminology used to describe the requirement for services.

The following must be observed and indicated in respect of the ToR:

- project title;
- background;
- objective of the project
- expected outcomes/deliverables;
- competency and expertise requirements;
- timeframes;

- reporting requirements;
 - whether a site inspection or information session are required with date, time and venue stated;
 - available documentation; and
 - minimum requirements.
- (iii) Reduce portfolio or range complexity:
- Options for rationalisation of the range of Goods/Services must be considered.
 - Implications for users if choice options are reduced must be considered.
- (iv) Identify and mitigate risks:
- All risks to Transnet associated with the demand must be identified and addressed in the eventual RFX;
 - It should be ascertained whether suitable skills are available within procurement to address the demand and its management process.
- (v) Establish the evaluation methodology to be employed – See Chapter 13 on Determining bid Evaluation Criteria.
- (vi) Establish evaluation criteria and weightings – See Chapter 13 on Determining Evaluation Criteria. Clear evaluation criteria must be established, as bids may only be evaluated according to the criteria stipulated in the bid documents.
- (vii) Oversee preparation and sign off of the bid documentation – See Chapter 16 on Bid Preparation.
- (viii) Determine who should serve on the evaluation committee – See Chapter 18 on Evaluation.
- (ix) Handover the sourcing event to procurement

7.5. CHECKLIST FOR DEMAND PLANNING & MANAGEMENT

The following checklist could be used as a template to identify the progress with respect to the Demand Management process:

TABLE 6

Demand Planning & Management Focus	Responsible
Is there a business case and approval of the demand?	Business
Has the demand been identified in the annual Procurement Plan? (The Procurement plan forms the basis of demand management)	Business & Procurement
Is there a budget allocated for this demand?	Business
Is there an approval as per the associated DoA?	Business
Have the options of fulfilling the demand (such as existing contracts and critical items) been assessed?	Business & Procurement
What is the outcome of reviewing the quantity required (i.e. are	Procurement

Demand Planning & Management Focus	Responsible
the Goods/Services required on an on-going or once-off basis)?	
Has the possibility of reducing the demand frequency, such as further purchasing or call-off, been assessed?	Business & Procurement
Have the options of alternate ways of fulfilling this demand, such as whether other Transnet ODs could manufacture these Goods, been assessed?	Procurement
Have the options of re-use been assessed? (e.g. re-engineered Goods from existing Goods or whether the Goods are available from other Transnet ODs) Have the 3 Rs (Reduce-Reuse-Recycle) been considered?	Business & Procurement
Has the possibility of standardising the Goods and its specifications, such as off-the-shelf and customised, been assessed?	Business
Has the opportunity of reducing the Goods portfolio, such costing and risk implications associated with it, been identified?	Procurement
Have the strategic risks associated with this demand, such as strategic nature of this demand been identified?	Business
Has Internal availability been assessed, i.e. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Can the needed Goods be re-engineered / reclaimed from existing assets/Goods? Can any OD of Transnet manufacture the required Goods or provide the required Service? Are these Goods currently available in another OD with spare capacity? Is this a stock item? Is this item available on a current contract? 	Business & Procurement Business & Procurement Business & Procurement Business & Procurement Business & Procurement
Was the CFST properly constituted?	Procurement
Have the risks associated with the CFST working on this demand, such as capacity and capability not available within the Transnet been identified?	Procurement
Does the CFST represent all the necessary disciplines for identifying the risks associated with the event?	Procurement
Did the CFST members sign confidentiality agreements and declarations of Interest?	CFST
Did the CFST properly Interrogate the specification?	CFST
Were all risks identified and included in the RFX?	CFST
Has it been considered whether this should be a transversal event in the interests of Transnet as a whole?	CFST
Has a 'As-and When' contract option been investigated, in order to cater for future demand?	CFST
Was the appropriate evaluation method chosen?	CFST
Were thresholds set for SD and Quality/Functionality?	CFST
Were proper evaluation criteria set for:	

Demand Planning & Management Focus	Responsible
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> SD Functionality Preference Price / TCO? 	CFST
Were appropriate weightings allocated to each criterion?	CFST

7.6. SOURCING STRATEGY

Once a CFST has been established, the next step is to determine the sourcing strategy. The methodology for determining a sourcing strategy is depicted in the figure below. Please refer to the Strategic Sourcing Standard Operating Procedures (SOP) which provides detailed guidance on the strategic sourcing process. The SOP can be downloaded from the ISCM Transnet Intranet.

Methodology for developing a Sourcing Strategy

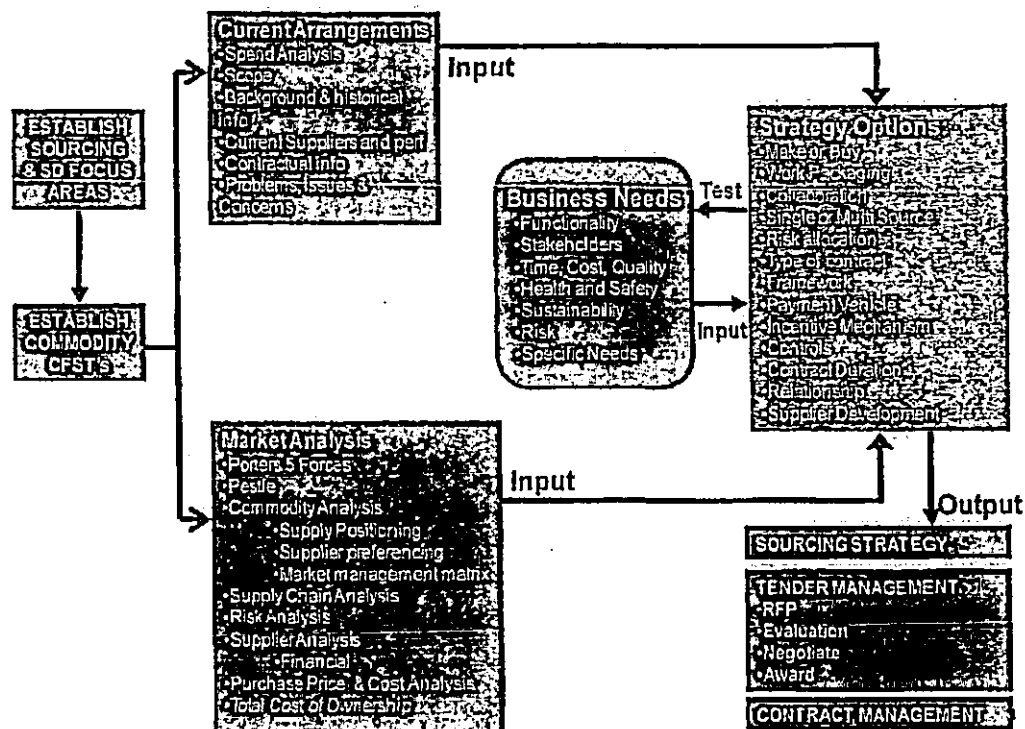


Figure [12] – Methodology for developing a sourcing strategy

CHAPTER 3 : INTERNAL PROCUREMENT/INTERDIVISIONAL SUPPORT POLICY**8.1 INTERDIVISIONAL RELATIONSHIPS**

Transnet Entities are required to develop trust and a sound interdivisional working relationship with one another in the interest of Transnet. To achieve this, such entities **must** be afforded the right of first refusal in the procurement of Goods and Services.

8.2 STRATEGIC SPECIALIST UNITS

The following Specialist Units have been identified as strategically important to the Transnet Group:

TABLE 7

Division or Specialist Unit	Goods and/or Services Provided
Transnet Rail Engineering ("TRE", specialist core Division)	TRE is responsible for: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> heavy engineering including locomotive, wagon and coach repairs, upgrades and maintenance component manufacture, locomotive manufacture and assembly port equipment, and is being positioned for maintenance and repairs thereof
Transnet Capital Projects ("TCP")	TCP is responsible for: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> multi-disciplinary design Services project management and construction management Services <p>Construction projects >R300 million must be carried out by TCP.</p> <p>In the case of construction related projects <R300 million, the following rules apply:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The project may be carried out by the OD itself if the OD has the necessary in-house resources; and If the OD decides not to run the project itself, TCP must be given the first right of refusal before the external market can be approached
Transnet Fuel Solutions (TFS, previously known as HSA)	TFS is responsible for: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Transnet-wide fuel acquisition, distribution and management
Transnet Freight Rail ("TFR") School of Rail	TFR School of Rail is responsible for: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> training tailored exclusively for core businesses, e.g. School of Rail, train drivers, train control officers, software training in general, etc.
Transnet National Ports Authority ("TNPA") School of Ports	TNPA School of Ports is responsible for: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Facilitation of knowledge transfer as the provider of marine training programmes in South Africa Planning to position itself as Africa's training leader in Marine Operations, Port Management and Port Engineering.

Division or Specialist Unit	Goods and/or Services Provided
Transnet Property (TP)	TP is responsible for: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Property management • Facilities management • Property development • Property valuations • Property surveying

8.3 ABILITY OF TRANSNET ODS TO PERFORM

Before considering which procurement mechanism would be most appropriate, it is important that the end-user and procurement department consider whether another Transnet OD is able to provide the required Goods or Services.

8.4 COMPULSORY UTILISATION OF SPECIALIST UNITS

The Specialist Units mentioned above must be utilised by other Transnet Entities for required Goods and Services falling within their scope. The external market may not be approached for Goods and Services falling within the strategic Specialist Units' or Division's core-competency areas. The only exception to this rule is if the Specialised Unit indicates in writing that they do not have the ability or capacity to provide the required Goods or Services.

8.5 INTERDIVISIONAL SUPPORT POLICY

Internal contracts (Memoranda of Understanding) between ODs and Specialist Units are dealt with in the terms of the Interdivisional Support Policy. Such contracts do not require AC approval. However, any external contracts which may be required by the Internal Specialist Unit are subject to these procedures and require AC approval.

8.6 MEMORANDA OF UNDERSTANDING

The business relationship between Transnet Divisions and Specialist Units must be governed by an overarching Memorandum of Understanding (MOU) between the parties. The MOU must be signed by the CE of the relevant ODs or Specialist Units and Service Level Agreements should be signed where appropriate.

8.7 DISPUTES

Any disputes must be resolved in terms of the agreed MOU. If the OD CEs are unable to resolve the dispute, the matter must be escalated to the GCE who shall make a final decision on the matter.

8.8 SERVICE LEVEL AGREEMENT

ODs will need to enter into a project-specific agreement (SLA) in relation to each individual project. This agreement will set out in details the rights, duties and obligations of each OD in that specific project. Contracts between divisions such as SLAs and project specific agreements may be entered into between OD CEs in terms of paragraph 5.5.3 of the DoA Framework.

8.9 INTERDIVISIONAL PRICING

Transnet entities undertaking work on behalf of other entities should reciprocate by pricing and carrying out their Services in a way that promotes and develops a culture of interdivisional support. The pricing must be based on appropriate market analysis to benchmark fair and reasonable prices. Should there be a dispute regarding pricing, the matter is to be escalated to the CEs of the relevant Divisions for resolution. Should the CEs not reach consensus, the matter must be escalated to the GCE who shall make a final decision on the matter.

8.10 NON-CORE BUSINESSES

Non-core businesses which have already exited Transnet, such as Freightdynamics and Autopax (Pty) Ltd will enjoy no interdivisional support.

8.11 AC INVOLVEMENT

Interdivisional transactions between Transnet Entities and Specialist Units fall outside the scope of the AC. However, in any case where the external market is approached, normal procurement procedures must be followed, and if relevant, the AC needs to approve the transaction.

CHAPTER 9 : CONTRACT OPTIONS

9.1 CHOICE OF CONTRACT

The selection of the type of contract to be entered into with a supplier is based on various factors such as the duration of the contract, the type of Goods or Services to be acquired, the frequency of demand and the availability of the Goods. The following table outlines the various contract options and provides a guideline as to when those options may best be utilised.

TABLE 8

Ref.	Contract Options	Description	Characteristics	Best Suited For
1	"As and When" contracts	Short or medium-term contracts entered into for a fixed period against which call-offs are made as and when required by the customer	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Shorter contract periods (1-2 Years) • Estimated quantities • Specific period/volume/value ceiling or a combination. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Continuous but irregular demand for Goods/Services • Volumes cannot be accurately determined upfront • Demand cannot be anticipated • Generally off-the-shelf items
2	Fixed quantity contracts	Contracts entered into for once-off purchases	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Demand is known • Once-off purchase • Once-off or staggered delivery 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Planned programmes
3	Long-term contracts	Contracts entered into for a fixed period typically for five-Years or more	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Long term demand signal • Emphasis on SD. • Suppliers' recoupment of Investment is long-term • Restricts other market players for a period of time 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Purchase of high value Goods/Services • Goods/Services of strategic importance • Goods with long lead time
4	Transversal contracts	A contract that services more than one internal consumer (an internal shared service arrangement) entered into for a fixed period. A transversal contract may be entered into for the benefit of the entire Group, a particular OD and/or just a region. Below is a list of the types of Transversal contract options:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Emanates from a formal strategic sourcing event • Fixed-contract period • Optimising economies of scale through consolidation of demand/purchasing power 	

Ref	Contract Options	Description	Characteristics	Best Suited For
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Group-wide Transversal contracts 		Consolidation of Goods / Services used Group wide
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Transversal between ODs/ Corporate 		Consolidation of Goods / Services used between ODs
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> OD-wide Transversal contracts 		Consolidation of Goods / Services used within an OD
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Regional Transversal contracts 		Consolidation of Goods / Services used within a region by one or more than one OD
5	Lease/Rental contracts	Lease contract for the use of moveable assets entered into for a fixed period	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Specified/unspecified period Agreed Rental Option of renewal 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Goods / Services where it would be more economically viable to lease than to purchase
6	Inter-Divisional Memoranda of Understanding (MOUs)	A 'contract' to govern the service performance agreed between ODs	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Not a formal contract It governs the internal relationship between the ODs 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Governing the performance as agreed between the ODs
7	Income-generating (revenue) contracts	Although excluded from the PPM, associated procurements fall within the ambit of the PPM (See paragraph 15.6)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Listed as a process excluded from PPM Associated procurement must follow the PPM 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> As per OD requirements
8	CIDB and NEC3 Engineering & Construction Contracts	Contracts for construction procurement	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Refer to the TCP Construction Manual 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Construction supply, engineering & construction and services contracts

**Any of the above-mentioned contract options can originate from any of the defined procurement mechanisms and/or special mechanisms for procurement.*

9.2 CONTRACTS FOR A PERIOD LONGER THAN TWO YEARS

Contracts for a period longer than two Years require prior AC approval. However, if the RFP provides for a number of bid options including a period of up to two Years and more than two Years, prior AC approval is not required. (Also see paragraph 21.9). Irrespective of which of the two options above is followed, the award of the business has to be approved by the relevant AC in the normal manner.

9.3 STANDARD TRANSNET TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF CONTRACT

Standard templates must be used unless there are cogent reasons why such standard agreements cannot be used in a particular instance. Refer to the Standardised Transnet Templates available on the ISCM Transnet Intranet, including but not limited to:

- Standard Terms and Conditions of Contract
- Master Agreements

Any additions or deletions from the above-mentioned templates must be contained in a Special Conditions Schedule. (Also see paragraph 21.7.2)

9.4 CONSOLIDATION OF CONTRACTS

Refer to paragraph 15.5 for the process to be followed when there is an opportunity to consolidate two or more existing contracts in the best interest of Transnet rather than engaging the market anew.

9.5 CHOICE OF SALES/PURCHASE TERMS FOR IMPORTED GOODS (INCOTERMS)

The Incoterms rules or International Commercial terms are a series of pre-defined commercial terms published by the International Chamber of Commerce (ICC) widely used in international commercial transactions. A series of three-letter trade terms related to common sales practices, the Incoterms rules are intended primarily to clearly communicate the responsibilities, costs and risks associated with the transportation and delivery of Goods. The Incoterms rules are accepted by governments, legal authorities and practitioners worldwide for the interpretation of most commonly used terms in international trade. They are intended to reduce or remove uncertainties arising from different interpretation of the rules in different countries. First published in 1936, the Incoterms rules have been periodically updated, with the eighth version (Incoterms 2010) having been published and made effective on January 1, 2011. "Incoterms" is a registered trademark of the ICC¹.

Refer to Appendix C for a detailed explanation of all Incoterms.

¹ Source: Wikipedia

CHAPTER 10 : PREFERENTIAL PROCUREMENT APPROACH AND DESIRED OUTCOMES**10.1 TARGETS**

In accordance with its vision of being a significant agent of empowerment within the South African society, Transnet has adopted the following plan to achieve its B-BBEE targets. These targets are more ambitious than those prescribed in the DTI Code of Good Practice:

TABLE 9

Sub Element	DTI Generic Targets	Base Line	Short-term Target 2012/2013	Interim Target 2013/2014	Long-term Target 2014/2015
B-BBEE procurement spend from all suppliers based on the B-BBEE procurement recognition level as a percentage of total measured procurement spend	70%		To be completed after completion of base line exercise		
B-BBEE procurement spend from QSEs or from EMEs based on the applicable B-BBEE procurement recognition levels as a percentage of total measured procurement spend.	10%		To be completed after completion of base line exercise		
B-BBEE procurement spend from any of the following suppliers as a percentage of total measured procurement spend: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Suppliers who are more than 50% Black-owned (3 out of 5 points); and Suppliers who are more than 30% Black women-owned (2 out of 5 points) 	15%		To be completed after completion of base line exercise		

10.2 MECHANISMS

Transnet's exemption from applying most of the provisions of the PPPFA regulations affords it a greater degree of flexibility in determining its preferential procurement framework than is currently allowed for in the PPPFA.

Transnet would like to conduct a holistic assessment of bidders' B-BBEE performance based on the following:

- bidders' past B-BBEE performance based on the B-BBEE scorecard;
- the extent to which bidders' present black ownership, black management and employment equity exceed certain minimum targets set by Transnet. [This is referred to as Further Recognition Criteria (Current)]; and
- the extent to which bidders undertake to improve or maintain their future B-BBEE status in excess of certain minimum targets over the contract period. [This is referred to as Further Recognition Criteria (Future)].

Preference points will be allocated for each of the above categories.

Transnet therefore applies the following additional mechanisms to ensure its B-BBEE targets are achieved:

10.2.1 Allocating additional points for preference

Transnet has adopted a scoring methodology based on a sliding scale of 20 to 40 points to be allocated to preference depending on the nature of the transaction involved. The points allocated to preference should be split between the following categories: B-BBEE scorecard, B-BBEE Further Recognition Criteria (Current) and/or Further Recognition Criteria (Future). FRC (Current) must be given a higher weighting than FRC (Future) if both FRC (Current) and (Future) are included in a particular tender. Should it be decided that only B-BBEE scorecard is going to be used to evaluate preference, the total points for B-BBEE scorecard may range from 20 to 40 points. Table 10 below indicates how the point allocation should take place, depending on the total number of points allocated to preference²:

Table 10

	Total of 20 points allocated to preference	Total of 30 points allocated to preference	Total of 40 points allocated to preference
B-BBEE Scorecard	10	10	10
B-BBEE FRC (Current)	7	15	20
B-BBEE FRC (Future)	3	5	10

10.2.2 Further Recognition Criteria (Current)

This would entail allocating points to entities based on the extent to which their current black ownership, management control and employment equity exceeds stipulated minimum targets.

10.2.3 Further Recognition Criteria (Future)

This would entail allocating further points to Bidders based on the extent to which they commit to improving their B-BBEE status over the contract period in the areas of black ownership, management control, employment equity, preferential procurement and enterprise development.

² Note that this table is a guideline. Depending on the nature of the commodity/service being purchased, it must be determined whether FRC (Current) and/or FRC (Future) are appropriate.

10.2.4 Minimum B-BBEE threshold

On a case by case basis, Transnet may set minimum B-BBEE thresholds as pre-qualification criteria in its bidding process in instances where it is considered that the application of the normal preference point system will not bring about the required transformation. In order to give effect to the principles of fairness, competitiveness and cost effectiveness, while at the same time promoting equity, the threshold should not be set at an unrealistically high level. A thorough market analysis must be undertaken prior to setting a B-BBEE threshold.

10.2.5 Limiting participation in a bid process to persons previously disadvantaged by unfair discrimination (set asides)

South Africa's economy still excludes the vast majority of its people from ownership of productive assets and the possession of advanced skills. Unless further steps are taken to increase the effective participation of the majority of South Africans in the economy, the stability and prosperity of the economy in the future may be undermined to the detriment of all South Africans, Irrespective of race. The introduction of "set asides" is required in sectors that have been historically lagging behind in terms of transformation. On a case by case basis, Transnet may decide to limit (set aside) participation in a bid process to persons previously disadvantaged by unfair discrimination e.g. black owned companies, black women owned companies, exempted micro enterprises, persons with disabilities, persons in rural areas, etc. Set asides will be considered where there is evidence that applying only a preference point system will not achieve desired transformation objectives. The application of set asides must also be conducted in a manner that does not materially undermine the constitutional principles of fairness, competitiveness and cost effectiveness.

Set asides must be approached with great circumspection, as it has the potential to create unfairness if dealt with incorrectly. Set asides must therefore be based on a proper market analysis and rationale to justify the use of this mechanism in a particular instance. The following guidelines are provided for the use of set asides:

- identify the specific contract or commodity where a set aside will apply;
- give an indication of the number of black owned and/or black women owned companies which operate within the sector;
- give an indication of the percentage of Transnet's procurement spend on black owned and black women owned companies operating in the sector over the previous 3 to 5 Years;
- identify the obstacles to success i.e. why are black owned and black women owned companies not achieving success when bidding for Transnet contracts e.g. pricing, quantity, etc.
- explain why an increased weighting for black ownership is unlikely to achieve the desired result and why a set-aside is the only solution;
- explain that the percentage spend in relation to the contract/sector targeted for the set aside is relatively small when compared with Transnet's overall spend;
- demonstrate that the set aside will not operate in an overly harsh manner in relation to entities that are not black owned or black women owned;
- explain that the use of set asides will not be a permanent feature in relation to the procurement of the relevant commodity, but will be used on a case by case basis to increase Transnet's procurement spend on black owned and black women owned companies;

- demonstrate that the principles of competitiveness and cost effectiveness are not materially undermined.

10.3 MEASUREMENT OF B-BBEE STATUS

10.3.1 Measurement as per scorecard

Bid documents must specifically state that all Suppliers will be measured in accordance with the DTI Generic Scorecard provided for in the Codes of Good Practice or the applicable Sector Code.

Transnet prefers doing business with enterprises that share its values, and are prepared to contribute to meaningful B-BBEE initiatives (e.g. subcontracting, JV's etc.) as part of their Bid responses. Transnet will accordingly allow a preference to companies who provide a B-BBEE Verification Certificate. As a general rule, Transnet will award between 10 and 40 points to a Bidder on the basis of the B-BBEE Verification Certificate³. The remaining points will be allocated to FRC (Current) and FRC (Future) (see Table 10 above for an indication as to how the available points for preference will be divided between the scorecard, FRC (Current) and FRC (Future). Transnet requires prospective Bidders to have themselves verified by any verification agency accredited by the South African National Accreditation System ("SANAS") or Registered Auditors approved by the Independent Regulatory Board of Auditors ("IRBA") in accordance with the approval granted by the Department of Trade and Industry. Verification certificates are only valid for one Year from the date of issue. Enterprises will be rated by such agencies based on the following:

TABLE 11

Type of Enterprise	Annual Turnover	Number of Elements Scored on the B-BBEE Generic Scorecard
Large	In excess of R35 million	All 7 elements
Qualifying Small Enterprise (QSE)	Between R5 million and R35 million	Any 4 elements (equal weighting of 25% each)
Exempted Micro Enterprise (EME)	R5 million or less	Deemed to be 100% compliant. Automatic Level 4 rating irrespective of race of ownership

- Exempted Micro Enterprises (EMEs) are defined by the Codes as companies with an annual total turnover of R5 million or less. EMEs enjoy a deemed BBBEE recognition of a Level 4 contributor. EMEs which are either 50% Black owned or 50% Black women owned are promoted to a Level 3 contributor.
- Sufficient evidence of qualification as an EME is an auditor's certificate (auditors need not meet the prerequisite for Independent Regulatory Board of Auditors ("IRBA") approval to provide B-BBEE assurance services for the purpose of conducting verification and issuing EME B-BBEE certificates), a certificate issued by an accounting officer as contemplated in the Closed Corporations Act 69 of 1984, or a certificate issued by a Verification Agency accredited by SANAS.

- 10.3.2 In addition to the above, Bidders who wish to enter into a Joint Venture or sub-contract portions of the contract to B-BBEE companies, must state in their bids the percentage of the total contract value that will be allocated to such B-BBEE companies should they be successful in being awarded any business. A rating

³ This will depend on whether FRC (Current) and FRC (Future) will also be evaluated as part of Preference. Should it be decided that only B-BBEE scorecard is going to be used to evaluate preference, the total points for B-BBEE scorecard may range from 20 to 40 points.

certificate in respect of such B-BBEE JV-partner and / or sub-contractor/s, as well as a breakdown of the distribution of the aforementioned percentage must also be furnished.

10.3.3 Transnet has adopted a scoring methodology based on a maximum 20 to 40 points to be allocated to preference of which a maximum of 10 points will be allocated to a Bidder based on its B-BBEE scorecard.

10.3.4 Based on the overall performance of a supplier using the Generic Scorecard, it receives one of the following B-BBEE status and a point out of 10 is awarded based on Figure [13] below:

B-BBEE Status	Qualification	Recognition level	Ten Preference Points based on scorecard
Level One Contributor	≥100 points on the Generic Scorecard	135%	10
Level Two Contributor	≥85 but <100 points on the Generic Scorecard	125%	9
Level Three Contributor	≥75 but <85 on the Generic Scorecard	110%	8
Level Four Contributor	≥65 but <75 on the Generic Scorecard	100%	6
Level Five Contributor	≥55 but <65 on the Generic Scorecard	80%	4
Level Six Contributor	≥45 but <55 on the Generic Scorecard	60%	3
Level Seven Contributor	≥40 but <45 on the Generic Scorecard	50%	2
Level Eight Contributor	≥30 but <40 on the Generic Scorecard	10%	1
Non-Compliant Contributor	<30 on the Generic Scorecard	0%	0

Figure [13] – B-BBEE Scorecard

10.3.5 B-BBEE points must be claimed by Bidders using the B-BBEE Preference Points Claim Form. This Claim Form must be submitted as a returnable document and is annexed as Appendix D.

10.3.6 **Measurement based on Further Recognition Criteria (FRC) (Current)**
Points will be allocated in respect of preference to measure the Respondent's CURRENT B-BBEE status at the time of submission of their bid. These points are allocated based on the extent to which the Respondent's current ownership, management control and employment equity targets. Please note that a Respondent's ownership, management control and employment equity at the time of the submission of the bid, may differ from that which is reflected in the B-BBEE scorecard. When claiming points for FRC (Current) the bidder must reflect his B-BBEE status at the time of submitting the bid. Supporting documentation may be requested in this regard. Please see Table 12 below - a guideline on evaluating FRC (Current).

TABLE 12

Indicator	Required Responses	Compliance Target	Score out of 10
Ownership (7.5)			

FOR INTERNAL USE ONLY

PROCUREMENT PROCEDURES MANUAL

Indicator	Required Responses	Compliance Target	Score out of 10
1. The percentage of the business owned by Black' persons.	Indicate ownership in the hands of Black persons as a percentage of total ownership of the organisation.	Points will be allocated for any percentages >25% to 100%, on a sliding scale	26 - 30% = 1 31 - 40% = 2 41 - 50% = 3 51 - 60% = 5 61 - 70% = 6 71 - 74% = 7 75 - 100% = 10
2. The percentage of the business owned by Black Women.	Indicate ownership in the hands of Black women as a percentage of total ownership of the organisation.	Points will be allocated for any percentages >10% to 100%, on a sliding scale	10 - 20% = 1 21 - 30% = 2 31 - 40% = 4 41 - 50% = 5 51 - 60% = 6 61 - 70% = 7 71 - 75% = 8 76 - 100% = 10
3. The percentage of the business owned by black youth.	Indicate ownership in the hands of Persons living with Disabilities as a percentage of total ownership of the organisation.	Points will be allocated for any percentages >5% to 100%, on a sliding scale	6 - 20% = 1 21 - 30% = 2 31 - 40% = 3 41 - 50% = 4 51 - 60% = 5 61 - 70% = 6 71 - 80% = 7 81 - 90% = 8 91 - 95% = 9 96 - 100% = 10
4. The percentage of the business owned by black youth and/or black Persons living with Disabilities	Indicate ownership in the hands of Persons living with Disabilities as a percentage of total ownership of the organisation.	Points will be allocated for any percentages >3% to 100%, on a sliding scale	3-5% = 1 5.1-7% = 2 7.1-10% = 3 11-20% = 4 21-30% = 5 31-40% = 6 41-50% = 7 51-60% = 8 61-70% = 9 71-100% = 10
5. The percentage of the business owned by Employment Schemes/Co-Operatives.	Indicate ownership in the hands of Employment Schemes/Co-Operatives as a percentage of total ownership of the organisation.	Points will be allocated for any percentages >5% to 100%, on a sliding scale	6 - 10% = 1 11 - 20% = 2 21 - 30% = 3 31 - 40% = 4 41 - 50% = 5 51 - 60% = 6 61 - 70% = 7 71 - 80% = 8 80 - 100% = 10
B. Board Participation (BP)			
1. The percentage of Black Board members in relation to the total number of Board members.	Indicate the number of Black Board members as a percentage of the total Board.	Points will be allocated for any percentages >50% to 100%, on a sliding scale	51-55% = 1 56-60% = 2 61-65% = 3 66-70% = 4 71-75% = 5 76-80% = 6 81-85% = 7 86-90% = 8

Indicator	Requirement	Responses	Compliance Target	Score out of 10
				91-95% = 9 96-100% = 10
2. The percentage of Black Female Board members in relation to the total number of Board members.	Indicate the number of black female Board members as a percentage of the total Board.		Points will be allocated for any percentages >50% to 100%, on a sliding scale	51-55% = 1 56-60% = 2 61-65% = 3 66-70% = 4 71-75% = 5 76-80% = 6 81-85% = 7 86-90% = 8 91-95% = 9 96-100% = 10
C. Management (MC):				
1. The percentage of Black Senior Top Management involved in day to day management of the organisation, in relation to the total Top Management cadre.	Provide the percentage of Blacks that are appointed by the Board and operational management of the business, with individual responsibility for overall and/or financial management of the business and actively involved in the development and implementation of overall strategy of the organisation.	percentage of Blacks involved in the day to day management of the business, with individual responsibility for overall and/or financial management of the business and actively involved in the development and implementation of overall strategy of the organisation.	Points will be allocated for any percentages >40% to 100%, on a sliding scale	41-45% = 1 46-50% = 2 51-55% = 3 56-60% = 4 61-65% = 5 66-70% = 6 71-75% = 7 76-80% = 8 81-85% = 9 86-100% = 10
2. The percentage of Black Middle Management involved in day to day management of the organisation, in relation to the total Middle Management cadre.	Provide the percentage of Blacks appointed by the organisation in the middle management cadre and operationally involved in the day to day management of the business, with individual responsibility for a particular area within the business and actively involved in the day to day management of the organisation.	percentage of Blacks organisation in the middle management cadre and operationally involved in the day to day management of the business, with individual responsibility for a particular area within the business and actively involved in the day to day management of the organisation.	Points will be allocated for any percentages >63% to 100%, on a sliding scale	64-67% = 1 68-71% = 2 72-75% = 3 76-79% = 4 80-83% = 5 84-87% = 6 88-91% = 7 92-95% = 8 96-100% = 10
3. The percentage of Black Junior Management involved in day to day management of the organisation, in relation to the total Junior Management cadre.	Provide the percentage of Blacks appointed by the organisation in the junior management cadre and operationally involved in the day to day running of the business, with individual responsibility for a particular area within the business and actively involved in a supervisory role with regard to the day to day management of the organisation.	percentage of Blacks organisation in the junior management cadre and operationally involved in the day to day running of the business, with individual responsibility for a particular area within the business and actively involved in a supervisory role with regard to the day to day management of the organisation.	Points will be allocated for any percentages >68% to 100%, on a sliding scale	69-71% = 1 72-74% = 2 75-77% = 3 78-80% = 4 81-83% = 5 84-86% = 6 87-89% = 7 90-92% = 8 93-95% = 9 96-100% = 10
D. Employment Equity (EE):				
1. The percentage of Black employees as a percentage of the total workforce i.e. of all employees in the organisation.	Indicate the number of Black employees as a percentage of the organisation's total workforce.	number of Black employees as a percentage of the organisation's total workforce.	Points will be allocated for any percentages >65% to 100%, on a sliding scale	66-68% = 1 69-71% = 2 72-74% = 3 75-77% = 4 78-80% = 5 81-83% = 6

Indicator	Required Responses	Compliance Target	Score out of 10
			84-86% = 7 87-89% = 8 90-92% = 9 93-100% = 10
2. The percentage of Black women employees as a percentage of the total workforce.	Indicate the number of Black women employees as a percentage of the organisation's total workforce.	Points will be allocated for any percentages >40% to 100%, on a sliding scale	41-45% = 1 46-50% = 2 51-55% = 3 56-60% = 4 61-65% = 5 66-70% = 6 71-75% = 7 76-80% = 8 81-85% = 9 86-100% = 10
3. The percentage of Black youth and/or Black disabled employees in relation to the total number of employees in the organisation.	Indicate the percentage of Black disabled employees in relation to the total of all employees in the organisation.	Points will be allocated for any percentages >2% to 10%, on a sliding scale	3% = 1 4% = 2 5% = 3 6% = 4 7% = 5 8% = 6 9% = 7 10% = 8 11 - 12% = 9 13 - 15% = 10

Once all FRC (Current) evaluation criteria have been scored, the scores must be reduced to the weighting allocated to FRC (Current).

For example, assume a weighting of 10 points has been allocated to FRC (Current). A particular Bidder scored 100 for FRC (Current) out of 130 points (as there are 13 criteria for FRC (Current) scored out of 10). The Bidder's score must be divided by 130 and multiplied by the weighting of 10 in order to obtain the weighted score for FRC (Current) i.e. $\frac{100}{130} \times 10 = 7.7$

10.3.7 Measurement based on Further Recognition Criteria (FRC Future)

In addition to points allocated on the basis of the scorecard and FRC (Current), further points may also be allocated in respect of FRC (Future). Bidders may earn points for FRC based on the extent to which they commit to improving their B-BBEE status over the contract period. Points are allocated on an ascending scale calculated on the extent to which Bidders propose to maintain, meet or exceed Transnet's compliance targets. The contract with the Successful Bidder must contain a penalty clause which stipulates the penalties that will be imposed by Transnet should the Bidder fail to meet the preference targets in the contract. Furthermore, failure to achieve FRC Future targets will result in breach of contract and provide Transnet with cause to terminate/cancel the contract. Milestones in terms of achievement of FRC (Future) targets per year must be stipulated in suppliers' contracts so that penalty/breach of contract clauses may be invoked if required. Please see Table 13 below - a guideline on evaluating FRC (Future).

TABLE 13

Indicator	Required Responses	Compliance Target	Score out of 10
B. Ownership (20/5%)			
1. The percentage of the business owned by Black persons.	Provide a commitment based on the extent to which ownership in the hands of Black persons as a percentage of total ownership of the organisation will (a) be increased; or (b) be maintained in excess of the compliance target over the contract period.	Score will be allocated for any percentages >50% to 100%, on a sliding scale	51-55% = 1 56-60% = 2 61-65% = 3 66-70% = 4 71-75% = 5 76-80% = 6 81-85% = 7 86-90% = 8 91-95% = 9 96-100% = 10
2. The percentage of the business owned by Black women.	Provide a commitment based on the extent to which ownership in the hands of Black women as a percentage of total ownership of the organisation will (a) be increased; or (b) be maintained in excess of the compliance target over the contract period.	Score will be allocated for any percentages >30% to 100%, on a sliding scale	31-35% = 1 36-40% = 2 41-45% = 3 46-50% = 4 51-55% = 5 56-60% = 6 61-65% = 7 66-70% = 8 71-75% = 9 76-100% = 10
3. The percentage of the business owned by Black youth	Provide a commitment based on the extent to which ownership in the hands of black youth as a percentage of total ownership of the organisation will (a) be increased; or (b) be maintained in excess of the compliance target over the contract period.	Points will be allocated for any percentages >5 to 100%, on a sliding scale	1 = 6-20% 2 = 21-30% 3 = 31-40% 4 = 41-50% 5 = 51-60% 6 = 61-70% 7 = 71-80% 8 = 81-90% 9 = 91-95% 10 = 96-100%
4. The percentage of the business owned by Black Persons living with Disabilities	Provide a commitment based on the extent to which ownership in the hands of persons living with disabilities as a percentage of total ownership of the organisation will (a) be increased; or (b) be maintained in excess of the compliance target over the contract period.	Points will be allocated for any percentage above 3% to 100% on a sliding scale	3-5% = 1 5.1-7% = 2 7.1-10% = 3 11-20% = 4 21-30% = 5 31-40% = 6 41-50% = 7 51-60% = 8 61-70% = 9 71-100% = 10
5. The percentage of the business owned by Employment Schemes/Co-Operatives.	Provide a commitment based on the extent to which ownership in the hands of Employment Schemes/Co-Operatives as a percentage of total ownership of the organisation will (a) be increased; or (b) be maintained in excess of the compliance target over the contract period.	Points will be allocated for any percentages >10% to 100%, on a sliding scale	11-20% = 1 21-30% = 2 31-40% = 3 41-50% = 4 51-60% = 5 61-70% = 6 71-80% = 7 81-90% = 8 91-100% = 10
B. Board Participation (BP):			

FOR INTERNAL USE ONLY

PROCUREMENT PROCEDURES MANUAL

Indicator	Required Responses	Compliance Target	Score out of 10
1. The percentage of Black Board members in relation to the total number of Board members.	Provide a commitment based on the extent to which the number of black Board members as a percentage of the total Board will (a) be increased; or (b) be maintained In excess of the compliance target over the contract period.	Score will be allocated for any percentages >50% to 100%, on a sliding scale	51-55% = 1 56-60% = 2 61-65% = 3 66-70% = 4 71-75% = 5 76-80% = 6 81-85% = 7 86-90% = 8 91-95% = 9 96-100% = 10
2. The percentage of Black Female Board members in relation to the total number of Board members.	Provide a commitment based on the extent to which the number of Black Female Board members as a percentage of the total Board will (a) be increased; or (b) be maintained In excess of the compliance target over the contract period.	Points will be allocated for any percentages >50% to 100%, on a sliding scale	51-55% = 1 56-60% = 2 61-65% = 3 66-70% = 4 71-75% = 5 76-80% = 6 81-85% = 7 86-90% = 8 91-95% = 9 96-100% = 10
C. Management (MC)			
1. The percentage of Black Senior Top Management involved in day to day management of the organisation, in relation to the total Top Management cadre.	Provide a commitment based on the extent to which the percentage of Blacks appointed by the Board and operationally involved in the day to day Top management of the business, with individual responsibility for overall and/or financial management of the business and actively involved in the development and implementation of overall strategy will (a) be increased; or (b) be maintained in excess of the compliance target over the contract period.	Score will be allocated for any percentages >40% to 100%, on a sliding scale	41-45% = 1 46-50% = 2 51-55% = 3 56-60% = 4 61-65% = 5 66-70% = 6 71-75% = 7 76-80% = 8 81-85% = 9 86-100% = 10
2. The percentage of Black Middle Management involved in day to day management of the organisation, in relation to the total Middle Management cadre.	Provide a commitment based on the extent to which the percentage of Blacks appointed by the organisation in the middle management cadre and operationally involved in the day to day management of the business, with individual responsibility for a particular area within the business and actively involved in the day to day management of the organisation will (a) be increased; or (b) be maintained in excess of the compliance target over the	Score will be allocated for any percentages >63% to 100%, on a sliding scale	64-67% = 1 68-71% = 2 72-75% = 3 76-79% = 4 80-83% = 5 84-87% = 6 88-91% = 7 92-95% = 8 96-100% = 10

Indicator	Required Responses	Compliance Target	Score out of 10
	contract period.		
3. The percentage of Black Junior Management involved in day to day management of the organisation, in relation to the total Junior Management cadre.	Provide a commitment based on the extent to which the percentage of Blacks appointed by the organisation in the junior management cadre and operationally involved in the day to day running of the business, with Individual responsibility for a particular area within the business and actively involved in a supervisory role with regard to the day to day management of the organisation will (a) be increased; or (b) be maintained in excess of the compliance target over the contract period.	Score will be allocated for any percentages >68% to 100%, on a sliding scale	69-71% = 1 72-74% = 2 75-77% = 3 78-80% = 4 81-83% = 5 84-86% = 6 87-89% = 7 90-92% = 8 93-95% = 9 96-100% = 10
D. Employment Equity (EE)			
1. The percentage of Black employees as a percentage of the total workforce i.e. of all employees in the organisation.	Provide a commitment based on the extent to which the number of Black employees as a percentage of the organisation's total workforce will (a) be increased; or (b) be maintained in excess of the compliance target over the contract period.	Score will be allocated for any percentages >65% to 100%, on a sliding scale	66-68% = 1 69-71% = 2 72-74% = 3 75-77% = 4 78-80% = 5 81-83% = 6 84-86% = 7 87-89% = 8 90-92% = 9 93-100% = 10
2. The percentage of Black women employees as a percentage of the total workforce.	Provide a commitment based on the extent to which the number of Black women employees as a percentage of the organisation's total workforce will (a) be increased; or (b) be maintained in excess of the compliance target over the contract period.	Score will be allocated for any percentages >40% to 100%, on a sliding scale	41-45% = 1 46-50% = 2 51-55% = 3 56-60% = 4 61-65% = 5 66-70% = 6 71-75% = 7 76-80% = 8 81-85% = 9 86-100% = 10
3. The percentage of Black youth and/or Black disabled employees in relation to the total number of employees in the organisation.	Provide a commitment based on the extent to which the percentage of Black disabled employees in relation to the total of all employees in the organisation will (a) be increased; or (b) be maintained in excess of the compliance target over the contract period.	Score will be allocated for any percentages >2% to 10%, on a sliding scale	3% = 1 4% = 2 5% = 3 6% = 4 7% = 5 8% = 6 9% = 7 10% = 8 11 - 12% = 9 13 - 15% = 10
E. Preferential Procurement (PP)			

Indicator	Required Responses	Compliance Target	Score out of 10
1. B-BBEE procurement spend from all suppliers based on the B-BBEE procurement recognition level as a percentage of total measured procurement spend	Provide a commitment based on the extent to which B-BBEE spend will (a) be increased, or (b) be maintained in excess of the compliance target over the contract period.	Score will be allocated for any percentages >50% to 100%, on a sliding scale	51-55% = 1 56-60% = 2 61-65% = 3 66-70% = 4 71-75% = 5 76-80% = 6 81-85% = 7 86-90% = 8 91-95% = 9 96-100% = 10
2. B-BBEE procurement spend from QSEs based on the applicable B-BBEE procurement recognition levels as a percentage of total measured procurement spend.	Provide a commitment based on the extent to which B-BBEE spend from QSEs will (a) be increased; or (b) be maintained in excess of the compliance target over the contract period.	Score will be allocated for any percentages >10% to 100%, on a sliding scale	11-20% = 1 21-30% = 2 31-40% = 3 41-50% = 4 51-60% = 5 61-70% = 6 71-80% = 7 81-90% = 8 91-95% = 9 96-100% = 10
3. B-BBEE procurement spend from EMEs based on the applicable B-BBEE procurement recognition levels as a percentage of total measured procurement spend.	Provide a commitment based on the extent to which B-BBEE spend from EMEs will (a) be increased; or (b) be maintained in excess of the compliance target over the contract period.	Score will be allocated for any percentages >10% to 100%, on a sliding scale	11-20% = 1 21-30% = 2 31-40% = 3 41-50% = 4 51-60% = 5 61-70% = 6 71-80% = 7 81-90% = 8 91-95% = 9 96-100% = 10
4. B-BBEE procurement spend from any of the following suppliers as a percentage of total measured procurement spend: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Suppliers who are more than 50% Black-owned Suppliers who are more than 30% Black women-owned 	Provide a commitment based on the extent to which spend from suppliers who are more than 50% Black owned or 30% Black women owned will (a) be increased; or (b) be maintained in excess of the compliance target over the contract period.	Score will be allocated for any percentages >15% to 100%, on a sliding scale	16-20% = 1 21-30% = 2 31-40% = 3 41-50% = 4 51-60% = 5 61-70% = 6 71-80% = 7 81-90% = 8 91-95% = 9 96-100% = 10
F. Enterprise Development (ED)			
1. The organisation's annual spend on Enterprise Development as a percentage of Net Profit after Tax (NPAT)	Provide a commitment based on the extent to which your organisation's annual spend on Enterprise Development Initiatives as a percentage of its Net Profit after Tax will (a) be increased; or (b) be maintained in excess of the compliance target over the contract period.	Scores will be allocated for any percentages >1% of NPAT, on a sliding scale OR based on the actual Rand-value spent on ED	<1% = 0 1%-1.4% = 1 1.5- 2.9% = 2 3%-4.9% = 3 5% -10% = 4 >11% = 10

FOR INTERNAL USE ONLY

PROCUREMENT PROCEDURES MANUAL

Once all FRC (Future) evaluation criteria have been scored, the scores must be reduced to the weighting allocated to FRC (Future).

For example, assume a weighting of 15 points has been allocated to FRC (Future). A particular Bidder scored 100 for FRC (Future) out of 180 points (as there are 18 criteria for FRC (Future) scored out of 10). The Bidder's score must be divided by 180 and multiplied by the weighting of 15 in order to obtain the weighted score for FRC (Future) i.e. $\frac{100}{180} \times 15 = 8.33$

CHAPTER 11 : LOCAL CONTENT

11.1 Increased Local Production and Content ("LC") forms an integral component of Transnet's Supply Chain Strategy. This is aligned to Government's vision as articulated in IPAP 2 and the VGP as well as Transnet's Supply Chain Policy. Transnet Entities are therefore required to actively promote local content and production in their bidding processes.

11.2 Designated sectors

11.2.1 The PPPFA Regulations, 2011 which came into effect on 7 December 2011, prescribe how Local Production and Content is to be measured in public sector Bids. In accordance with Regulation 9(1), when issuing bids involving "designated sectors" Transnet must advertise such bids with a specific Bid condition that only locally produced goods, services or works which meet a **stipulated minimum threshold** for Local Production and Content will be considered.

11.2.2 Designated sectors are those sectors which have been designated by the Department of Trade and Industry ("DTI") for Local Production and Content. The following table indicates the designated sectors and minimum threshold for local content as determined by the Department of Trade and Industry and National Treasury:

TABLE 14

Designated sector	Prescribed minimum % for local content
Textile, clothing, leather and footwear	100%
Power Pylons (not including Steel)	100%
Rolling Stock	65%
Canned/processed vegetables	80%
Buses (bus body)	80%

11.2.3 Please note that the above reflects only the first wave of designated sectors as at the date of issue of this PPM. Future changes to the list of designated sectors and/or the applicable thresholds will be communicated as they are issued by National Treasury.

11.3 Non designated sectors

11.3.1 When issuing bids in sectors that have not been specifically designated for Local Production and Content ("non designated sectors"), Transnet will actively promote Local Production and Content where possible. Therefore, before approaching the market, Transnet Entities are required to conduct proper market analysis to determine on a case by case basis whether opportunities for Local Production and Content exist. Where opportunities do exist, this must be reflected in the

procurement strategy. Furthermore, in accordance with Regulation 9(3), the RFP must reflect the minimum threshold for LC that must be met by bidders to qualify for further consideration. Bidders who fail to achieve the set minimum thresholds will be disqualified from the bidding process.

- 11.3.2 In this regard Transnet must consciously look for ways to incorporate local content in its tenders, where appropriate, particularly where the tender falls within one of the sectors clusters identified in IPAP II. These sector clusters are as follows in terms of the IPAP 2012/2013 – 2014/2015:

a) Cluster 1 Qualitatively New Areas of Focus

- Metal fabrication, capital and transport equipment sectors;
- Oil and gas sectors;
- 'Green' and energy saving industries;
- Agro-processing linked to food pricing and security; and
- Boatbuilding.

b) Cluster 2 Scaled up and Broadened Interventions in Existing IPAP Sectors

- Automotive products and components;
- Plastics, pharmaceuticals and chemicals;
- Biofuels;
- Forestry, paper, pulp and furniture;
- Strengthening of links between cultural industries and tourism; and
- Business processing.

c) Cluster 3 Sectors with Potential for Long Term Advanced Capabilities

- Nuclear;
- Advanced Materials; and
- Aerospace.

11.4 Definition of LC

- 11.4.1 Local Content is defined as that portion of the Bid price which is not included in the Imported Content, provided that local manufacture actually does take place. Local Production and Content is therefore determined as a percentage of the Bid price. For example, if the stipulated minimum threshold for Local Production and Content is 60%, this means that 60% of the Bid price must be spent on Local Production and Content (i.e. everything that is not included in Imported Content.) "Imported Content" is given a very specific meaning in the regulations. It means *"that portion of the tender price represented by the cost of components, parts or materials which have been or are still to be imported (whether by the supplier or its subcontractors) and which costs are inclusive of costs abroad, plus freight and other direct importation costs, such as landing costs, dock dues, import duty, sales duty or other similar tax or duty at the South African port of entry."*

11.5 Evaluation of LC

- 11.5.1 The calculation of LC can therefore be expressed in the following simple formula:

$$\text{Bid price} - \text{value of Imported Content (cost of components, parts \& materials)} \\ = \text{value of Local Production \& Content}$$

The value of the Local Content must be reflected as a percentage of the bid price to determine whether it meets the stipulated minimum threshold.

- 11.5.2 National Treasury requires that the value of Local Production and Content be calculated according to the following formula:

$$LC = \left(1 - \frac{x}{y}\right) \times 100$$

Where

x Imported content

y bid price excluding VAT

Prices referred to in the determination of x must be converted to Rand (ZAR) by using the exchange rate published by the South African Reserve Bank at 12:00 on the date, one week (7 calendar days) prior to the closing date of the Bid.

- 11.6 DTI and National Treasury are in the process of issuing directives and guidelines to ensure compliance with the regulations. These directives and guidelines will be provided to Transnet Entities as soon as they have been issued by DTI and NT.
- 11.7 It is important to note that LC does not form part of SD evaluation and must be evaluated as the first threshold in the evaluation process. The evaluation of LC must not overlap or be duplicated in the evaluation of "local capability and capacity building" which forms part of the SD evaluation. LC is purely concerned with the percentage of the bid price that will be spent locally. "Local capability and capacity building" on the other hand also takes non monetary measurements into account, such as the number of local suppliers to be utilised, etc.
- 11.8 It is a requirement of National Treasury that the Declaration Certificate for Local Content (SBD 6.2) form part of the RFP, whenever a minimum threshold for LC is required. In such instances, SBD 6.2 must be listed as a compulsory returnable document. SBD 6.2 has been annexed as Appendix E.
- 11.9 **Note:** LC will always be the first threshold – i.e. LC will always be evaluated as a first step, to determine whether bids comply with the minimum stipulated threshold for that particular designated sector or non designated sector where Transnet intends to set a minimum threshold for LC. Bidders that do not meet the set minimum threshold for LC must be rejected at this stage.

CHAPTER 12 : DETERMINING SD APPROACH AND DESIRED SD OUTCOMES

SD (including CSDP and/or B-BBEE) should form an integral part of the procurement strategy in every procurement transaction. The nature and extent of the SD opportunities will depend on the nature of the transaction.

Increased Competitiveness, Capability and Capacity (IC³) matrix:

Transnet's SD approach is to leverage the MDS infrastructure programme to foster economic growth and promote transformation

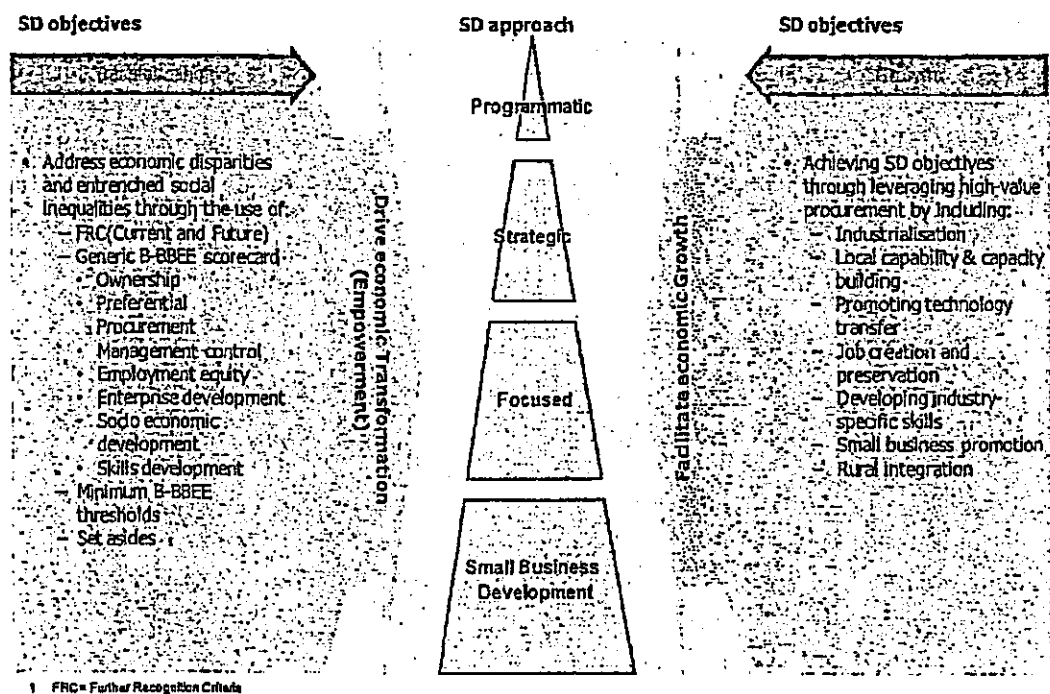


Figure [14] – SD Approach

The Figure referred to above, categorises SD opportunities based on their value, extent of industrial leverage and strategic importance to Transnet.

12.1 SD CATEGORIES

All transactions involving SD should be evaluated against the IC³ Supplier Development Matrix. The IC³ Supplier Development Classification Matrix assists in categorising opportunities according to their industrial leverage, value leverage and strategic importance to Transnet. Once opportunities are identified it will be possible to identify the tools that should be implemented to maximise the full SD potential from these opportunities.

The categories of SD identified in the Matrix are as follows:

12.1.1 Programmatic

Programmatic initiatives follow a longer than normal planning horizon and generally exceed the funding capacity of Transnet's balance sheet. They are identified either in IPAP II or through Transnet as a strategic fleet. Collaboration between the SOC and Government is achieved through focused task teams whereby infrastructural development and industrialisation are attained through joint support and in some cases public spending.

Investment is focused in plant, technology and skills in both intermediate and advanced capabilities to develop competitive advantage. An example is the Transnet locomotives fleet.

12.1.2 Strategic

Strategic Initiatives follow a 3 to 5 Year planning horizon, involving investment in technology and/or skills in intermediate capabilities to achieve local capability and capacity building. This ensures that multinational corporations, original equipment manufacturers (OEMs) and service providers develop a certain percentage of their Goods locally. Strategic Initiatives can therefore be used to achieve local capability and capacity building objectives by increasing the competitiveness, capability and efficiency of local suppliers. Strategic initiatives can sometimes focus on advanced capabilities but will in most cases require government support to develop local capability.

12.1.3 Focused

Focused Initiatives include all medium to high value transactions with limited industrial leverage and medium to low strategic importance. These initiatives address short to medium term contracts that can be leveraged to encourage supplier and product development. The focus on investment in technology or skills enhances existing local industrial capability and/or the ability to supply strategic services. Emphasis will largely be placed on benefiting previously disadvantaged individuals. The overall result improves the socio-economic environment by creating competitive local suppliers. It furthers the objectives of empowerment, transformation, regional development and rural upliftment.

12.1.4 Small Enterprise Development

Small Enterprise Development transactions are typically of low value and have no industrial leverage as it is characterised by low complexity Goods and high competition. These initiatives concentrate on increasing the capability of small local suppliers and are targeted toward previously disadvantaged individuals and communities, providing basic skills development and improving local employment and quality job creation. It includes a wide range of financial and non-financial services that help entrepreneurs to start new businesses and to grow existing ones.

12.2 CATEGORISATION OF TRANSACTIONS INTO THE RIGHT SD QUADRANT

Transnet has designed a focused four-step process for identifying high value generating SD opportunities (see *Figure [15]* below). The process takes Transnet's CAPEX and OPEX spend and then filters specific commodities by value to identify significant spend items. Significant spend items are likely to have the most leverage for SD opportunities. The industrial leverage analysis provides a view on the risk and the complexity of the commodity to understand the risk to the supplier and to Transnet. The process needs to be conducted in its entirety in order to determine the true nature of the opportunity as there are various elements which impact on the categorisation of opportunities. Each transaction must be analysed on a "case by case" basis taking cognisance of the nature and complexity that is involved in that particular SD activity.

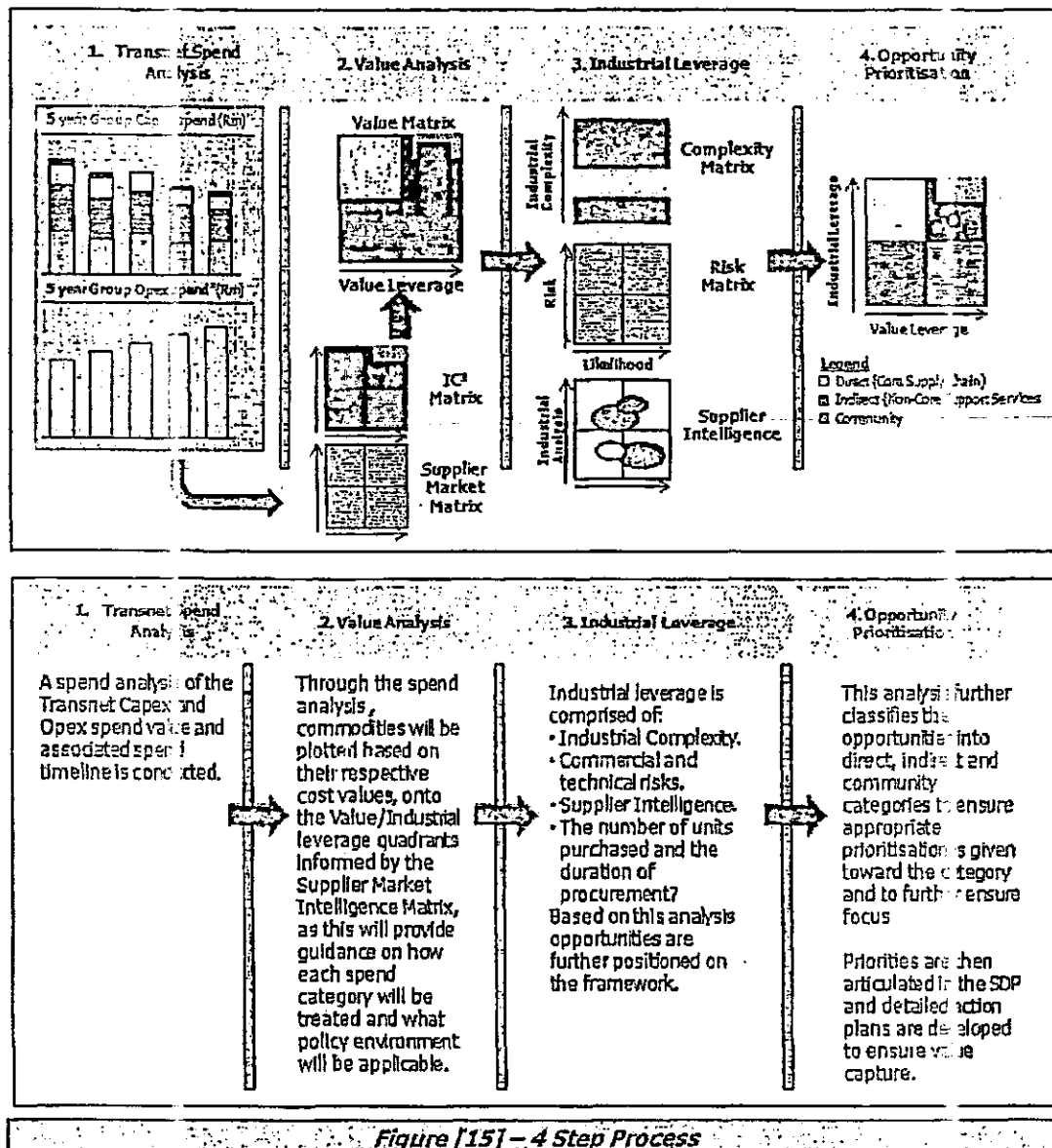


Figure [15] – 4 Step Process

This process is briefly described above, but a detailed description can be obtained in the Transnet Supplier Development Plan.

12.3 SUPPLIER DEVELOPMENT (SD) EVALUATION CRITERIA

If a specific commodity has been earmarked as a SD commodity, SD should be included in the evaluation criteria. A rigid "one size fits all" approach cannot be implemented as each procurement transaction will need to be evaluated on its own merits based on the nature of the transaction with specific focus areas. The assistance and guidance of the SD COE must always be sought when developing SD criteria.

Depending on the supplier market and what is feasible and achievable on a specific bid, SD criteria will differ on a case by case basis. For example, in one case local manufacture, local assembly, industrialisation may be feasible, whilst in another the focus may fall on skills transfer, job creation/preservation and skills development (Figure [16] below).

The IC³ framework developed by the DPE was adopted to assist in the prioritisation of SD opportunities and includes transformation

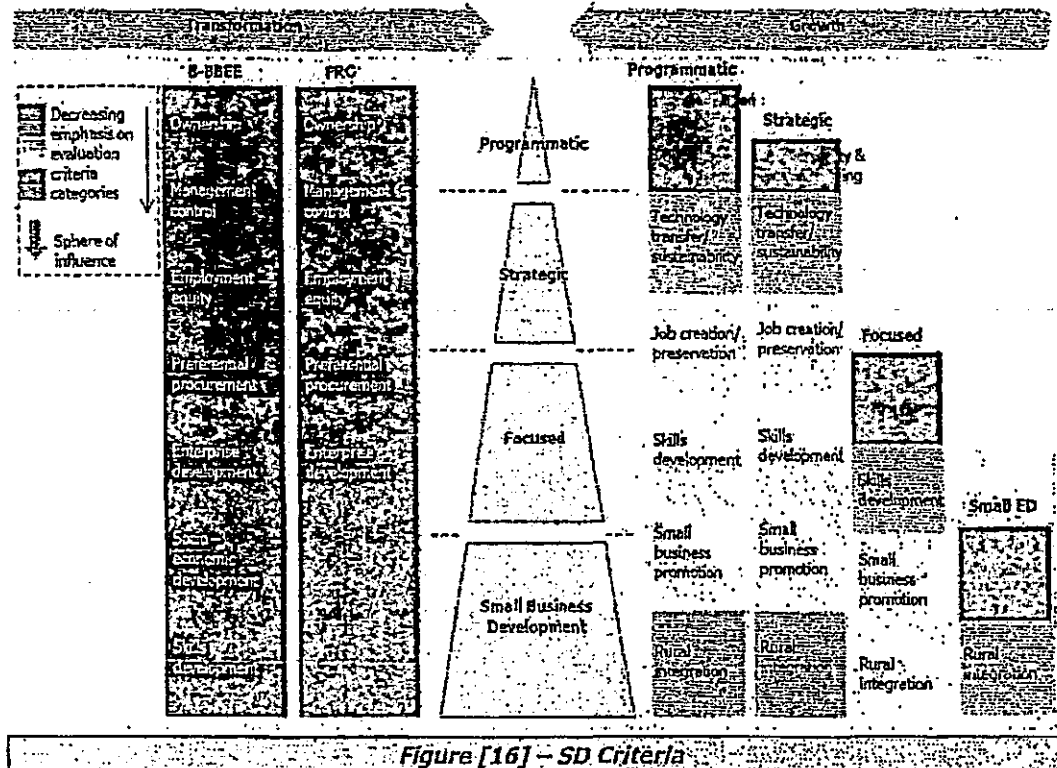


Figure [16] – SD Criteria

These broadly stated evaluation criteria that were developed during the planning phase, should be broken down into specific measurable components and incorporated in the bid documents. This is shown in the table below:

TABLE 15

Evaluation criteria	Measurable areas	Further explanation
Industrialisation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Value of investment in plant % of Local Content utilised in the investment in plant Reduction in import leakage Potential increase in export content 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Quantification of the monetary value invested in machinery, equipment, buildings % of the value invested in machinery, equipment, buildings that are sourced from local companies A percentage indication of the increase in locally supplied Goods and therefore the resultant decrease in imports as a result of the contract The % increase in exports that will result from increased Industrial capability developed in relation to the award of the contract

Evaluation criteria	Measurable areas	Further explanation
Capability & capacity building	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • % Local Content • Value of local parts in relation to the bill of materials • Value spent on local suppliers • Number of local suppliers in the supply chain of the Bidder 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Planned use of local parts as a percentage of the total contracted Items • Planned monetary value of the parts utilised in the bill of materials (as a percentage of the total spend) • Planned percentage monetary value spend on procurement of Goods and Services procured from SA suppliers • Number of South African suppliers that are to be utilised in the fulfilment of the contract
Technology transfer and sustainability	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Technology transfer including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◦ Methods of manufacturing ◦ Introduction of new technologies ◦ IP transfer (no. and value) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Introduction of a new/improved method of manufacturing <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◦ Provision of new technologies ◦ For processes ◦ ICT ◦ The transfer of patents, trademarks and copyrights
Skills development	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Number company employees to be trained including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◦ Number of artisans ◦ Number of technicians ◦ Number of Black People ◦ Total number of people • Number of downstream supply chain individuals to be trained, including <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◦ Number of artisans ◦ Number of technicians ◦ Number of Black People ◦ Total number of people • Certified training • Rand value on training to be spent in the industry • Number of bursaries / scholarships (specify field of study) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • No. of individuals within the company (in South Africa) that the supplier plans to train over the contract period; training undertaken in the previous Year will not be taken into account as past employee training appears in the skills development pillar of the BBBEE scorecard; criteria broken down as for Industry training above • No. of individuals that the supplier plans to train in the industry over the contract period; training undertaken in the previous Year will be taken into account to make allowance for suppliers who have just completed a training drive within the industry • What percentage of training for 1 and 2 above complies with local and/or international skills accreditation • Total planned monetary value spend (as a % of contract value) on skills development/training for the contract period within the industry; money spent in the previous Year will be included in Year 1 to make allowance for suppliers who have just completed a training drive within the industry • The number of higher education bursaries/scholarships provided in the previous Year and planned for the duration of the contract • The number of apprentices that the company plans to enlist during the course of the contract • The monetary value that the supplier is

Evaluation criteria	Measurable areas	Further explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Number of apprentices (specify industry) • Investment in schools in specific sectors (e.g. engineering) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • prepared to invest in the development and running of schools to increase technical skills development
Small business promotion	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • % of planned procurement from QSEs • % of planned procurement from EMES • % of planned procurement from start-ups • Non-financial support provided to small business • Joint ED initiatives with Transnet 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Refers to the planned procurement from small business as a % of the total planned procurement spend • Suppliers will be given a point for each non-financial ED support that they are planning to give to small business e.g. Professional support; employee time allocated to assisting small business • Suppliers will be given a point for each financial ED support initiative that they are planning to undertake during the contract period e.g. Shorter payment terms; interest free loans • The number of ED initiatives that the supplier will jointly run with Transnet: • That are aligned to Transnet's objectives • That are financial or non-financial in nature
Rural development and regional integration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Number of local employees • Value spent on local business • Proximity of business to operations • Number of rural businesses to be developed • CSI spend 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Number of people to be employed from within the town / city of operation • Monetary value to be spent on business within the town / city of operation • The locality of the bidder's business in relation to operations. Preference is given to regional (provincial) locality • The monetary value of CSI to be spent on rural community development projects

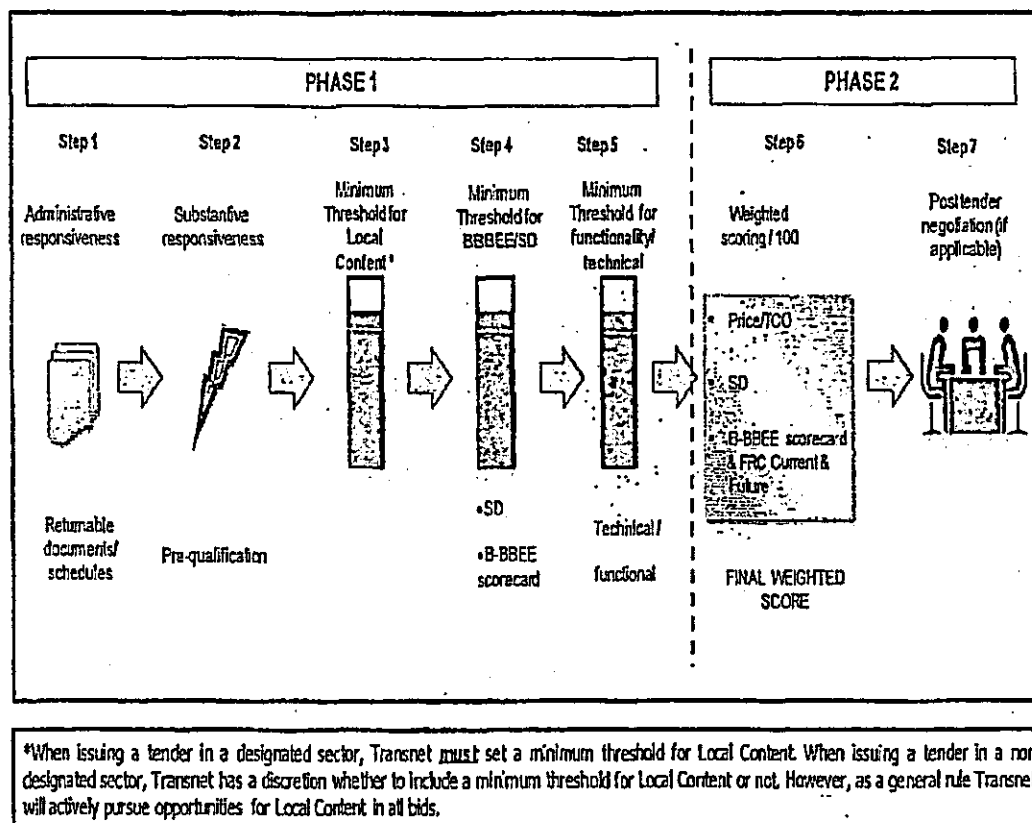
12.4 SUCCESSFUL BIDDER'S FAILURE TO MEET SD TARGETS

The contract with the Successful Bidder must contain a penalty clause which stipulates the penalties that will be imposed by Transnet, should the Bidder fail to meet the SD targets in the contract. Furthermore, failure to achieve SD targets will result in breach of contract and provide Transnet with cause to terminate/cancel the contract with the Successful Bidder. Milestones in terms of achievement of SD targets per year must be stipulated in suppliers' contracts so that penalty/breach of contract clauses may be invoked if required.

CHAPTER 13 : DETERMINING BID EVALUATION CRITERIA**13.1 CHOOSING AN APPROPRIATE EVALUATION METHOD**

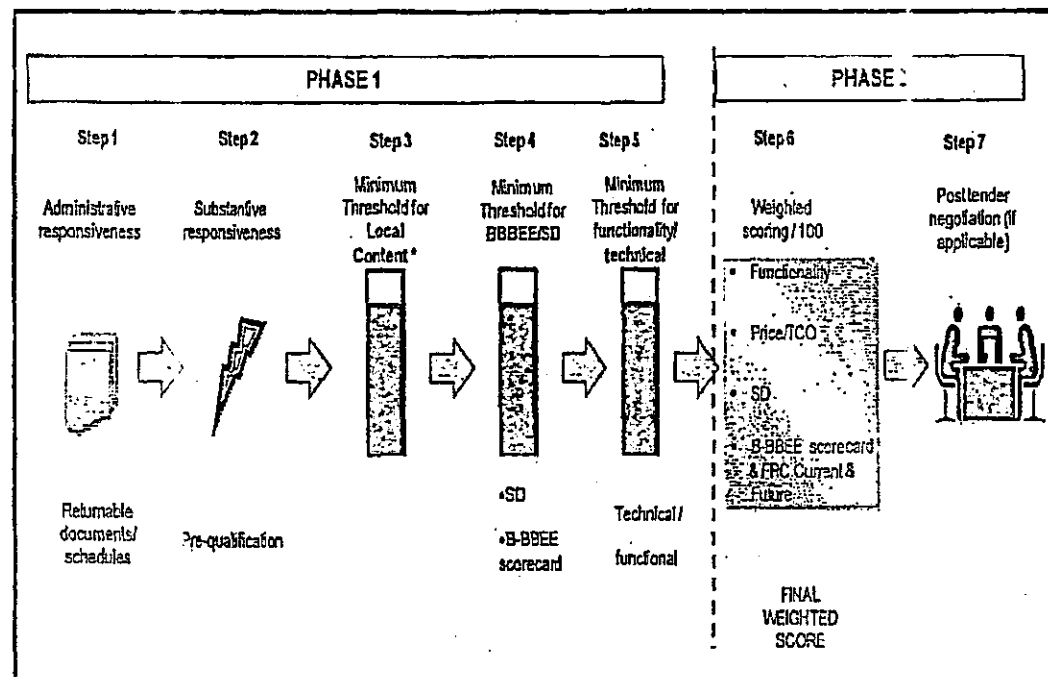
There are two possible evaluation methods that can be followed when evaluating a bid.

Method 1 follows a two-stage methodology where minimum thresholds are set for Local Content (where applicable – designated sectors), B-BBEE/SD and Quality. Only those bidders that meet (or exceed) the relevant minimum thresholds, advance to the next evaluation phase (step 6 in diagram below, where Price/TCO, SD and BBBEE are scored using the pre-determined weightings. Method 1 is the preferred method for evaluating bids within Transnet. Method 2 is used only in instances where Quality is of critical importance and assigned a greater weighting than price in Step 6 of Phase 2 (SD, B-BBEE and FRC weights remain unaffected).

13.1.1 Method 1 (Preferred Method)**Figure [17]: Method 1**

- Phase 1: A minimum threshold must be set for Local content (where applicable) and both SD/B-BBEE and Quality. These are separate thresholds, and the Bidder must meet the minimum criteria for all of these in order to proceed to phase two.
- Phase 2: The suppliers who meet the minimum threshold for Local content, SD and Quality (phase 1) will then be evaluated against each other using price, SD and BBBEE (including FRC) as criteria

13.1.2 Method 2
(An alternative used in limited instances where Quality is of critical importance)



*When issuing a tender in a designated sector, Transnet must set a minimum threshold for Local Content. When issuing a tender in a non-designated sector, Transnet has a discretion whether to include a minimum threshold for Local Content or not. However, as a general rule Transnet will actively pursue opportunities for Local Content in all bids.

Figure [18]: Method 2

- Phase 1: A minimum threshold must be set for Local Content if applicable and both SD, B-BBEE and Quality. These are separate thresholds, and the Bidder must meet the minimum criteria for all of these in order to proceed to phase two.
- Phase 2: Quality/Functionality is included in the evaluation and has a higher weighting than Price. The weightings allocated to SD, B-BBEE and FFC remain unaffected.

13.2 CHOOSING APPROPRIATE EVALUATION CRITERIA

13.2.1 General principles

Evaluation criteria must be:

- **Unambiguous.** The bid documents must provide a complete explanation of the scope of work as well as the criteria and sub-criteria that will be used in the evaluation of bids. Care should be taken to ensure that the RFP does not contain any contradictory clauses. Where drawings are included as part of the RFP, such drawings must be completely aligned to the written description of the Goods or Services required.
- **Rational and justifiable.** Evaluation criteria must be rationally linked to the projected procurement outcomes.
- **Quantifiable.** If a criterion cannot be measured, it should not be included as an evaluation criterion.

- **Predetermined.** Evaluation criteria must be stated upfront in the RFP document. No evaluation criteria should be used in the evaluation process that were not stipulated in the RFP document.
- **Objective.** Evaluation criteria should not be written with a specific product in mind, but should rather describe functional (as opposed to product specific) characteristics.

3.2.2 Quality criteria

Quality criteria must be determined taking into account the needs and expectations of the end user with regard to functional outcomes of Goods or Services, i.e. conformance to stated requirements. It is important to note that only necessary quality/ technical criteria must be included as evaluation criteria. Quality evaluation criteria must not be drafted in an exclusionary manner e.g. requesting 10 years experience in an industry when actually 5 years experience would suffice. In developing Quality criteria, it is necessary to consider how these items are to be measured, verified and evaluated in Bid submissions.

a) Quality criteria may include criteria such as⁴:-

- (i) technical merit;
- (ii) aesthetic and functional characteristics;
- (iii) safety characteristics;
- (iv) environmental characteristics (including green economy, energy conservation and climate control);
- (v) quality control practices;
- (vi) reliability;
- (vii) durability;
- (viii) method statement (including organization, logistics and support resources) relevant to the scope of work;
- (ix) qualifications and demonstrated experience of key staff in relation to the scope of work;
- (x) demonstrated experience of the Bidder with regard to specific aspects of the project/comparable projects;
- (xi) running costs;
- (xii) after sales Service and technical assistance;
- (xiii) delivery date;
- (xiv) delivery period or period of completion;
- (xv) inspection or testing requirements;
- (xvi) integration with other Goods / Services and
- (xvii) training requirements.

- b) Where the weighting for Quality forms a significant part of the overall weighting, at least 2 persons of the CFST who are conversant with the technical aspects of the bid shall set the evaluation criteria and weightings. These persons shall also determine the prompts or qualitative indicators for judgment with fixed scores assigned to each prompt. Quality must be scored in terms of such prompts for judgment, individually and then averaged, subject to moderation.
- c) It should also be determined whether interviews, site visits and presentations should form part of the scoring, and if so, the relative weights assigned to each of these must be determined. These aspects must be clearly dealt with in the RFP. It is important to note that interviews, site visits and presentations should only form

⁴ This section on quality is largely based on clause 4.3 of the CIDB Standard For Uniformity in Construction Procurement

part of the scoring if there are aspects of the bid that cannot be evaluated based on the responses to the RFP document.

- d) The evaluation of bids shall be based only on the information contained in Bid submissions, and where relevant from interviews, presentations and site visits.

13.2.3 Price criteria

- a) When dealing with more complex bids, the evaluation of price must involve an evaluation of the Total Cost of Ownership (TCO). In such cases, Bidders must be requested to provide all information relevant to the evaluation of TCO. It is recommended that Bidders be provided with a comprehensive pricing schedule to ensure that they all follow a standardised approach with pricing. This will facilitate uniformity in the evaluation of price. The evaluation of TCO includes, but is not limited to, factors such as:
- Installation costs;
 - Warranties;
 - Service and maintenance costs;
 - Operating supplies;
 - Storage costs;
 - Commercial discounts;
 - Incoterms;
 - Price adjustment conditions; and
 - Exchange rate fluctuations.
- b) When calculating prices, only discounts which have been made unconditionally must be taken into account during evaluation. However, where a discount is made conditionally, such discount must, despite not being taken into account for evaluation purposes, be implemented when payment is effected.

13.2.4 Preference criteria

All Bids should be evaluated against preference criteria. The preference criteria, as set out in Chapter 10, should be included in the bid document.

13.2.5 Supplier development (SD) criteria

If a specific commodity has been earmarked as a SD commodity, then SD should be included in the evaluation criteria. The SD criteria, as developed in Chapter 12, should be included in the bid document.

13.2.6 Evaluation of financial stability

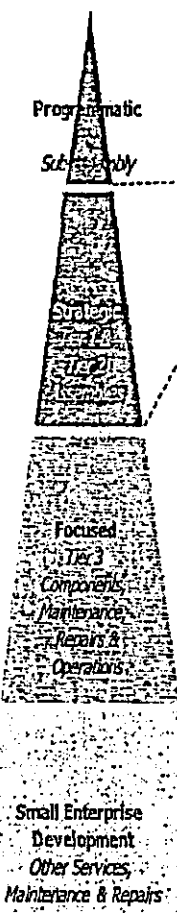
Depending on the type of Goods/Services being procured, it may be important that the financial stability of Bidders be evaluated based on their audited financial statements, etc. Depending on the importance of the financial stability of the successful Bidder/s, financial stability may either be included as a pre-qualification criterion or an evaluation criterion. It is important to note that the evaluation of financial stability will not feature in every bid, particularly those which seek to advance Start-up and emerging enterprises. Financial stability may also be evaluated at the discretion of the AC in terms of paragraph 20.3.

13.3 DETERMINING THE WEIGHTING FOR EVALUATION PURPOSES

The weighting of the various components i.e. Quality, Price, SD, and B-BBEE need to be considered on a case by case basis as each procurement event will differ. It is important that these be determined upfront and included in the RFX document. Once included in the RFX document one cannot deviate from that and the evaluation has to be done strictly in accordance with what was stated in the RFX document.

The weighting of Quality requirements as a whole, as well as the sub-requirements within the Quality section, need to be carefully determined to ensure that the end product/service is optimal and fit for purpose.

It is suggested that the component weighting should vary in terms of preference, SD and Quality/price, depending on the particular IC³ quadrant. (see Figure [19] below).

	Method 1 (Total points out of 100)	Method 2 (Total points out of 100)
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Price: 30 – 60 • SD: 20 – 30 • Preference/BBBEE: 20 – 40 - Scorecard: 10 - FRC: current and future: $x+y$ 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Quality: 30 – 50 • Price: 10 – 20 • SD: 20 • Preference/BBBEE: 20 – 40 - Scorecard: 10 - FRC: current & future: $x+y$
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Price: 35 – 65 • SD: 15 – 25 • Preference/BBBEE: 20 – 40 - Scorecard: 10 - FRC: current & future: $x+y$ 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Quality: 30 – 50 • Price: 10 – 20 • SD: 20 • Preference/BBBEE: 20 – 40 - Scorecard: 10 - FRC: current & future: $x+y$
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Price: 45 – 65 • SD: 15 • Preference/BBBEE: 20 – 40 - Scorecard: 10 - FRC: current & future: $x+y$ 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Quality: 25 – 35 • Price: 20 – 30 • SD: 15 • Preference/BBBEE: 20 – 40 - Scorecard: 10 - FRC: current & future: $x+y$
	<p>Normal Open Tender</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Price: 50 – 70 • SD: 10 • Preference/BBBEE: 20 – 40 - Scorecard: 10 - FRC: current & future: $x+y$ <p>Low Value Open Tender (<R5m)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Price: 60 – 80 • SD: 10 – 20 • Preference/BBBEE: 20 – 40 - Scorecard: 10 - FRC: Current: x <p>Quotation</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Price: 60 – 70 • SD: 10 – 20 • Preference/BBBEE: 20 – 40 - Scorecard: 10 - FRC: Current: x 	<p>Normal Open Tender</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Quality: 40 • Price: 10 – 30 • SD: 10 • Preference/BBBEE: 20 – 40 - Scorecard: 10 - FRC: current and future: $x+y$ <p>Low Value Open Tender (<R5m)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Quality: 40 – 60 • Price: 20 – 30 • SD: 10 – 20 • Preference/BBBEE: 20 – 40 - Scorecard: 10 - FRC: Current: x <p>Quotation</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Quality: 40 • Price: 20 – 30 • SD: 10 – 20 • Preference/BBBEE: 20 – 40 - Scorecard: 10 - FRC: Current: x

The weightings above are purely indicative and may be changed with the approval of the Procurement Specialist or person with the appropriate contracting DoA. Also note that depending on the weighting allocated to Preference/BBBEE, the weightings for the other evaluation criteria must be amended proportionally. The values for FRC Current (x) and FRC Future (y) must be determined on a case by case basis provided that the cumulative points for B-BBEE do not exceed the range as stipulated in the diagram.

Figure [19]: Methods 1 & 2

FOR INTERNAL USE ONLY

PROCUREMENT PROCEDURES MANUAL

- 13.4 It is important that all of the above should be carefully considered by the CFST and included in the sourcing strategy, the RFX and RFX sign-off template prior to issuing the RFX to the market, as neither the evaluation criteria, nor the weightings, nor the evaluation methodology (i.e. Method 1 or 2) may be changed during the evaluation phase.

CHAPTER 14 : MAIN PROCUREMENT MECHANISMS

14.1 FACTORS TO CONSIDER WHEN SELECTING THE APPROPRIATE PROCUREMENT MECHANISM

Sourcing/procurement strategies are closely linked to the strategic importance and value of the Goods/Services. The first step is to classify Goods/Services on a risk/value matrix. In order to determine the importance of Goods/Services to Transnet as well as the appropriate procurement mechanism to be used, the commodity should be plotted on the four quadrant matrix below:

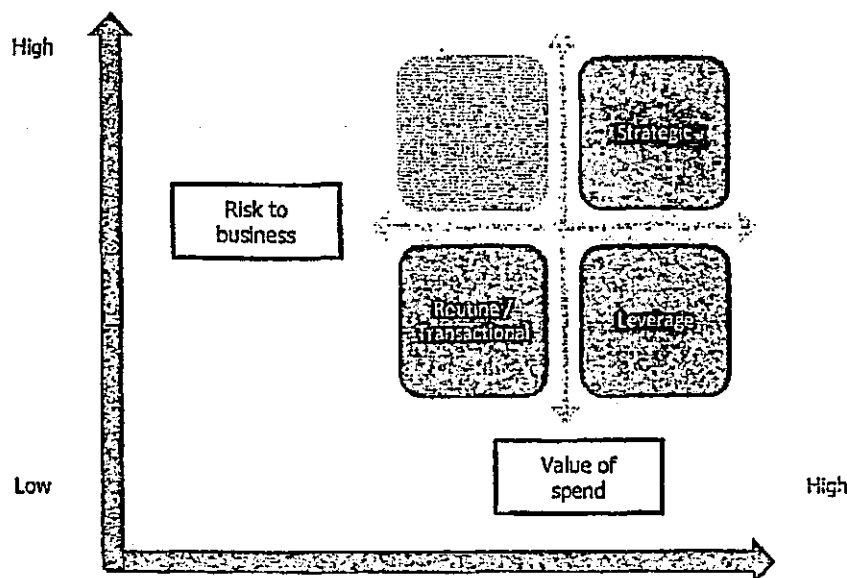


Figure [20] – Risk / Value Matrix

The following guidelines will assist in determining the correct procurement mechanism to use depending on where in the matrix particular the Goods/Services are placed:

TABLE 16

Type	Characteristics	Appropriate procurement mechanism/s	Possible contract options
Routine/ Transactional	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Low risk; low spend Non-critical items Many suppliers in the market Objective is to minimise spending significant time and effort on obtaining these Goods / Services through 'as and when' contracts 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Open Bid Quotation system (only when non repetitive and under R2 million) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> "As and when" contract for short and medium term Transversal contract
Leverage	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Low risk; high spend Non-critical items Many suppliers in the market 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Open Bid 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Transversal contract "As and when" contract for short and

Type	Characteristics	Appropriate procurement mechanism/s	Possible contract options
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Objective is to leverage economies of scale 		medium term
Bottleneck / Development	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> High risk; low spend Limited suppliers These are items that Transnet must have but which are difficult to obtain Critical items Includes specialised equipment, instrumentation or software from proprietary suppliers Objective is to secure supply 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Two stage bidding system Approved list Confinement 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> "As and when" contract for medium term Fixed quantity
Strategic	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> High risk; high spend These are items that are critical to Transnet's business 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Open Bid Two stage bidding system Approved list Confinement 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Medium to long term contract Transversal contract

Depending on the circumstances of each requirement for the procurement of Goods or Services, any one of the following main procurement mechanisms or procurement paths may be utilised

1. WHAT IS THE VALUE OF THE GOODS/SERVICE REQUIRED?	2. HOW OFTEN DO I REQUIRE THESE GOODS/SERVICES?	3. WHAT IS THE NATURE OF THE MARKET?	4. APPROPRIATE PROCUREMENT MECHANISM
Value < R2	Once-off transaction	Known market*	Open tender (local / international)
Any value	Repetitive transaction	Limited market**	Open tender (local / international)
Normally value > R2m	Repetitive / Once-off transaction	Competitive market***	Open tender (local / international)
Normally value > R2m	Repetitive / Once-off transaction	Competitive market***/Unknown market****	Open tender (local / international)

* Known market - suppliers are listed on the vendor database
 ** Limited market - only a restricted number of suppliers exist eg. Original Equipment Manufacturers, limited suppliers or a sole supplier
 *** Competitive market - many suppliers exist in the market
 **** Unknown market - there is no clear specification of requirements and/or the availability of the goods/services is unknown

Figure [21] – Procurement Mechanisms

14.2 PROHIBITED PRACTICES

- 14.2.1 As a general rule, the quotation / bidding system must not be used merely to obtain market related prices for budget or benchmarking purposes.
- 14.2.2 In cases where it is absolutely necessary to obtain test bids for budget purposes only, the request to the market must clearly and unambiguously state that the request for a quote is for budget purposes only and that no business will be awarded against this invitation. Care should, however, be exercised that such budget pricing exercise is not abused merely to give certain contenders advance notification of a new project in the pipeline. It would be advisable to rather obtain test quotes from more than one, or even better, all the known suppliers so as not to run the risk of being perceived to have given only one contender advance notification.
- 14.2.3 Requirements may not be deliberately split into parts or items of lesser value in order to keep the transaction value within a particular Delegation of Authority level or to keep it below the threshold of an AC or a person with higher Delegation of Authority. This is considered to be Parcelling.
- 14.2.4 Specifications should be functional and fit for purpose, rather than brand- or product-specific. Specifications must not include any exclusionary terms. Compiling a specification around one supplier's product is unfair and not allowed.

14.3 THE QUOTATION SYSTEM FOR VALUES BELOW R2 MILLION REQUEST FOR QUOTATION ("RFQ")

- Only used for transactions below R2 million in value
- The Goods or Services must be required on a non-repetitive basis
- The market should be known
- A minimum of three quotes must be obtained, where possible

14.3.1 Definition

The quotation system is a procurement system used for transactions below R2 million that are required on a non-repetitive basis.

14.3.2 When to use the quotation system

- b) The quotation system is intended for non-frequent purchases of fairly low value. It should not be used on a continual / repetitive basis for the same commodity i.e. instances where the same commodity is purchased (sometimes even from the same supplier), but on different purchase orders/requisitions. This will be regarded as Parcelling.
- c) The quotation system is best suited in the following circumstances where:
- (i) transactions are valued at less than R2 million;
 - (ii) the purchase is not required on a repetitive basis. Where the same purchase is regularly made, consider a fixed term as-and-when-required contract. If market prices of the commodity are volatile and it is impossible to obtain firm prices for a specific period (even with price

review mechanisms included), consider a short term as-and-when-required contract;

- (iii) the value of the transaction would make it impossible, impractical or economically unviable to call for Open Bids; or
- (iv) there are opportunities to develop suppliers in order to achieve transformational objectives. This mechanism is considered to be the best avenue to facilitate entry to the market for emerging small B-BBEE companies.

14.3.3 Advantages and disadvantages of the quotation system

Advantages	Disadvantages
Quick turn-around times in the case of non-repetitive purchases	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • This procurement mechanism is not the most cost-effective as the benefit of volume discount is lost • Turnaround time is longer when using the quotation system as opposed to an 'as and when' contract, in the case of repetitive purchases • Risk of limiting competition to only certain service providers

14.3.4 The authority to obtain quotes

CEOs may at their own discretion decide to allocate different levels of authority to different Managers in terms of their Delegation of Authority. The CEO (and ultimately the Chief Procurement Officer ("CPO")) will delegate specific powers to specific Managers in the procurement function to invite quotations up to a certain value and secondly for the award of the business resulting from the quotation system.

Furthermore, the CEO of a Division may at his/her own discretion and within the Transnet DoA framework, introduce OD specific control mechanisms for these "low" value transactions (e.g. Petty Cash policies, etc).

Depending on the value of transactions falling within the quotation system, appropriate control measures must be implemented from low value quotes to high value quotes:

TABLE 17

Transaction value	Mechanism for obtaining quote	No. of quotes
Less than R5 000.00	Fax/email quotes	1
R5 000.00 – R50 000.00	Fax/email quotes	2
Greater than R50 000.00 – R250 000.00	Fax/email quotes	3
Greater than R250 000.00 – R1000 000.00	Short form RFQ request (receipt of bids at the tender box)	3 or more

Greater than R1000 000.00 – R2 000 000.00	Formal RFQ process (receipt of bids at the tender box)	3 or more
--	--	-----------

14.3.5 Number of quotes to be requested

- a) As a general rule, a minimum of three quotations should be requested. However, a buyer may request more than three quotes if necessary. Where it is impossible to request three quotes e.g. patented articles, OEM spares etc., one or two quotes will suffice. However, a submission must be prepared with the reasons for not being able to request at least three quotations. This must be approved by the CPO or his/her delegate, depending on the value of the transaction and the delegated authority of the procurement official. Since OEM spares and components will in all probability be required on a regular basis, consideration should be given to either the framing of an Approved List, or the conclusion of an "As-and-when required" term contract.
- b) It is important to note that once a request for quotations has been made to prospective Bidders, a buyer cannot subsequently request further quotes if all Bidders approached have not responded to the request by the closing date.

14.3.6 Transnet Vendor Portal

- a) An automated Transnet wide Vendor Portal (TVP) has been created for all potential suppliers wishing to do business with Transnet to register and update their company profiles. The web address is <https://vendorportal.transnet.net>.
- b) Potential suppliers should provide full details of the Goods/Services on offer, their tax clearance certificate, their BBBEE level, including % Black ownership and area of operation. Suppliers will be classified accordingly on the TVP.
- c) Buyers who wish to obtain quotations must proceed to search the TVP and/or the OD's own vendor database for potential Bidders.
- d) The TVP should ultimately have the functionality to invite quotes from potential suppliers on a rotational system to ensure an equitable spread of opportunities among all potential suppliers.

14.3.7 Process

- a) As indicated above, the buyer will request quotes from at least 3 potential Bidders on the TVP where possible.
- b) For relatively low value, simple Goods/Services, the RFQ should ideally be open for 3 to 4 Working Days in order to afford Bidders a reasonable opportunity to respond. For higher value, more complex Goods/Services, the RFQ should be open for a minimum of one week.
- c) The bids must be received in a controlled environment, e.g. a dedicated email address, dedicated fax number or a tender box.
- d) As a general rule, quotations are to be evaluated on the basis of price and B-BBEE. In addition to the 10 points allocated to the B-BBEE Scorecard, bidders

- e) In instances where quotes are invited from potential new bidders, the prices quoted should, where possible, be benchmarked against previous prices paid, to ensure that Transnet obtains optimal value for money, whilst achieving its social obligation.
- f) As indicated in paragraph 14.3.6 (d) above, quotations should be invited from potential bidders on the TVP on a rotational basis so as to ensure an equitable spread of opportunity among all potential suppliers.



14.4 THE OPEN BID PROCESS (RFP)

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Generally used for transactions greater than R2 million in value • There must be a competitive market and a clear detailed specification available to which many prospective bidders are able to respond • Bids may be advertised in local, national and 7-or international media depending on the market 	
---	--

14.4.1 Definition

The Open Bid Process (RFP) is a competitive process where the general public is approached with an invitation to bid that is published in the media. All interested parties are granted an equal opportunity to bid for Transnet's business. Once the bid has closed, the winning Bid is selected by means of a transparent evaluation, recommendation and a adjudication process.

14.4.2 When to use the open bid process

The Open Bid system is the procurement/disposal mechanism best suited to the following circumstances:

- a) the monetary value of the purchases is in excess of R2 million;

- b) even if the bid value is less than R2 million, an Open Bid should be issued if the market is not known or the Goods or Services are required on a repetitive basis;
- c) the market is competitive (i.e. many potential suppliers are able to provide the required Goods/Services);
- d) there are clear and unambiguous specifications to ensure that all potential suppliers bid for the same product;
- e) there is enough time available;
- f) the value of the transaction must warrant the cost, time and effort taken to use an Open Bid process; and
- g) in cases where Transnet's needs / specifications etc. are still too vague to issue a formal bid, the two-stage Bid system (RFI) should be followed.

14.4.3 Advantages and disadvantages of the open bid process

Advantages	Disadvantages
The Open Bid system is regarded as the procurement mechanism which best ensures open and fair competition.	The Open Bid process is time consuming. In order to ensure that Goods / Services are delivered to the business when they are needed, the need for the Goods / Services needs to be anticipated well in advance. Requires significant resources (cost, time, etc.)

14.4.4 Process

- a) Before any bid document may be issued to the market, the person with the necessary delegated authority must provide written authority to approach the market. This must include approval of the evaluation methodology, evaluation criteria and the availability of funds. The evaluation team is also to be decided on at this point.
- b) The bid document should be compiled according to the guidelines set out in Chapter 16 (*Bid Preparation*).
- c) Bids may be advertised in local, national and / or international media depending on the market and value of the bid.
- c) Bids should be kept open for a reasonable period. Refer to paragraph 16.3 for more detail.
- e) Bids are to be finalised as soon as possible after the closing date of the bid.

See process below to be followed in the case of an Open Bid process

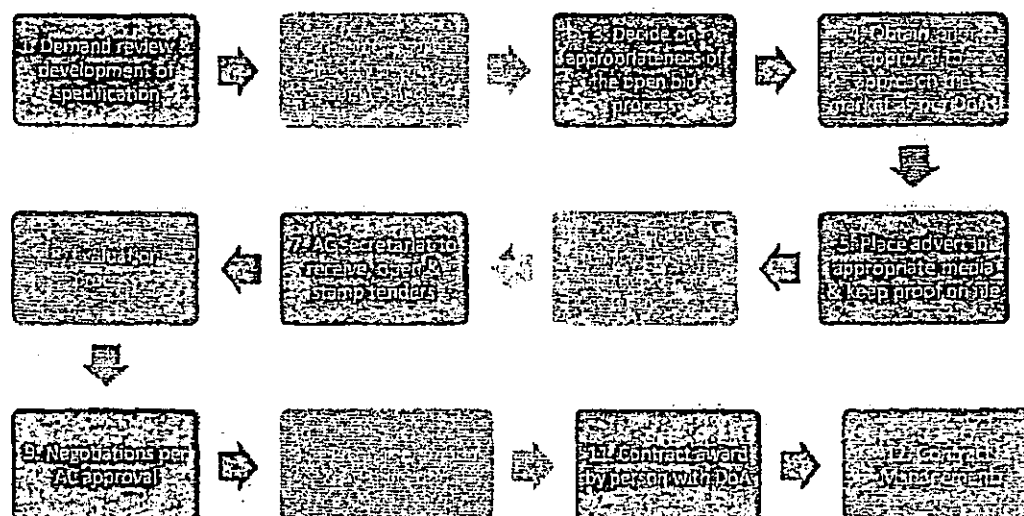


Figure [23] – Open Bid Process

14.5 APPROVED LIST PURCHASES

- An approved list is utilised for Goods or Services that are required according to unique specifications on a continual basis and from a limited number of suppliers.
- This mechanism is used for non-standard items that are not available off the shelf.

14.5.1 Definition

An approved list is generally used for Goods or Services that are required according to unique specifications, e.g. OEM spares or proprietary articles. An approved list is framed and utilised for Goods or Services required on a continual basis.

14.5.2 General principles

- In order to qualify for inclusion on any approved list a supplier must be able to supply Goods or Services of the quantity and quality required. Furthermore, if so required, the supplier must have submitted samples or delivered Goods which have satisfactorily passed Transnet's quality tests.
- Approved supplier status cannot be acquired merely by being on a Division's Vendor Master or on a B-BBEE Manager's List of EMEs or QSEs for specific Goods or Services. Approved supplier status can only be obtained after following the process stipulated below.
- Specifications must be drawn up to promote fair competition.
- ODs and Specialist Units must attempt as far as possible to procure off-the-shelf Goods as opposed to drawing up their own specifications.

- e) An Open Bid may not be issued for Goods/Services appearing on an approved list.
- f) Information regarding Transnet's Approved Lists may not be disclosed to anyone outside Transnet without the written approval of the GCSCO.
- g) The standard template for approved lists must be used.

14.5.3 When to use the approved list process

This procurement mechanism is ideally suited for the following transactions:

- a) strategic, high-value, high-risk items, non-standard items which are not available "off-the shelf";
- b) where equipment can only be obtained from Original Equipment Manufacturers (OEMs) or limited suppliers; or
- c) Goods and specialised Services that cannot be sourced from non-approved suppliers because of Transnet's own unique specifications, Quality standards, or safety requirements i.e. commodities that are not freely available in the market from a range of suppliers.

14.5.4 Advantages and disadvantages of the approved list process

Advantages	Disadvantages
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Reduces administrative burden as there is no need to approach the open market every time there is a requirement for Goods/Services. • Bidders are pre-qualified and need not be evaluated on technical aspects every time there is a requirement. • New entrants can be accommodated at any time. 	<p>Delays between identifying and approving new entrants into the market due to stringent testing requirements.</p>

14.5.5 Types of Approved Lists

- a) **Type 1: Generic Approved Lists – Indefinite validity**
 - (i) This type of approved list remains valid indefinitely, subject to the proviso that they must be advertised every 6 months to afford new suppliers an opportunity to be included onto the list.
 - (ii) Although the list remains valid indefinitely, the suppliers on the list will be subject to periodic quality testing in order to maintain their name on the list. Should suppliers fail to meet quality standards, their names may be removed from the approved list as per paragraph 14.5.8.
 - (iii) This type of approved list may be framed by following one of the two procurement processes outlined below:

- After public Advertisement of the intention to frame an approved list in a notice requesting all prospective suppliers to formally apply.
 - By framing an initial approved list of suppliers based on previous experience and/or tests carried out. The list will nevertheless be advertised publicly thereafter to invite new entrants to the market.
- (iv) Testing: Bidders are entitled to a full explanation of the testing process that was/is to be carried out on their product. Bidders may, upon request, be allowed to observe the testing process carried out by Transnet. Those Bidders whose Goods fail the relevant tests, must be provided with detailed reasons why their Goods failed the tests and should be afforded an opportunity to resubmit their Goods for testing once the necessary improvements have been made.
- (v) In either of the two processes listed above, aspirant suppliers may apply for inclusion after the approved list has been established. Such suppliers may be provisionally included on the approved list where it is not practical to test their product/sample beforehand e.g. overhaul of traction motors; reconditioning of transformers for electric substations, etc. Potential suppliers in this category will be subjected to a quality check e.g. ISO certification, previous experience on work of a similar nature and complexity, quality control systems etc. Qualifying suppliers will then, subject to AC and CEO approval, be placed on the approved list as "aspiring suppliers". When obtaining bids from suppliers already appearing on the approved list, the aspiring prospective suppliers must also be invited to submit bids. If an aspiring applicant is awarded a contract or portion of the contract for testing purposes and performs satisfactorily, their name must be placed on the approved list by following the normal approval process i.e. AC and CEO approval must be obtained.
- (vi) A list of all approved lists with their respective specifications, contact details of technical expert, etc. must be displayed on the notice/bulletin boards in bid issuing offices so that potential new entrants are made aware of its existence.
- (vii) Although the generic approved list remains valid for an indefinite period, it must be advertised every 6 months in order to afford new suppliers an opportunity to be included. However, such approved lists can be updated at any time. It is not necessary to wait for the 6 month interval to include a new name on the approved list. After a new entrant's product has successfully passed the quality tests, AC and CEO approval must be obtained and the list must be updated accordingly.
- (viii) New entrants may apply at any time for inclusion on the approved list. Any new applications received outside of the 6 month advertising intervals must be dealt with immediately and not held over until the next Advertisement.
- (ix) It is important to note that when such an approved list is utilised to solicit bids, all approved suppliers (including aspiring suppliers, if applicable), must be approached and invited to submit bids. Under no circumstances may only certain names be selected off an approved list on a selective or rotational basis. Furthermore, all such requests for bids must be dealt with in terms of the standard procedures.

- (x) Award of business on the approved list is subject to approval from the person/body with the necessary DoA, as well as the relevant AC if such transaction falls within its jurisdiction.
- (xi) It is important to note that the names on the generic approved list will remain on the list unless their names are removed for one or other reason.

b) Type 2: Hybrid Approved Lists – Fixed period validity

Hybrid Approved Lists are typically used in the following circumstances:

- Competitive market where there is a need to prequalify suppliers, as well as to limit the need to continuously evaluate large numbers of bids

- (i) "Hybrid approved lists" are publicly advertised and framed for a fixed period. The validity period of the list must be clearly stated in the Advertisement, as well as in the subsequent letter informing successful applicants of their inclusion on the Approved List.
- (ii) The nature of the Goods/Services will inform the decision on whether to make use of this type of approved list. Typically, a competitive market must exist in order to use this type of approved list. Examples of such "approved lists" are the Transnet Legal Panel and the Transnet List of Approved Security Service Providers.
- (iii) Unlike the generic approved list, no new applications for inclusion on the list may be considered during the period that the existing list is in force.
- (iv) The manner in which the approved list is to be structured and implemented must be fully motivated and submitted to the relevant AC for perusal and consideration and approval by the CEO.
- (v) At the end of the fixed period, the list must be re-advertised and a new list must be framed, if there is still a need for such an approved list. Suppliers who were included on the previous approved list must re-apply for inclusion onto the new list, and they must be made aware of this when the new list is being advertised.

14.5.6 Authority to frame an approved list

- a) The framing of an approved list or any amendment thereto must be approved by an OD CEO or in respect of Transnet Corporate Centre ("TCC") requirements or transversal contracts, the GCSCO, upon recommendation from the AC.
- b) The AC will be responsible for the distribution of the List within the particular entity and to Group ISCM. All Approved Lists should be communicated to the Governance function at Group ISCM, who will distribute the list to all other ACs in the Transnet Group. Group ISCM will be responsible for developing a shared portal to facilitate easier access to all approved lists, by all Transnet entities. The division which initiated the list will, however, be responsible for the periodic updating thereof.

- c) Any person or Enterprise whose application for inclusion on the approved list has been refused or whose name has been removed from the list, may make representations to the relevant CEO. Should the person/Enterprise not be satisfied with an OD CEO's ruling, an appeal may be made to the Group Chief Supply Chain Officer ("GCSCO") whose decision shall be final. In respect of TCC, an appeal may be made to the GCFO whose decision shall be final.

14.5.7 Process

- a) The OD AC must first provide "in principle" approval for the framing of an approved list.
- b) The Advertisement for an approved list must only make reference to the Goods/Services for which the list is being framed and not the names of the approved suppliers.
- c) All approved lists have to be advertised at least every 6 months, by means of a public notice in the appropriate media, inviting all interested parties to submit applications for possible inclusion on the relevant approved list.

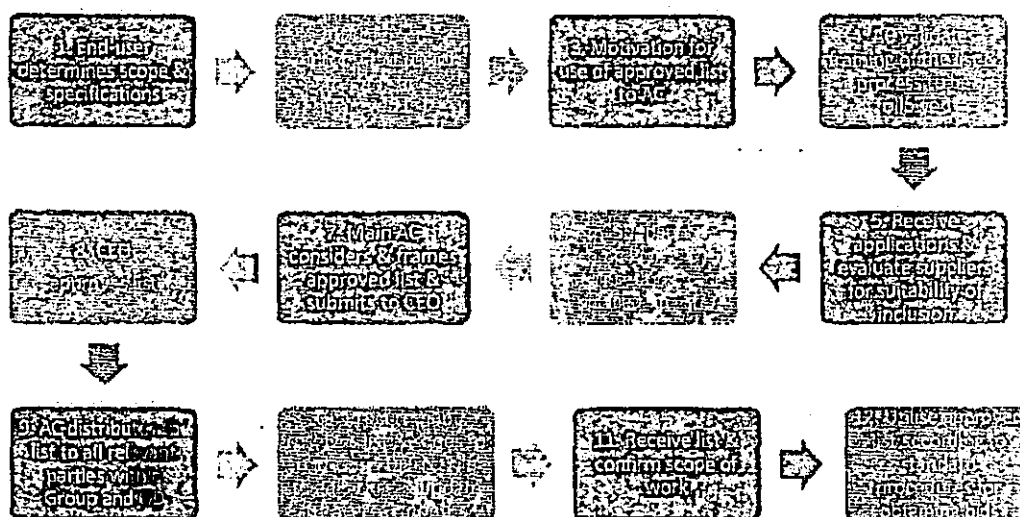


Figure [24] - Process to frame Approved List

14.5.8 Removal of names from the approved list

- a) The name of an Enterprise may be removed from an approved list at any time if the Enterprise:
- b) has been convicted of any offence under any law relating to wages, hours of work or other conditions of employment;
- c) fails or ceases to comply with the requirements of such approved list;

- d) continues to perform unsatisfactorily after having been informed accordingly when measured on any of the following criteria: timeliness, Quality, price escalation and service;
- e) sub-contracts the whole or any portion of a contract for the supply of Goods or Services in respect of an approved list to an Enterprise or person whose name does not appear on that list;
- f) otherwise acts in a manner which, in the opinion of Transnet, is construed to nullify the object of framing an approved list;
- g) has ceased to carry on business under the name on the approved list and has not informed Transnet of this change;
- h) has been dealt with in terms of Transnet's List of Excluded Bidders;
- i) has shown little interest over a reasonable period to submit quotations when invited to do so; or
- j) has not been awarded any business over a reasonable period due to non-competitive prices;

Before a name is removed from an approved list, the Enterprise concerned shall be notified in writing of the intention to remove it from the list including reasons. The Enterprise shall be afforded the opportunity to make representations as to why its name should not be removed from the list.

14.6 TWO-STAGE BIDDING SYSTEM (RFI/RFP PROCESS)

This procurement mechanism is appropriate under the following circumstances:

- where the suitability of service providers must first be determined prior to them being invited to bid for Goods / Services;
- when assessing the availability of Goods / Services where there is no clear specification of requirements; or
- there could be solutions available in the market unknown to Transnet.

14.6.1 Principles

This procurement mechanism is appropriate under the following circumstances as it takes into account the most satisfactory solution to Transnet's specific procurement needs:

- a) where due to the nature of the Goods / Services being acquired, the suitability of service providers must first be determined prior to them being invited to bid for the Goods / Services (pre-qualification);
- b) where there is no clear specification of requirements and it is not feasible/possible for Transnet to formulate detailed specifications for the Goods or Services required; or
- c) where Transnet seeks first to establish the various possible solutions available in the market in order to determine the best solution for Transnet.

In scenarios (a) and (b) above Transnet may draw up a functional specification in the RFP based on the responses received to a Request for Information ("RFI") taking into account its specific needs. It is critical that the specification not be drafted around a particular supplier's response to the RFI. Intellectual property issues must be taken into account prior to proceeding to stage two of the process.

14.6.2 When to use the two-stage bidding process

- a) This mechanism is used in assessing the availability of Goods/Services where there is no clear specification of requirements or where the suitability of service providers must first be determined prior to the undertaking of any development work.
- b) The use of this mechanism is appropriate where there are various possible means of meeting the need.
- c) The RFI process is ideally suited to projects involving research, development, studies or experiments. In such instances it is not in the best interests of either Transnet or the prospective Bidders to develop a detailed plan when it has not yet been determined as to whether implementation is feasible.
- d) The RFI process can be utilised to determine the availability of Goods and different suppliers' specifications in order for Transnet to draft its own specifications in such a way that accommodates as many potential suppliers as possible that are able to provide a product of acceptable quality.
- e) To obtain Expressions of Interest (EOI) from the market before stage 2 of the two-stage bidding process is embarked upon.

14.6.3 Advantages & disadvantages of the two-stage bidding process

Advantages	Disadvantages
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Allows Transnet to obtain an indication of what is available in the market before approaching the market with a firm invitation to bid. • Allows Transnet to draft a clear specification when it approached the market 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The two stage bidding process is a time consuming process • There is a risk of possible infringement of IP

14.6.4 Process

A two stage bidding process involves the following steps:

a) Stage 1 (RFI stage):

- (i) Prospective Bidders are invited to submit their proposals via an open RFI after approval to approach the market has been obtained.
- (ii) The evaluation criteria in the first stage may include criteria such as technical, Quality, contractual terms, conditions of supply and the professional and technical competence of the suppliers. Transnet may wish to request rough costing estimates during this first stage. However, price would typically not be requested at this stage.
- (iii) The RFI must clearly indicate Transnet's intention during the second stage of the process: i.e. whether:
 - suppliers will be subjected to pre-qualification criteria and be short listed in order to proceed to the second stage;
 - Transnet will issue an Open Bid based on the responses and specifications received in the first stage; or
 - Transnet will approach one or a shortlist of Bidders based on the responses and specifications received in the first stage.
- (iv) The RFIs received must be evaluated in terms of pre-determined criteria which have been made available to all contenders in the RFI.

(v) A recommendation is made to the AC or relevant authority regarding the outcome of the first stage, and the eligibility of the bidders to participate in the second stage.

(vi) AC agreement with the recommendation effectively authorises the second stage of the process.

b) Stage 2 (RFP stage)

(i) Depending on the option exercised in stage 1, Transnet may either issue an Open Bid or limit the second stage to only one or a shortlist of Bidders, as approved by the AC.

(ii) Bidders are invited to bid in the normal manner.

(iii) The bids are evaluated and awarded in the normal manner.

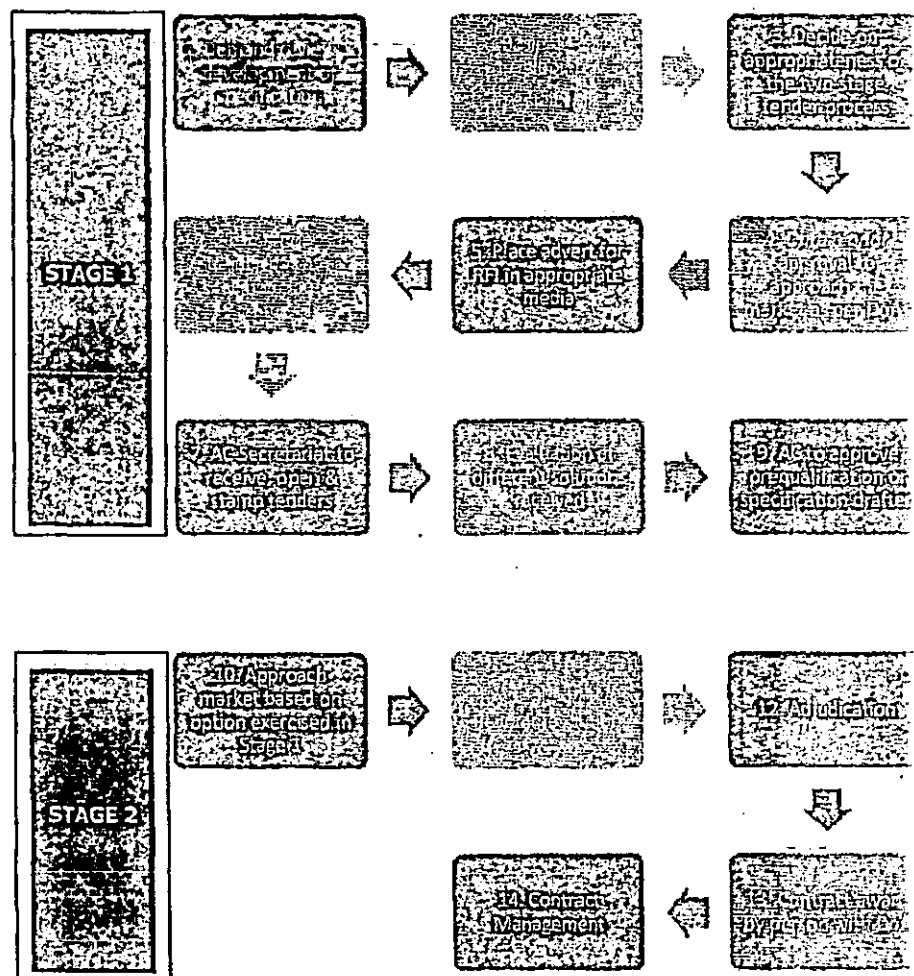


Figure [25] – Two stage bidding process

CHAPTER 15 : SPECIAL CASES

15.1 CONFINEMENTS

Confinements are to be used under the following circumstances:

- for transactions over the value of R2 million
- usually when Goods/Services are required on a once-off basis
- when the nature of the Goods/Services fall within one of the grounds for Confinement

15.1.1 Definition

A Confinement is a mechanism where permission is sought from the person with the appropriate Delegation of Authority to "confine" enquiries for required Goods/Services to one or a limited number of Bidders.

A Confinement is a departure from the norm of an open, competitive bidding process and as such must be treated with great circumspection. The misuse of confinements has the potential to entrench monopolies and as such is at odds with the Imperatives of the New Growth Path. The NGP seeks to encourage open competition and the introduction of new entrants into the market, particularly those from previously disadvantaged communities.

It is important to note that confinements only apply to transactions over R2m. These rules therefore do not apply to transactions falling below R2m. The quotation system applies to such transactions regardless of the number of quotations the buyer is able to obtain.

15.1.2 Grounds

Confinements will only be considered under the following circumstances:

- a) where a genuine unforeseeable urgency has arisen. Such urgency should not be attributable to a lack of proper planning. In such cases appropriate action must be taken against the Individual(s) responsible for the bad planning.
- b) the Goods/Services are only obtainable from one/limited number of suppliers. For instance, patented/proprietary Goods or OEM spare parts and components. Operating divisions are however required to provide evidence that there are no new entrants to the market who could also be approached;
- c) for reasons of standardisation or compatibility with existing Goods and Services. A case must be made that deviation from existing standardized Goods or Services will cause major operational disruption. If not, confinements based on "standardisation" will not be considered; or
- d) when the Goods or Services being procured are highly specialized and largely identical to those previously executed by that supplier and it is not in the interest of the public or the organization to solicit other offers, as it would

result in wasted money and/or time for Transnet. When this particular ground is intended to be used as a ground for Confinement, it is important to note that all pre-requisites must be satisfied: The Goods or Services must be highly specialised, almost identical to previous work done and approaching the market again would result in wasted money and time.

15.1.3 Types of confinements

Depending on the circumstances one of the following two Confinement routes will be applicable:-

- a) The normal Confinement route:
 - prior authority to confine must be obtained from the person with the relevant delegation;
 - bids will close at the relevant AC (relevant AC to be indicated in the submission for approval); and
 - the relevant AC will consider the award of business.
- b) Confine and award which is only to be used in cases where there is a sole supplier and/or cases of extreme urgency:
 - prior authority to confine and award must be obtained;
 - the submission to the person with Delegated Powers must fully motivate the reason for the urgency and provide an indicative / benchmark price;
 - bids will close at the relevant AC (relevant AC to be indicated in the submission for approval);
 - the business will be awarded by the person with the delegation to the relevant Bidder provided that the final price is within the benchmark as initially approved by the person with the delegation to approve the Confinement; and
 - the AC must be informed after award.

15.1.4 Delegation of authority

- a) Depending on the value of the transaction, only the GCE, BADC and the Transnet Board have the authority to authorise a Confinement.
- b) The relevant monetary thresholds for authorising confinements are as follows:
 - (i) GCE – up to but not exceeding R250 million;
 - (ii) BADC – up to but not exceeding R1 000 million; and
 - (iii) The Board – exceeding R1 000 million.

15.1.5 Process

- a) The submission for Confinement must be fully motivated in writing by the end-user and the OD CPO to the OD's main AC and the OD's CEO for prior written support of the recommendation to confine. It is important to properly motivate submissions taking into account all relevant factors. Poorly motivated submissions will be referred back to the OD concerned for re-motivation. The submission should be submitted on the relevant template under cover of a memo to the GCE.

- b) Only if the reasons advanced for the proposed Confinement are supported and considered to be in the best interest of Transnet, should the Confinement of business to one or more contenders be escalated to Group.
- c) The Confinement request must be considered by the Transnet GCSCO and the Group CFO each of whom shall indicate whether or not they support the request.
- d) The matter must then be submitted to the GCE, the BADC or to the Board itself for final approval depending on the value of the transaction.

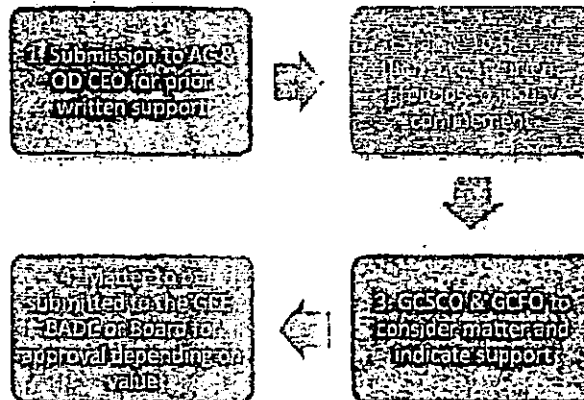


Figure [26] – The Confinement process

15.1.6 Confinement divided between more than one Bidder

Should it be decided to divide the total requirement of a Confinement between more than one Bidder, the total value of the business and not the individual contracts shall determine the level of approval required for the Confinement. Only after the necessary approval has been obtained may the individual contracts be signed by the Manager with the necessary delegated contractual powers.

15.1.7 Amendment to contracts awarded via Confinement

- a) Where a Material Amendment (i.e. the price, duration or scope is increased by more than 10%) to a contract awarded via Confinement is required, the matter must be sent to the relevant AC for support. The AC must submit the amendment to the original approver of the Confinement for prior approval of the amendment. The same principle applies where the cumulative value of amendments equals or exceeds 10% of the original contract value.
- b) Where an amendment increases the price, duration or scope by less than 10%, this should be submitted to the AC for approval.
- c) Where an amendment to a contract results in the value of the Confinement reaching a higher approval level, the matter must be sent to the original approver for review and recommendation. Approval must then be sought from the person with the delegated authority to approve the higher value of the Confinement.

15.2 EMERGENCY PROCEDURE

The emergency procedure is to be used under the following circumstances:

- Where the circumstances giving rise to the emergency were unforeseeable;
- Where engaging in normal bidding procedures or any other methods of procurement would be impractical; and
- Where the occurrence requires immediate action.

The concept of retrospective authority applies only in the context of emergencies. Where an emergency process is followed correctly, condonation is not required.

15.2.1 Definition

- The following circumstances would normally be regarded as sufficient grounds for invoking the emergency procedure i.e. a situation has arisen where there is an imminent risk of:
 - human injury or death;
 - human suffering;
 - serious business disruption that could not have been reasonably foreseen;
 - interruption of essential services;
 - serious damage to property or financial loss;
 - suffering or death of livestock or other animals; or
 - serious environmental damage or degradation.
- The concept of an "emergency" must be applied restrictively and should not be used as an excuse for bad planning. As such, in order to qualify for the emergency procedure:
 - the circumstances giving rise to the emergency must not have been foreseeable;
 - engaging in bidding procedures or any other methods of procurement would be impractical; and
 - the occurrence requires immediate action.

An emergency should not be attributable to a lack of proper planning. In such instances appropriate action must be taken against the individual(s) responsible for the bad planning.

15.2.2 Process to institute the emergency process

- The end-user requests authority from the person with the necessary delegation of authority to institute the emergency procurement procedure. If possible, the end user must notify procurement of the emergency requirement telephonically followed by email.
- The duly authorised Manager to invoke the emergency process will consider the request and decide on whether to grant such authority. He/she will notify the requestor in the form of an email, SMS or even verbally. If by SMS or verbally, this must be confirmed in writing or by e-mail afterwards.

- c) Procurement will invite a Bid(s) from a supplier(s) best able to deal with the emergency immediately. Alternatively, if the emergency occurs after office hours or it is not possible to contact procurement, the end user, after having received the required approval as per sub-paragraph (a) above, may invite the Bid/s directly from suppliers and/or issue instructions to commence the work.
- d) Retrospective authority must be obtained as soon as possible thereafter.

15.2.3 Retrospective authority for the emergency procedure

- a) The person who has the delegated authority to retrospectively approve the transaction, must be approached for retrospective authority for the emergency. This person, who is different from the person authorised to institute the emergency process, must consider the motivation and provide retrospective authority if the emergency is validated. Please see attached Appendix F for the Matrix for Approval of Emergency Procedures.

NB: Each Entity is responsible for developing its own Emergency Procedural Manual, covering all the relevant disciplines in the entity, and assigning specific persons and value thresholds, for the different roles (i.e. to institute (Invoke) and to retrospectively approve). Note that the AC may also be utilised to retrospectively approve the emergency procedure.

- b) Retrospective authority must be sought using the standard template.
- c) All emergency procedure purchases, irrespective of the value, must then be submitted to the AC for information purposes.
- d) The concept of retrospective authority applies only in the context of emergencies and does not apply to the condonation process.
- e) If an emergency procedure is followed correctly, condonation is not required. It is also important to note that a correctly followed emergency procedure also falls outside the ambit of the Confinement process.

15.3 HIGH VALUE TENDER PROCESS (HVTP)

The High Value Tender Process (HVTP) subjects all transactions falling within the High Value Tender threshold to independent scrutiny and validation of all commercial, contractual, process and governance aspects of the Bid process. The process enables Supply Chain to detect any shortcomings at key gateways in the Bid process and to make appropriate corrections before any award of business is made.

15.3.1 Principles

- a) The HVTP applies to all transactions falling within the High Value Tender threshold. The HVTP offers an opportunity for peer review, guidance, advice and the sharing of good practice and experience. The HVTP subjects all high value bids to independent scrutiny and validation of all commercial, contractual, process and governance aspects of the bid process.

- b) The process enables Supply Chain to detect any shortcomings at key gateways and to make appropriate corrections. This further reduces Transnet's risk on larger value acquisitions as any inefficiencies are addressed before any award of business is made.

The gateways that are reviewable in the process are as follows:

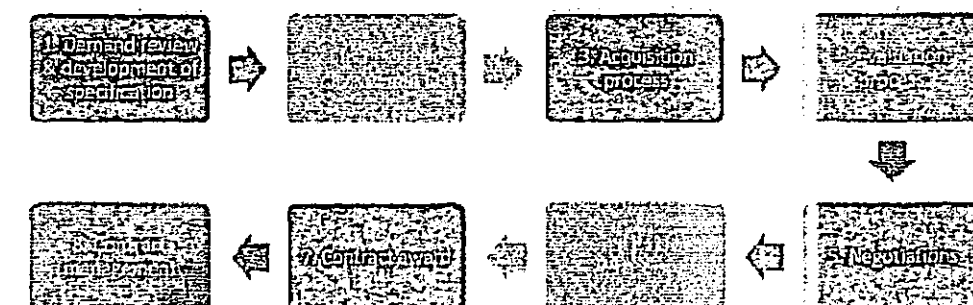


Figure [27] – The HVT process

15.3.2 The HVT Process

The following steps must be followed for any transactions falling within the High Value Tender threshold:

Entities must contact and involve the HVT team from the outset of the bidding process i.e. at the demand review stage;

The HVT team must attend to all procurement processes and advise Entities during each phase of the process as follows:

- Review the demand and business cases.
- Review the RFX document for accuracy and correctness before going to market.
- Assess the adequacy of the procurement proposed mechanism used i.e. RFP/RFI/Confinement and determine if governance is being followed by ensuring that the approval process has been complied with.
- Ensure that in all high value bids, a CFST contains at least Technical, Financial, Operational and Legal Support.
- Advise on the scoring methodology and governance issues related to the evaluation process.
- Advise the teams during the evaluation process on all bids;
- Advise and support teams during the moderation process of scores on all bids;
- Review AC documents for accuracy and correctness.
- Advise teams during the negotiation process and also determine if governance processes have been followed.
- Advise teams during the contracting process and also determine if governance processes have been followed.

- During each gateway review the HVT team will raise questions and/or concerns. The teams may not continue with the process until all the HVT team's concerns have been addressed.
- The HVT team must report significant process breaches to Transnet management. Firstly at Entity level, and if still not satisfied with the outcome / corrective action, such matters must be reported to Group ISCM.
- The HVT team must document lessons learnt throughout the process and provide feedback so that processes may be improved.

A detailed description of the HVTP and associated templates can be found on the ISCM Transnet Intranet.

15.4 UNSOLICITED BIDS

• An Unsolicited Bid is an offer unilaterally submitted by a potential supplier of its own accord and received by Transnet outside of its normal procurement process.

• Transnet is not obliged to consider Unsolicited Bids received outside its normal bidding process.

• These rules do not apply to Bidders who merely seek to be registered on Transnet's Potential Vendor Portal (TPVP) in order to be considered as potential suppliers for future business. When Goods or Services are to be acquired from such Bidders, the normal procurement mechanisms are to be used.

15.4.1 Definition

An Unsolicited Bid is an offer unilaterally submitted by a potential supplier of its own accord and received by Transnet outside of its normal procurement process.

Transnet does not encourage the consideration of Unsolicited Bids. Furthermore, Transnet is not obliged to accept Unsolicited Bids.

15.4.2 Risks

There are a number of risks related to the consideration of Unsolicited Bids:

- a) It potentially undermines fair and competitive bidding processes.
- b) It can result in purchasing Goods/Services at higher than market-related prices.
- c) Transnet runs the risk of being accused of infringing on the Unsolicited Bidder's intellectual property if it uses the concepts used in the Unsolicited Bid to approach the market.
- d) There is also danger that an Unsolicited Bid may be received, evaluated and regarded as an excellent proposal and accepted, only to ascertain afterwards that there were many suppliers in the market supplying the same or better goods or technology at much better / similar prices.

15.4.3 Criteria for consideration of unsolicited bids⁵

⁵ This section is largely based on the Municipal Finance Management Act Regulations and National Treasury's Practice Note 11 of 2008/2009 on Unsolicited Proposals

Transnet may only consider an Unsolicited Bid if the following requirements are met:

- a) the product or service offered is a demonstrably or proven unique and innovative concept;
- b) a need for the service or product has been established;
- c) the product or service will be exceptionally beneficial to Transnet or have exceptional cost advantages for Transnet;
- d) the Bidder is the sole supplier of the service or product; and
- e) the reasons for not using one of the normal bidding processes have to be found to be sound by the person with the necessary delegation of authority.

15.4.4 Unacceptable unsolicited bids

Transnet must reject an Unsolicited Bid if the Bid:

- a) relates to known Institutional requirements which can, within reasonable and practicable limits, be acquired by conventional competitive bidding methods;
- b) relates to goods or services which are generally available; or
- c) does not comply substantially with the requirements of paragraph 15.4.3 above.

15.4.5 Rejection of unsolicited bids

Should Transnet decide to reject an Unsolicited Bid, the following steps must be followed:

- a) The Bidder must be notified of the decision;
- b) All documents received in the Unsolicited Bid must be returned to the Bidder; and
- c) Transnet must ensure that it does not make use of any intellectual property or data that was contained in the Unsolicited Bid.

15.4.6 Process for consideration of unsolicited bids

- a) The Unsolicited Bid must be considered by an evaluation team. The minutes of the evaluation meeting must be recorded.
- b) The evaluation team should investigate and verify whether there are no other suppliers in the market.
- c) In the event that the evaluation team has resolved to procure the Goods or Services, depending on the contract value, the Confinement or quotation process must be followed and thereafter a recommendation made to the AC, Manager or person with the relevant authority to approve the award.
- d) All copies of Unsolicited Bids, records of discussions, records of deliberations and copies of correspondence relating to it, will be kept by the procurement official who led the process, and the AC secretary for record purposes.

15.4.7 Information to accompany the recommendation for award of the unsolicited Bid

The following information must be contained in the recommendation:

- a) A detailed description of the goods or services;
- b) A detailed description of benefits Transnet is to derive from the envisaged acquisition;
- c) The costs associated with the acquisition of the service or product;
- d) The validity period of the Unsolicited Bid;
- e) Proof of certification that the Bid was submitted by the person who holds the Intellectual property rights in the goods or service; and
- f) Certification by the evaluation team that there are no other suppliers who can provide the goods or services.

15.5 CONTRACT CONSOLIDATION

Contract consolidation may represent optimal value for Transnet in the following circumstances:

- where more than one Entity have existing contracts for the same Goods / Service with the same or different suppliers, with significant price variations, and differing contract terms, or
- where one or more Transnet Entity become aware that another Entity has already concluded a contract for the Goods / Services required by it and wish to utilise the existing contract (piggybacking).

15.5.1 Principles

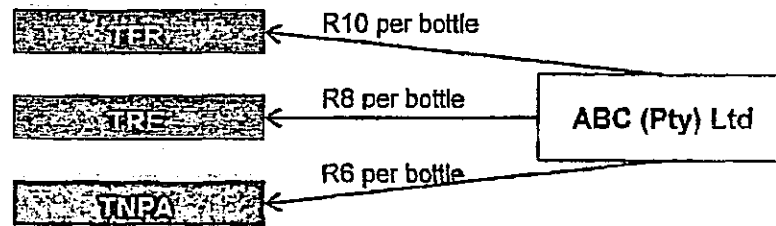
Consolidation of existing contracts is potentially problematic from a governance and operational perspective. For this reason, Transnet must endeavour to approach the market with a consolidated demand signal clearly outlined in a single RFP, rather than having each Entity approach the market in a piecemeal fashion and thereafter seeking to consolidate a number of different contracts. Therefore, when an Entity identifies the need to acquire goods/services that are common to more than one entity, it is imperative that they first ascertain whether it is feasible and advantageous to approach the market with the consolidated requirements of all Entities that require the goods / services.

Transnet can gain significantly from consolidating its demand. Due to economies of scale, it will be in a better position to negotiate price and contractual advantages. In addition, it will lessen the administrative burden on Transnet to manage a multiplicity of contracts.

15.5.2 Triggers for consolidation

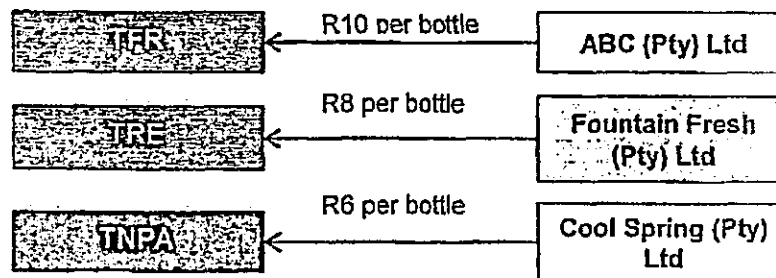
One of the following circumstances should trigger the need for consolidation of existing contracts:

- a) The same commodities or categories of commodities are being purchased by more than one entity from the same supplier but with differing prices and contract terms. For example:



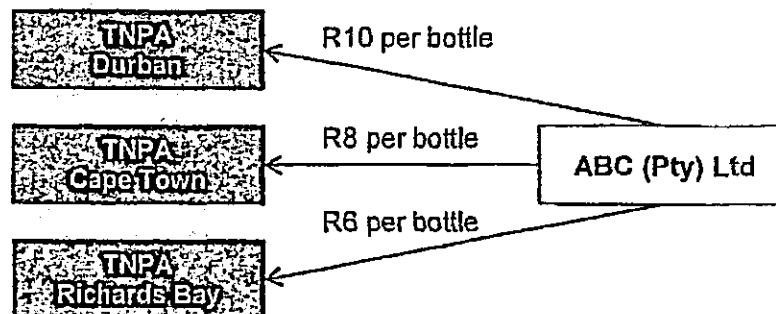
Supply of bottled water

- b) The same commodities or categories of commodities are being purchased by more than one entity from different suppliers with differing prices and contract terms. For example:



Supply of bottled water

- c) The same commodities are being purchased by one OD from the same or different suppliers, with significant price variations. For example:



Supply of bottled water

15.5.3 Factors to consider when consolidating

The following factors need to be considered when consolidating existing contracts:

- The probable increase in volumes required from the preferred supplier; (expressed in %) if contracts were to be consolidated;
- Whether the existing contracts allow volume changes, and what the contract terms and conditions regarding volume changes are;
- Price differentials between various contracts;

- d. Other key contractual differences (e.g. specifications, delivery, payments, volume discounts etc.);
- e. Whether the contracts allow for cancellation 'without cause';
- f. The expiry dates of the various contracts;
- g. The cost of termination (penalty for breach); and
- h. Current contract management and monitoring.

The merits of each case should be evaluated based on the factors above in order to determine the feasibility of consolidation. Once the feasibility of contract consolidation has been determined, a decision will be made on whether to renegotiate one of the existing contracts or issue a new bid.

The cost of termination of existing contracts must be calculated and then weighed against potential benefits of consolidation in terms of cost and Quality. It is important to note that existing contract periods must be adhered to where financially viable. Paying high penalties due to the cancellation of existing contracts should be avoided as far as possible.

Where it is clear that there is no financial benefit for Transnet to renegotiate the existing contracts then the process to be followed would be to issue a new bid for the consolidated spend, when the existing contract(s) terminate.

15.5.4 Deciding on which contract to consolidate

Once a decision has been made to consolidate, the next issue is to determine which contract is the most favourable for consolidation. In arriving at this decision, the following factors must be considered:

- a. Identify the contract that entails the biggest spend or usage;
- b. The OD and/or region contributing the largest volume;
- c. Whether one supplier can meet all Transnet's requirements;
- d. The perception regarding potential market challenges (type of commodity and potential suppliers);
- e. The competitive landscape of these Goods and Services; and
- f. New suppliers in the market.

15.5.5 Process for consolidation of a number of existing contracts

- a. Where it is considered feasible to consolidate spend to one of the existing contracts, all other contracts must be terminated. The most favourable existing contract would be increased to include other Transnet Entities' requirements after negotiation. The Transnet Entity originally managing that contract will be responsible to initiate the approval process for the increase of contract value.
- b. Where the increase in value is below 10% of the original contract value, the matter must be submitted to the relevant Entity AC for noting.
- c. If the increase in contract value is above 10%, the matter must be submitted to the relevant Transnet Entity's AC for approval.

- d) Once the relevant Transnet Entity has approved the increase, the matter must be submitted to the other Transnet Entities' ACs for information.
- e) Where consolidation would result in a substantial increase in the scope and value of the contract (more than 50% of the original estimated contract value as approved by the AC), it would be peremptory to embark upon a new bid process for the consolidated spend.
- f) Inclusion of entities into the consolidated contract may be on a staggered basis. For example, where a current Transnet Entity's contract expires 3 months after the consolidated contract commences, that contract can be allowed to run its full period. Thereafter, the entity will be included in the new transversal agreement, with a sliding-scale volume discount structure being coupled to the pricing.
- g) Contract "owners" must notify all Transnet users of the new transversal contracts that are in place to ensure maximum advantage for Transnet. However, please note that this mechanism is to be regarded as almost an interim measure. Ideally all entities must be approached during the demand planning stage already to obtain their estimated requirements beforehand for inclusion in the consolidated RFX document.
- h) Note that the process to be followed for the normal increase of contract values and cancellation of contracts will still apply.

5.5.6 "Piggybacking"

- a) "Piggybacking" arises when an existing contract has been identified, which one Transnet Entity has concluded for specific goods/services, and which another entity would like to utilise for their requirements.
- b) The Transnet Entity who wishes to "piggyback" off an existing contract should obtain prior approval from the AC of the Transnet Entity that concluded the contract. Once approval from that AC is obtained, the supplier should be approached to indicate whether he/she is able to meet the increased volume as well as any price discounts that may be offered.
- c) Where the increase in value is below 10% of the original contract value, the matter must be re-submitted to the relevant AC for noting. If the increase in contract value is above 10%, the matter must be re-submitted to the relevant Entity AC for final approval.
- d) Once the relevant Entity has approved the increase, the matter must be submitted to the other ACs of Entities who want to make use of this contract for information.
- e) The respective Transnet Entities must make satisfactory arrangements between themselves regarding the apportionment or recovery of costs for goods / services, if applicable.
- f) Where consolidation would result in a substantial increase in the scope and value of the contract (more than 50%), it would be prudent to embark upon a new bid process for the consolidated spend.

15.5 ACQUISITIONS ASSOCIATED WITH INCOME GENERATING CONTRACTS

- 15.6.1 Although income generating contracts are in principle excluded from this Procurement Procedure Manual, all associated expenditure contracts necessary to fulfil such contracts (i.e. procurement contracts to acquire the necessary Goods or Services), falls within the ambit of the PPM.
- 15.6.2 For example, TFR negotiates an income generating contract to transport fuel from the Port of Durban to Zimbabwe. This would be a pure Income generating contract and although it might require approval from the TFR Exco or even Transnet Board of Directors, it would fall outside the scope of the PPM and AC approval would not be necessary.
- 15.6.3 However, if TFR needs to purchase 2 additional locomotives and 90 rail tank wagons to provide this Service (fulfil the contract); such associated expenditure / procurement contracts would fall within the ambit of the PPM and would also require AC approval.
- 15.6.4 The only exception to this rule would be in circumstances where a Transnet Division or Specialist Unit needs to respond to an external bid invitation (e.g. TRE responding to a bid invitation issued by PRASA for the supply of suburban coaches). In such instances Transnet would need to prepare its bid for the income generating contract taking into consideration any goods/services that it would need to acquire in order to respond to the bid. The limited time available to respond to such bid invitation would not allow the Transnet Division or Specialist Unit to invite bids in the normal manner for goods/services required.
- 15.6.5 In such cases, irrespective of the monetary value of such transaction(s), the CEO, BADC or the Board may authorise such "confined" requests for bids from potential suppliers and/or approve the selection of possible joint venture partners/subcontractors, etc., without AC approval, provided that the matter(s) be reported for the AC's information as soon as possible after the Transnet OD has lodged its bid. When obtaining bids in respect of goods and services required in order to respond to an external bid invitation, the Transnet Entity must clearly state that the award of any business pursuant to such bids cannot be guaranteed and is conditional on the Transnet Entity being selected as the Successful Bidder.
- 15.6.6 Such transaction(s) need not be submitted for approval again, should the Transnet Entity be selected as the Successful Bidder, as this could lead to delays in the execution of such external income generating contract.
- 15.6.7 On completion of the project, the AC should be informed of the outcome in detail, e.g. how the selected subcontractors/JV Partners performed, whether the project was completed on time, what Income was derived from the Income generating contract after all outsourced parts have been accounted for, etc.

Background and Context

Procurement planning

SECTION B
GO TO MARKET

Chapter 16: Bid Preparation

- Compiling bids – General
- Evaluation criteria in bid documents
- Timeframes
- Validity period
- Essential requirements in bid documents
- Sign off

Chapter 17: Bid Administration

- Issue of bids
- Receipt and safeguarding of bids
- Opening of bids
- Amendments and communication after closing

Evaluation and Adjudication

Contract Management

Functions of Governance Structures

Appendices

CHAPTER 16 : BID PREPARATION**16.1 COMPILING BIDS - GENERAL**

Bid documents define the rights, risks and obligations of the parties involved in the bidding process and subsequent contract. Documents must therefore clearly and precisely spell out all relevant aspects of the bid such as the work to be carried out, the goods to be supplied, the place of delivery or installation, the schedule for delivery or completion, minimum performance requirements and the warranty and maintenance requirements.

Accordingly, such documentation should be legally and technically sound and should assign risk in an appropriate manner. The bid documents must provide Bidders with clear and comprehensive information necessary to enable them to submit responsive bids. The specifications, including the evaluation criteria and weightings, must be determined upfront as indicated in Chapter 13 above (*Determining Evaluation Criteria*), as bids may only be evaluated according to the criteria stipulated in the bid documentation. Bid documents must be drafted with care and precision so as to reduce the risk of legal challenge by unsuccessful bidders and avoid unintended consequences.

16.2 EVALUATION CRITERIA IN BID DOCUMENTS

The bid documents must make it clear that, ⁶where applicable, Bidders will be assessed in two stages:

16.2.1 STAGE 1**a) Test for administrative responsiveness**

Inform Bidders of the minimum requirements for responsiveness, and the consequences of not being responsive.

b) Test for substantive responsiveness (Prequalification criteria)

Indicate Prequalification Criteria, if any.

c) Threshold

- (i) Indicate that there are thresholds that have to be met before a Bidder can proceed to further evaluation in the following order: Local Content/Production threshold if applicable, SD/B-BBEE threshold and Functionality (Quality) threshold.
- (ii) State what these thresholds are, as well as the minimum score that has to be met to pass the threshold.
- (iii) The RFP may also state that if no Bidders pass a particular threshold, or if only one bidder passes the relevant threshold, then in the interests of promoting competitiveness and cost effectiveness, Transnet reserves the right to lower the threshold by a certain pre-determined percentage. This must be clearly specified in the RFP, provided it is in Transnet's best interests to do so and there is concurrence between the end user and the CPO.
- (iv) Kindly note that since the LC thresholds are laid down in terms of legislation, the lowering of such minimum thresholds as determined by the DTI is not allowed, and bidders who fail to meet the laid down minimum thresholds for LC, will be disqualified.

⁶ This is the default position but will not necessarily be applicable in all instances, e.g. low value transactions or approved list purchases where the quality of the product has already been pre-approved.

16.2.2 STAGE 2

a) Evaluation criteria

The RFP must specify all the evaluation criteria which will be taken into account in evaluating the bid and how such criteria will be evaluated. The weighting of each criterion must also be disclosed in the RFP document. Typically this would include the following:

(i) Quality

(Quality is normally included only as a threshold in Phase 1. However, where Quality is of critical importance, it may be included as an evaluation criterion again in Phase 2)

Include Quality criteria as discussed in Chapter 13 (*Determining Evaluation Criteria*). If interviews, presentations or site visits are required in order to assess Quality, this should be stated in the RFP. The specific purpose and outcomes of the interviews, presentations or site visits and the associated scoring should also be included.

(ii) Price

The following issues are frequently included in price to assess TCO:

- Installation costs
- Warranties
- Service and maintenance costs
- Operating supplies
- Storage costs
- Commercial discounts
- Incoterms
- Price adjustment conditions
- Exchange rate fluctuations

It is necessary to provide Bidders with a comprehensive pricing schedule to enable proper and uniform submission from Bidders and to enable a uniform approach to evaluation.

(iii) Supplier development

The SD criteria that were developed during the planning phase should be incorporated in the bid document. These typically include a combination of the following:

- Industrialisation
- Capability and capacity building
- Technology transfer/ sustainability
- Skills development
- Job creation/ preservation
- Small business promotion
- Rural development/upliftment and regional integration

(iv) Preference (B-BBEE)

The preference criteria that were developed during the planning phase should be incorporated in the bid document. These typically include a combination of the following:

- Standard B-BBEE criteria, as per B-BBEE scorecard;
- Minimum B-BBEE thresholds;
- Further Recognition Criteria (Current)
 - Ownership;
 - Management control;
 - Employment equity;
- Further Recognition Criteria (Future)
 - Ownership;
 - Management control;
 - Employment equity;
 - Preferential Procurement; and
 - Enterprise development.

These could differ on a case-by-case basis depending on the specific market, and what Transnet's expectations and objectives for that particular market are.

(v) Financial stability (if applicable - see paragraph 13.2.6)

This will be evaluated using ratios based on Bidders' audited financial statements.

16.2. Alternative Bids

The RFP should indicate clearly if Alternative Bids would be accepted. If Alternative Bids are acceptable, the RFP must state that an Alternative Bid will only be considered if a Bidder also submits a main offer strictly in accordance with all the requirements stated in the RFP. Such alternative bids will be evaluated as separate bids and included in a schedule that compares the requirements of the RFP with the Alternative Bid that is proposed.

In instances where the RFP did not invite alternative bids, alternative bids will as a general rule not be considered, as that could prejudice bidders who did not provide alternative bids and also on the basis that the RFP did not state clearly that alternative bids will also be considered. The CFST therefore has to consider this aspect carefully when preparing the bid documents.

16.3 TIMEFRAMES**16.3.1 Submission of Bids**

Suppliers should have sufficient time to prepare and submit Bids. Below are guidelines to determine the minimum timeframes:

- a) **Off-the-shelf type of purchases:** a minimum of two weeks should be allowed, if possible.
- b) **More complex bids** (such as construction works which involve quantity surveying, national bids, etc): a minimum of 3 weeks should be allowed.
- c) **When international responses are anticipated,** more than 3 weeks should be allocated to ensure a sufficient response.

15.4 VALIDITY PERIOD

The validity period must allow ample time for the evaluation, drafting of the recommendation and approval by all the necessary governing structures for each bid. Unless circumstances require a longer or shorter period, bid documents must state that the Bids must hold good for at least 90 days from the closing date.

15.5 ESSENTIAL REQUIREMENTS IN BID DOCUMENT

The standard RFX template, available on the ISCM Transnet intranet, must be used when Goods and Services are procured.

16.5.1 Inclusions

When preparing the bid documentation based on the standard RFP template, the following must be considered:

- a) Name and address of the Transnet Entity/ies procuring the goods/services.
- b) Manner and place for the submission of proposals.
- c) Deadline for submission of proposals.
- d) Validity period of submitted Bids.
- e) Bid reference number (see paragraph 17.1.1).
- f) Instructions for preparing Bids.
- g) Consecutively indexed and numbered pages of the bid documents in order that both Bidder and contract administrator can easily check the completeness of the bid document.
- h) The rules governing communication between the Bidder and Transnet during the bidding process.
- i) The name and contact details of the Transnet employee who is authorised to communicate directly with and to receive communications directly from suppliers in connection with the bid invitation, including clarifications of the bid.
- j) An indication as to whether or not Transnet intends to convene a compulsory briefing session.
- k) General terms and conditions of contract.
- l) Requirements of the CIDB in the case of a bid relating to construction, upgrading or refurbishment of buildings and Infrastructure.
- m) Any criteria required by other applicable legislation.
- n) Obligation on Bidders to declare any conflict of interest they may have in respect of the Bid that is to be submitted. In particular, Bidders must state whether they have any personal or business relationship with any employees or directors of Transnet.
- o) An indication of whether or not suppliers are permitted to submit proposals for only a portion of the goods/services to be procured and if so, a description of the portion(s) for which such proposals may be submitted. Bid documents must be specific as in certain instances Transnet may require that the whole contract be completed by the same contractor in order to establish responsibility.
- p) Bid documents must state that Transnet reserves the right to accept a complete Bid, even if it is not the lowest, provided it is in the best interest of Transnet.
- q) Whether the process may involve negotiations.

- r) Anticipated date(s) for starting delivery and/or completion of delivery of the Goods/Services.
- s) Conditions regarding shipping, if applicable.
- t) Currency and the manner in which the proposal price is to be formulated or expressed.
- u) A notice to Bidders that Bids must be submitted by the Bidder in a sealed envelope. The envelope must indicate the bidder's name, a contact person and details, the bid number, the subject and closing date, time and venue so that there is no need to open the document and risk the possibility of prices being leaked.
- v) Terms of payment.
- w) Where Bidders are required to insert prices on price lists supplied by Transnet, they must be advised to delete items for which they do not wish to bid if they have this option. If the price has been included elsewhere in the price list, this must be indicated. After Bids have been opened, Bidders may not supplement their original offer if it was incomplete.
- x) A list of the required returnable documents, e.g. tax clearance certificates, industry-specific certificates, etc. The list should indicate clearly which returnable documents must be submitted by the closing date, failing which bidders will be eliminated.
- y) Bid documentation must state that Transnet shall not be obliged to accept the lowest, any bid or an alternative bid.
- z) Bid documentation must stipulate that disputes regarding the bidding process must be settled by the Procurement Ombudsman.
- aa) A space on each page where the Bidder has to append his signature plus name of company and company stamp.
- bb) A certificate of acquaintance with the RFP documents, as well as a certificate of attending a compulsory site inspection/tender briefing session.

16.5.2 A CD containing pricing spreadsheets may be requested in order to simplify the copying of information for comparison purposes. This CD should be supplementary and should contain no information that is not in the hard copy of the Bid submission.

16.5.3 Transnet's Disclaimers

The standard RFP documents should state that Transnet is not committed to any course of action as a result of its issuance of the RFP and/or its receipt of a proposal in response to it. The RFP should also state that Transnet will not be bound by an interim step in the procurement process such as the selection of a preferred bidder/s. In particular, Transnet reserves the right to:

- a) modify the RFP's goods/services or other terms and conditions and request respondents to re-bid on any changes;
- b) reject any proposal which does not conform to the detailed instructions and specifications;
- c) disqualify proposals submitted after the stated submission deadline;
- d) not necessarily accept the lowest priced proposal;
- e) reject all proposals, if it so decides;
- f) award a contract in connection with the RFP at any time after the RFP's closing date;

- g) award only a portion of the proposed goods/services which are reflected in the scope of the RFP;
- h) split the award of the contract between more than one supplier; or
- i) make no award of a contract.

Bidders who submit Bids subject to certain qualifications which are in conflict with certain bid conditions must be advised to withdraw such qualification, failing which the Bid may be disqualified.

16.5.4 Transnet's standard terms and conditions of contract

When issuing any RFP, Transnet's standard terms and conditions must be used. Please note that a standard contract template has been prepared for Market Demand Strategy related projects. For any additional terms and conditions, a schedule detailing these must be added to the standard terms and conditions. The reason for this is that the terms and conditions that accompany the RFP document will become the terms and conditions of any master agreement that is concluded with a supplier in terms of the RFP.

16.6 SIGN-OFF OF BID DOCUMENTATION AND GO-TO-MARKET STRATEGY

Once the bid documentation has been compiled, the bid document must be reviewed and signed off as correct by the CPO or person to whom the power has been delegated, as a quality control measure. Once this sign-off has been obtained the media advert must be approved by Group Communications in terms of extant instructions issued by that office, before adverts may be placed in the media.

CHAPTER 17 : BID ADMINISTRATION
(issue, receipt, opening of bids and communication)

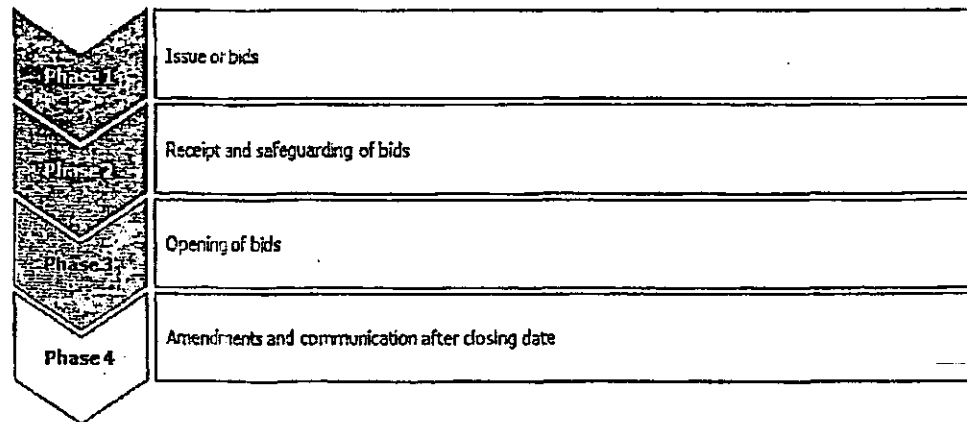


Figure [28] – Four phases of bid administration



17.1 PHASE 1: ISSUE OF BIDS

17.1.1 Bid reference numbers and short descriptions

At this stage in the process, the RFX document, the evaluation criteria and weightings, the evaluation methodology, as well as the going to market strategy has already been signed off by the person or governance structure with the appropriate DoA.

Prior to advertising, each RFX must be issued with a business-unique consecutive number. The issuing of RFX numbers must be controlled by a responsible person. The RFX number must clearly indicate the following:

- whether it was an Open Bid or a quotation; e.g. RFX No, Quotation No, or Approved List No.;
- the entity which issued the bid;
- in the case of a CIDB bid, allocated a prefix to the bid number to indicate that it is a CIDB-bid;
- a specific digit/character can be allocated to indicate whether a bid will close at the AC or at Regional/depot level e.g. BID NO: TPT/CT/11/01/138/CIDB; and
- following the unique number, a short description of the requirement must be added, e.g. "CONSTRUCTION OF NEW ELECTRIC SUB-STATION AT THE CONTAINER TERMINAL AT PIER NO 2, PORT OF SALDANHA".

17.1.2 All notices and adverts to be issued in the name of Transnet SOC Ltd

All documentation relating to bids shall be issued in the name of Transnet SOC Ltd and shall be published (advertised) in the Republic of South Africa, (nationally and/or

regionally), and abroad if necessary. The name of the relevant OD requiring the service shall be clearly indicated, e.g. Transnet Freight Rail, a Division of Transnet SOC Ltd (Reg. No. 1990/000900/30). The rationale for issuing notices in the name of Transnet is that every legal document must reflect the registered company name i.e. the legal persona of the company which will be contracted with.

17.1.3 Important information to be included in notices and Advertisements

The format of the Advertisement is informed by Group Communications guidelines. This format must be used for all Advertisements, and can be obtained on the Transnet Intranet.

The advert should be as short as possible but nevertheless should contain all relevant information. Notices and Advertisements calling for Bids must include the following information pertaining to the collection and lodging of bid documents:

- RFX number;
- brief description of the goods / services required;
- where the prescribed forms may be obtained and the cost to purchase them (if any) and the closing date for collection of bid documents;
- closing date and time for submission of the bid document;
- place where Bids must be lodged;
- information pertaining to site inspections or pre-bid briefing sessions;
- contact person's business address, telephone/fax number and email address; and
- details of Transnet's fraud line.

17.1.4 Bid document fees

- a) A Manager with the necessary Delegated Authority for a particular contract may decide, at his/her own discretion, that a non-refundable fee be charged to Bidders for bid documents. This fee must only reflect the administrative costs of preparing and issuing the bid documents. The price to be charged for the bid documentation must be stated in the advertisement and invitation to bid. The decision to charge a document fee must be taken with circumspection as small companies may be unfairly excluded from the process due to the prohibitive costs of the bid documents.

The following guidelines (though not prescriptive) may be used at the discretion of the Manager, to determine a fee for bid documents:

TABLE 18

Value of bid	Bid fee (guideline)
<R2million	no charge
R2million to <R5 million	R250
R5million to <R10 million	R500
R10million to <R35 million	R750
>R35 million	R1000 or higher (discretion of CPO)

- b) Where a document fee is to be charged, the advert must clearly state the payment method. Due to the risks involved in handling cash, the sale of bid documents at site meetings should be avoided. Strict control over cash received

should be exercised and documentary proof of documents sold and receipts issued should be kept on the appropriate files.

- c) Should cash payment be one of the chosen payment methods, bid documents must clearly stipulate that payments be made to the finance office (or another office independent from the office that issued the bid).
- d) The finance office must ensure that the RFX number is clearly reflected on the receipt. Bid documents may only be issued to Bidders producing a valid original receipt clearly indicating the relevant RFX number. A copy of the receipt with the signatures of the issuing officer and the Bidder who purchased the document must be kept on the appropriate file. A copy of this documentation must be sent to the Secretary of the AC before the closing date.

17.1.5 Publication of notice / advert

- a) The notice/advert must be published on or before the day of issuing of the bids. Bids may be published in the appropriate media for the Goods/Services being procured, e.g. trade magazines, newspapers which are distributed locally or wider, in electronic bid bulletins, other media which specifically targets specific markets or small business enterprises, whichever is best suited to reach the potential Bidders.
- b) Copies of the notice and prescribed forms shall be furnished to the AC secretariat if the bid is expected to fall within the jurisdiction of such an AC. This would be the case if the bid is expected to be over the laid-down limit or longer than two Years or where there is uncertainty as to whether it will fall within the jurisdiction of a Manager.
- c) Any subsequent amendments to notices inviting Bids (e.g. extension of the closing date) shall be communicated in the same media as the initial bid. The AC Secretariat must be notified timeously of such amendments. The office responsible for placing the adverts shall retain copies of all adverts as placed by the relevant media, for audit purposes.

17.1.6 RFX Issue Register

The following important information pertaining to all bid documents issued must be entered into the RFX Issue Register, which is compiled by the RFX Issuing Office:

- RFX number and description;
- receipt number and date of purchase if a bid document fee was charged;
- document number e.g. 'Document 3' sold to 'Potential Bidder x';
- name and contact particulars of person who collected documents;
- bidder's (company) name; and
- closing date.

A record must be kept of all the names, contact particulars of the persons or enterprises to which bid documents have been issued, as well as the document number sold to the potential Bidder. This is necessary in case there is a clarification or amendment, and all Bidders need to be informed.

17.1.7 Queries from bidders / amendments before the closing date

Employees/persons listed in bid notices as contact persons must be available to answer requests for clarification from the prospective Bidders. This is because a

Bidder may only communicate with the person listed on the bid document on any matter regarding his Bid prior to the closing date of the bid.

Without identifying which bidder sought the clarification, the clarification provided must be communicated simultaneously in writing to all Bidders who obtained bid documents. The response to such a request must be effected within a reasonable time prior to the deadline of the bid to enable the Bidders to make timely submissions of their Bids, considering the clarification. If necessary, the deadline should be extended.

The disclosure of information to potential Bidders by the contact person must be made with circumspection. For example, it would not be allowed to provide potential Bidders with information such as budget amount approved, names of previous respondents, prices paid on previous contracts, number of bid documents issued to date, etc.

17.1.8 Amendments before the closing date

- a) Transnet is entitled to amend any bid condition, validity period, specification or plan; or extend the closing date before the closing date, or in the case of a compulsory briefing session, before the scheduled session.

However, such amendments or extensions must be advertised and/or all Bidders who obtained bid documents must be advised in writing per fax or email of such amendment or extension a minimum of three Working Days before the scheduled date. The new closing date and time must be clearly reflected.

- b) Where the closing date of a bid is extended, the notice of extension shall also state that Bids already received will be retained unopened in the tender box and be duly considered after the expiry of the extended period. However, the Bidder may request that such Bid be returned to him/her. The Bidder may also cancel the existing Bid by submitting a later dated Bid before the extended closing date. For amendments after the closing date refer to paragraph 17.4.1.

- 17.1.9 In the event of a Material Amendment to the specification or scope of work, to which other new Bidders could possibly respond, the bid must be cancelled and a revised RFX must be advertised. This would give all other potential Bidders the opportunity to respond. This can only be done after approval by the person who signed off the RFX document (refer paragraph 16.6 above), has been obtained. The cancellation must be advertised in the relevant media. If the cancellation and reissue happen simultaneously, they may be advertised together where the re-issue makes reference to the cancellation.

17.1.10 Compulsory Site Inspection / Briefing Sessions

- a) A compulsory site inspection or briefing session has to be held in cases where it is necessary for the Bidders to view the site in order to prepare their Bids, or where Transnet deems it necessary to provide Bidders with further information to allow them to complete their Bids properly.
- b) If a compulsory site inspection/briefing session is convened, minutes of the meeting must be recorded together with an attendance register. The minutes must include the queries/requests raised for clarification at the meeting, together with the responses to those requests without identifying the sources of the requests. It is recommended that questions be submitted in writing by Bidders and that Transnet respond in writing to all bidders within 48 hours of the briefing session. The minutes must be forwarded to all Bidders who attended the meeting so as to ensure that the same information is provided to

all Bidders. This would enable the Bidders to take the minutes into account in preparing their Bids.

- c) Bidders are obliged to attend scheduled compulsory briefing sessions, as failure to do so will result in disqualification of the Bids. The bid notices must clearly indicate this. Discretion must therefore be exercised in deciding whether or not a compulsory site inspection or briefing session is absolutely necessary.
- d) If a compulsory briefing session is not considered absolutely essential, consideration could be given to having a non-compulsory briefing session. In such instances, attendance at such a meeting would be on a voluntary basis. The RFX documents must clearly state this. The RFX should also state that Transnet will not be held responsible if any Bidder who did not attend the non-compulsory session subsequently feels disadvantaged as a result thereof.
- e) Latecomers to any briefing session will be allowed to attend. However, no information will be repeated for the benefit of latecomers. They must be advised that the information will be made available to them by means of the minutes of the briefing session. The minutes will be made available to all attendees who completed the attendance register. Details of latecomers (e.g. company name and names of their representatives, as well as approximate time of (late) arrival) must be recorded on the site register, so as to ensure that Transnet's interest is protected.

17.1.11 Electronic issuing and receipt of Bids

ODs may at their discretion, and provided that they have introduced sufficient controls to prevent abuse, make use of electronic technology to:

- advertise bids electronically (e.g. website);
- issue bid documents electronically;
- enable electronic payment for bid documents where applicable; and/or
- receipt of Bids electronically.

This will only be allowed **provided** that the following basic requirements are complied with:

- a) Potential Bidders who are not in a position to access electronic media must also be accommodated;
- b) There is an option for potential Bidders to obtain either electronic or hard copies of the bid document;
- c) Where applicable, bid documents must be paid for, irrespective of whether the bid documents are obtained in hard copy or electronically;
- d) Appropriate measures must be taken to protect electronic versions of the bid document;
- e) Bids must be received in a controlled environment, and may only be accessed /downloaded from the dedicated 'Electronic Tender Box' (ETB) after the closing date and time;
- f) The ETB should be able to send an automated acknowledgment confirming date and time of delivery;
- g) There should be a backup system in case of server failure;

- h) The ETB may not accept late Bids. A Bid is late if it is received at Transnet after the closing date and time. Bidders must be advised that server issues outside of the Transnet electronic environment will not be considered as a reason for acceptance of late Bids.
- i) The ETB should be able to send a message to the sender to inform him/her that the Bid was received late and will not be considered;
- j) The ETB should be able to handle unlimited numbers of last minute Bids. It should be impossible to overload;
- k) ETBs need to be able to cater for different bids closing on different dates;
- l) It will be allowed to receive scanned original documents e.g. Tax and BBBEE certificates; Transnet may however at its discretion decide to subsequently call for hard copy certified originals if deemed necessary.
- m) Documents must be write protected; and
- n) There must be no file size constraints with regard to mail attachments.



Receipt and safeguarding of bids

17.2 PHASE 2: RECEIPT AND SAFEGUARDING OF BIDS

The RFX document should clearly indicate what must be stated on the outside of the sealed envelope containing the Bid. Refer to paragraph 16.5.1u) in Chapter 16 on *Bid Preparation*.

17.2.1 Bids are to be lodged are kept in a controlled environment

- a) All bids falling within the jurisdiction of the AC must clearly indicate the physical (and courier address, if not the same), and/or ETB address (if electronic Bids will be allowed) of the AC where the Bids will be received.
- b) Where the Bid price is reasonably expected to fall within the jurisdiction of a Manager, (i.e. below the jurisdiction of the AC), the bid document must clearly indicate to whom the Bids are to be addressed, the closing venue, date and time.
- c) If upon receipt it is found that such Bids do fall within the AC's jurisdiction, they are to be dealt with in exactly the same manner as if it had closed at the AC. The award of such business must be referred to the AC for consideration in the normal manner, together with an explanation as to why the bid did not close at the AC.
- d) Under no circumstances should such bids be cancelled and re-issued. Furthermore, condonation is not required.
- e) Bids that were anticipated to fall within the AC threshold, and which therefore closed at the AC, but were subsequently found to fall below the AC threshold,

must be dealt with by the relevant Manager. The matter must be reported to the AC for information.

- f) Where some Bids fall below the AC jurisdiction and some are within the AC jurisdiction, the lowest priced responsive bid will determine where the matter must be dealt with.
- g) The tender box shall be fitted with two locks, and the keys shall be kept separately by two nominated officials. No single person must be allowed to open a tender box on his/her own. Both officials shall be present when the box is opened on the stipulated closing date and time.

17.2.2 Unsealed Bid /Bids without sufficient cover information

- a) If a Bid is received unsealed or without the relevant information on the envelope, the contents shall be ascertained and then sealed with a note made on the envelope indicating:
 - date of receipt and by whom (name, designation and contact number);
 - the state in which the Bid had been received;
 - number and description of Bid; and
 - correct closing date, time and venue.

It will then be placed in the correct tender box for opening at the appropriate closing time.

- b) When finally opened, such envelopes shall be kept on the appropriate files as a record. The bid list compiled by the officer responsible for the bid opening should also indicate that such Bid was received open, so that the evaluation team can consider whether or not there is evidence of possible manipulation of the process. However, such Bids should not be summarily disqualified.

17.2.3 Receipt of quotes via fax or e-mail

- a) No Bid received by e-mail or fax must be considered unless the bid document specifically provides for it.
- b) Where the bid document specifically provides for the receipt of Bids via e-mail or fax, provision must be made in the bid document to indemnify Transnet against any claims which may arise as a result of a Bidder not being able to transmit his/her quotes to Transnet for any reason whatsoever before the closing time.
- c) Faxed or e-mailed offers must be received by a person who has not been involved in the development of the bid documents and/or will not be involved in the evaluation of submissions.
- d) Strict control measures must be exercised over fax machines used for the receipt of low value Bids. Once received, the person responsible for receiving the Bids must seal the respective Bids in separate envelopes and keep them in a controlled environment until the closing date.
- e) On the closing date and time, the Bids must be opened and stamped. A register of the quotes requested and received must also be kept. No additional quotes are to be requested or considered after the closing date and time.

17.2.4 Late Bids

- a) Transnet will not accept any late Bids. A Bid is late if it is not placed in the relevant Tender Box or delivered by hand by the bidder or his courier to the relevant responsible person indicated in the bid document by the closing time for such bid. A late Bid shall not be admitted for consideration and where feasible shall be kept unopened. A letter explaining the reasons for not considering the late Bids must be sent to all late Bidders. The Bidders must be notified that they may collect their late Bids if they wish to do so.
- b) A Bidder must, however, not be penalised if a Bid is received late due solely to a fault on the part of Transnet.
- c) Where it is necessary to open a late Bid to obtain the contact details of the sender, each page of the document shall be stamped "Late Bid" before the Bid is placed on the appropriate files. The exact time and date that the Bid was received must be recorded. The envelope must be stamped, initialled and retained for record purposes on the appropriate files.
- d) However, the Chairperson of the AC has the discretion to decide whether a late Bid may be considered where exceptional circumstances arise. The decision to consider a late Bid should be taken with great circumspection. All documentary evidence leading to such decisions as well as proof of the decision itself must be kept on the appropriate file as part of the record. Hereunder follows a non-exhaustive list of circumstances where an AC Chairperson may decide to exercise discretion and accept a late Bid:-
 - If Transnet was solely to blame for his Bid being late e.g. a labour strike action in front of the building, or an evacuation drill effectively denying the bidder access to the tender box;
 - In cases where only one Bid is received and such Bid is received late. In such cases, no prejudice is suffered by anyone if the late Bid is accepted. Consideration must, however, be given to whether the process could have been manipulated to favour the one and only late Bidder.
 - Late responses on a RFI process where the purpose of the RFI was merely to gauge what is available in the market, or to compile a specification; and
 - Where the Bidder provides compelling reasons for being late, indicating that the lateness of the submission is not due to any fault or bad planning on his or her part.
- e) Bidders who submit late Bids must be informed of their right to petition the Chairman of the AC should they believe that they have valid grounds for inclusion. The motivation for acceptance of a late Bid, plus the chairperson's ruling on the matter, must be retained on the relevant files.
- f) Late Bids that are not considered must be retained for a period of at least 6 months before being destroyed. Record of destruction must be recorded on the relevant file.



Opening of bids

17.3 PHASE 3: OPENING OF BIDS

17.3.1 Time and manner of opening of bids

- a) Bids shall be opened promptly after the deadline for the receipt of Bids, or as soon as possible thereafter.
- b) Bids shall be opened by a duly authorised senior employee in the presence of at least one other employee. The persons must declare their interest. In the event of a conflict of interest they must recuse themselves from the opening of the Bids. In addition, the persons opening the Bid documents must not be involved in the issuing, evaluation or adjudication of that bid as they are perceived to have an indirect interest in the bid.
- c) There should be a check to verify that Bidders had paid bid fees, where applicable. If bid fees had not been paid, the Bid must be endorsed accordingly, and an explanation obtained from the Bidder by the AC Secretary. If no reasonable explanation can be provided by the Bidder, the Bid must be disqualified. A record of this decision must be kept by the Secretary.

17.3.2 Stamping of Bids

- a) An employee shall date stamp the Bid and all attachments to the bid document to signify that such documents were part of the original bid document. Bids must be numbered in the sequence in which they have been opened and the words "and last" must be endorsed on the last Bid. Where only one Bid has been received, the words "and only" must be endorsed on such Bid.
- b) Where Bidders are required to insert prices on price lists supplied by Transnet and prices have not been inserted in all the relevant spaces on the forms or have not been deleted by Bidders, such spaces shall be stamped "no price" by the employee who opens the Bids. All pages indicating prices, delivery times, special conditions, etc., that will be regarded as crucial during the evaluation process must be stamped and initialled by the opening official.
- c) Likewise, in instances where the Bidder has deleted prices and inserted new prices, or where prices have been corrected with correction fluid, the opening official must endorse the correct amount in words, initial next to it, make a copy of the relevant page, and retain it on the bid file. When the matter eventually serves at the AC for the award of the business, the AC Secretary must verify that Bid prices or other crucial information have not been tampered with.
- d) Where Bidders were requested to submit their Bids in duplicate (or more copies) all duplicate documents must be stamped "Duplicate" on the cover page after the opening official has verified that all the crucial information in the different documents are identical.
- e) The employee in charge of the bid opening will record particulars of all Bids received in duplicate in a Bid Opening Register. The original list of Bids received must accompany the original Bid documents when forwarded to the department that invited the Bids. The name, contact details and signature of the person collecting the Bid documents must be obtained and the duplicate list with the signature will be kept by the bid opening office, either on the appropriate file or in a register as part of the record.

Phase 4

Amendments and communication after closing date

17.4 PHASE 4: AMENDMENTS AND COMMUNICATION AFTER CLOSING DATE**17.4.1 Amendments after the closing date**

Transnet is entitled to amend any bid condition, validity period, specification or plan after the closing date of a bid. However, all parties who obtained bid documents and submitted valid Bids must be advised thereof in writing by fax or e-mail and be given the opportunity of bidding on the amended basis by an extended closing date and time. Proof of such written communication must be kept for record purposes. Bidders who did not submit valid Bids (e.g. submitted their Bids late, or who did not attend the compulsory briefing session/site inspection) cannot participate in the extended invitation. Authority for such communication must be obtained and is dealt with in paragraph 17.4.3.d) below.

In the event of a material amendment to the specification or scope of work, to which other new Bidders could possibly respond, the RFX must be cancelled and a revised RFX must be advertised. This would give all other potential Bidders the opportunity to respond. This can only be done after approval had been obtained from both the person who signed off the RFX document (refer paragraph 16.6 above), and the relevant AC. The cancellation must be advertised in the same media where the initial advert was placed. If the cancellation and reissue happen simultaneously, they may be advertised together where the re-issue makes reference to the cancellation. In such instances it will not be necessary to obtain AC approval for a non-award as this will delay the matter unnecessarily at this critical stage. However, full details of this 'intervention' must be disclosed to the AC when the final award of business recommendation is made. Also refer to paragraph 17.1.8(c) in this regard.

17.4.2 Extension of validity periods

If a bid cannot be evaluated and awarded within the stated validity period, a motivated request for an extension of the validity period should be made to the appropriate AC to request an extension of the validity period. This request should explain the reasons for the delay, and include the revised timeline for the completion of the bidding process.

NB: Validity periods must be extended BEFORE expiry. Bids in respect of which the validity periods have already expired cannot be revived. In such instances the process must be started afresh after having obtained the necessary AC approval for the non-award of the expired RFP.

If an avoidable delay occurs with adjudication, Bidders must be requested to extend the validity period of their Bids on the same terms and conditions before the expiry of the validity period. In such instances, Bidders will not be allowed to change any aspect of their Bid, unless they are able to demonstrate that the proposed change/s is as a direct and unavoidable consequence of the extension of the validity period e.g. price changes due to changes in the market which have impacted major cost components of their price. If a need arises to extend the validity period of the bid, this must be done BEFORE the validity date expires since a bid process automatically terminates on the validity date unless timeously extended.

17.4.3 Communication after the closing date

- a) After the closing date of a bid (i.e. during the evaluation period) a Bidder may only communicate with the chairperson and the secretary of the relevant AC.
- b) No communication relating to the specific bid is allowed between a Bidder (or any other party who has an interest in a bid), and any employee of Transnet after the closing date and before award, except as provided for in paragraph 17.4.3 (c) below. Every case of unauthorised communication must immediately

be reported to the Chairperson of the AC. The Bidder that is associated with an unauthorised communication may be disqualified from the process.

- c) It is accepted that in certain cases Bidders might have existing contracts with Transnet, where communication regarding the existing contract is unavoidable. However, any communication during the evaluation period of another bid, should be limited where at all possible, and under no circumstances should socialising, e.g. golf days, product launches, lunch/dinner invitations, sporting events, etc., be entertained during this period. Even if no discussion about the bid being evaluated is entertained during such social events, other competing Bidders may form a perception of bias and it may lead to claims of an unfair bidding process.
- d) The chairperson, the secretary of the AC, or the Manager with the delegated power, may subject to the provisions of paragraphs 17.4.3e), f) and g) below, authorise an employee in writing (including by fax or email) to communicate with a Bidder after the closing date for the purpose of:
 - (i) Explaining and verifying declarations made in Bid response;
 - (ii) Confirming that a quoted price is correct, or requesting a breakdown of the pricing without altering the price;
 - (iii) Confirming technical particulars and the compliance thereof with specifications;
 - (iv) Determining whether there will be any change in price if only a portion of the work is awarded to a Bidder;
 - (v) Requesting an explanation for an unreasonable price increase when it is compared with a previous price and the interim movement of a relevant price index;
 - (vi) Clarifying delivery times, quantities, etc;
 - (vii) Amending any bid condition, validity period, specification, etc. after the closing date;
 - (viii) Clarifying any other commercial aspect;
 - (ix) Carrying out site inspections of the bidder's premises; and
 - (x) Requesting presentations by all Bidders. If only certain shortlisted Bidders are invited for presentations, the relevant AC's prior approval of the shortlist must be obtained.
 - (xi) Requesting returnable documents erroneously omitted from the original Bid.
- e) During communication after the closing date, no change in a matter of substance of the Bid, including changes in price, terms or changes aimed at making an unresponsive Bid responsive must be sought, offered or permitted. Also note that the abovementioned communication issues covered in paragraph 17.4.3 (d) do not include post-tender negotiation. This topic is covered in Chapter 19 (Post Tender Negotiation) below.

FOR INTERNAL USE ONLY

PROCUREMENT PROCEDURES MANUAL

- f) Where the bid is managed by a Specialist Unit with a specific strategic focus on behalf of the user OD, the Specialist Unit shall coordinate all communication of a technical, financial or commercial nature between Transnet and the Bidder.
- g) In all cases where authority to communicate with Bidders has been granted in terms of paragraph 17.4.3(d) above, the submission to the AC must clearly state the nature of the communication as well as who granted the authority to communicate and the outcome thereof. Documentary evidence of all authorisations to communicate, the actual communication as well as the outcome thereof (bidder's response) are to be kept on the appropriate files as part of the record.

Background and Context

Procurement planning

Go to Market

SECTION D: EVALUATION AND ADJUDICATION

Chapter 18: Evaluation and Recommendation

- Summary of bid evaluation process
- Test for administrative responsiveness
- Preparation for evaluation
- Substantive test for responsiveness
- Evaluation of bid against pre-determined criteria
- Final evaluation
- Recommendation

Chapter 19: Post Tender Negotiations (PTN)

- Purpose of PTN
- Authority to engage in PTN
- PTN process
- Approval to award business after PTN

Chapter 20: Adjudication

- General principles of adjudication
- The role of the AC during adjudication
- Risk evaluation
- Splitting of business
- Disagreement regarding award
- Non-award / cancellation of bids

Contract Management

Functions of Governance Structures

Appendices

CHAPTER 18 : EVALUATION AND RECOMMENDATION

SUMMARY OF BID EVALUATION

It is the responsibility of the evaluation committee to ensure that the evaluation takes place within the validity period. If there are delays, the validity date(s) of the bids should be extended, using the process described in Chapter 17 (*Bid Administration*).

The following are the key steps to be followed during the evaluation of bids.

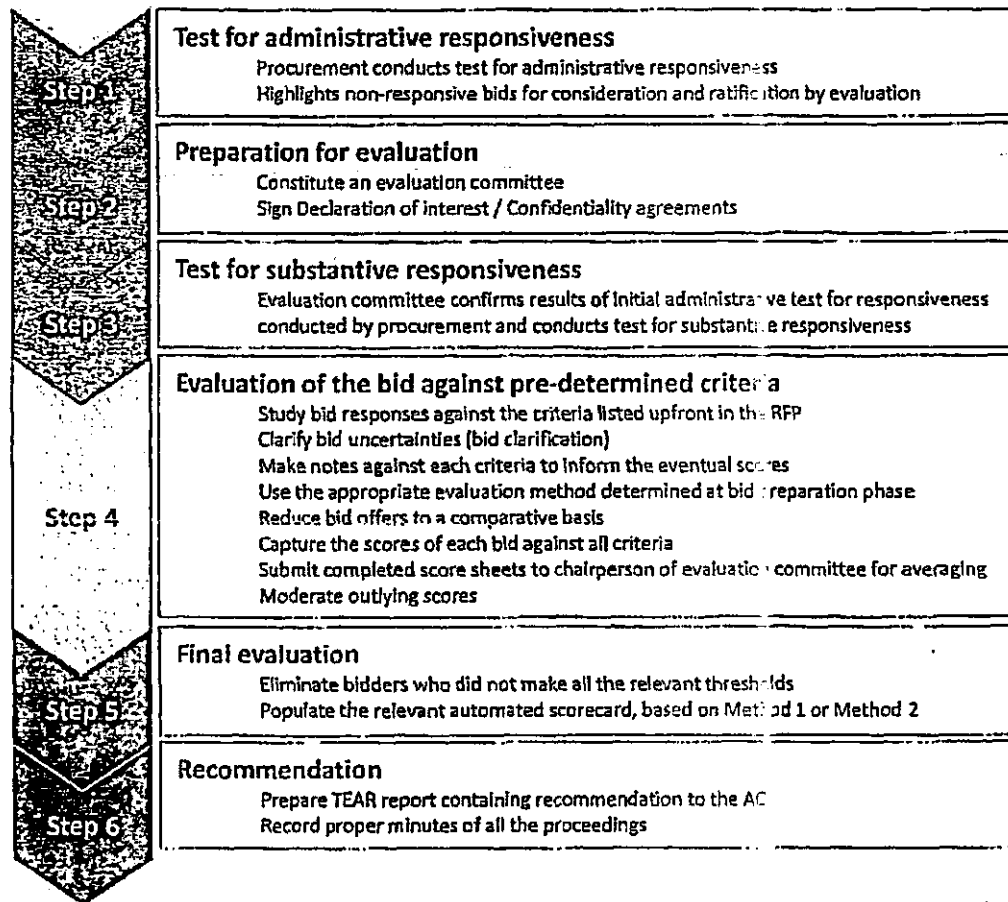
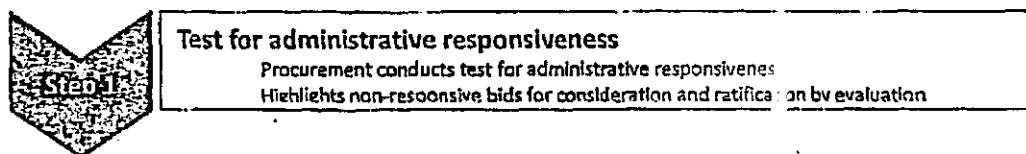


Figure [29] – 6 Steps for Bid Evaluation



18.1 TEST FOR ADMINISTRATIVE RESPONSIVENESS

18.1.1 Test for Responsiveness based on returnable documents submitted and signatures on the Bid documents:

- a) Check the Bid document to see whether all returnable documents called for in the bid documents and which are required for evaluation purposes and/or incorporation into the contract have been received.
- b) The RFP must clearly identify those material returnable documents which must be submitted upfront with the bid submission. If any such mandatory returnable documents are not provided upfront, the bid must be regarded as non-responsive e.g. tax clearance certificate, etc.
- c) Certain other returnable documents, although essential, may not result in automatic elimination if not provided upfront. In such instances, a reasonable grace period (about 5 Working Days) may be afforded to the Bidders to supply the required documents. If the Bidder does not provide the document(s) by the end of the grace period, the Bid(s) must be regarded as non-responsive.
- d) A third category of returnable documents are those that are required from an administrative perspective but which are not material or essential to the bid e.g. a completed Vendor Application Form. The failure to submit such documents for the purpose of evaluating and awarding the business will not result in the bid being regarded as non-responsive, but could be requested at a later stage.
- e) If a Bidder had omitted to sign certain pages of the Bid documentation, he/she may be requested to do so within a reasonable period of time (about 5 Working Days). If the signature is not provided within the timeframe provided, the Bid must be regarded as non-responsive.

18.1.2 A schedule must be drawn by Procurement to indicate whether the Bids received are administratively responsive or not, and the efforts expended to obtain any outstanding information (see example in Figure [30] below):

Returnable Document Comparative Schedule (add fields for all returnable documents)									
RFP Number									
Bidder	Correctly Recorded By AC Secretary	Tax Clearance Certificate	VAT Registration Certificate	PSIRA Certificate	Date date for responses received after due period	Date received by due date	Returnable documents outstanding after due date	Bid responsive	Remarks
A	Yes / No	Yes / No	Yes / No	Yes / No	Date	Yes / No	Indicate outstanding documents	Yes / No	
B	Yes / No	Yes / No	Yes / No	Yes / No	Date	Yes / No	Indicate outstanding documents	Yes / No	
C	Yes / No	Yes / No	Yes / No	Yes / No	Date	Yes / No	Indicate outstanding documents	Yes / No	
D	Yes / No	Yes / No	Yes / No	Yes / No	Date	Yes / No	Indicate outstanding documents	Yes / No	
E	Yes / No	Yes / No	Yes / No	Yes / No	Date	Yes / No	Indicate outstanding documents	Yes / No	

Figure [30] – Schedule to record Bid compliance



Preparation for evaluation

- Constitute an evaluation committee
- Sign Declaration of Interest / Confidentiality agreements

18.2 PREPARATION FOR EVALUATION

18.2.1 Composition of Evaluation Committee / Panel

The composition of the evaluation committee would vary depending on the nature of the particular goods/services being procured. As a guide, evaluation committees should be determined as follows:

a) Low complexity evaluations

There are very limited criteria for consideration due to the absence of complexity. Typically, criteria can be assessed through a 'yes' or 'no' question. There must be at least two members on the committee - one from the procurement department and the other from the user department.

b) Complex evaluations

Where a number of criteria are evaluated on a weighted point system method, the evaluation committee should be cross-functional and should be composed of procurement personnel and officials from the department/s requiring the goods/services.

There must be at least three members, one of which must be a subject matter expert. When it is deemed necessary, independent experts may also be invited to a bid evaluation committee in an advisory capacity.

It is recommended that the people who serve on the CFST do not also serve on the bid evaluation committee. Only if separation of duties is not possible due to a lack of resources/expertise, may the CFST and the evaluation committee be allowed to have the same membership. If the same people served on both the CFST and evaluation committee, this must be recorded in the minutes, and be disclosed to the relevant AC.

c) Highly complex evaluations

A properly appointed multi-disciplinary evaluation team must be utilized. The evaluation committee may comprise sub-committees. Each sub-committee must be composed of at least 3 or more specialists in that field of expertise. A sub-committee will evaluate Bids only in the field that they are tasked with, e.g. Quality, commercial, SD, preference, etc.

(For bids falling within the threshold for High Value Tenders also refer to the High Value Tender Process available on ISCM Transnet Intranet).

18.2.2 Declaration of Interest / Confidentiality

a) Prior to commencing with the evaluation all members of the evaluation panel must sign a Declaration of Interest form, indicating whether or not they have an interest in the particular bid or any of the Bidders. Also refer to the Code of Ethics (paragraph 5.5 above) for further information on Declaration of Interest.

b) Information relating to the evaluation of Bids shall not be disclosed to suppliers or to any other person not officially involved in the evaluation or adjudication process. A confidentiality agreement must therefore be signed by all members at the start of every meeting of the evaluation committee.

18.2.3 Setting the ground rules for evaluation and rules of conduct

At the onset of the Initial meeting, the Chairperson of the committee must indicate to the members that the following scoring methodology is to be used:

- a) Confirm whether Method 1 or 2 will be followed as well as the weighting per category and thresholds as set out in the RFP (See Chapter 13 – Determining Evaluation Criteria).
- b) Confirm whether scoring will be done in terms of a desktop evaluation only, or whether it will also include site visits, presentations and/or interviews. This should be indicated in the RFP;
- c) Validate scorecard, including the prompts for judgment;
- d) Members of the evaluation committee must score each Bid individually, i.e. each member must score every Bid without consulting any other members;
- e) Thereafter, the raw scores given by each evaluator in respect of every criterion and sub criterion are populated onto a comparative score sheet;
- f) The Chairperson of the evaluation committee identifies any numerical outliers (if any) and follows a process of moderation;
- g) After moderation, the scores given by each of the evaluators in respect of each Bidder are averaged and allocated per Bidder;
- h) The weightings for each criterion and sub criterion are then allocated against the average score for each Bidder, to determine the final weighted score per Bidder.

18.2.4 Rules of Conduct

- a) Consistency throughout the whole bid evaluation process is essential. All members of the evaluation team must evaluate all the bid responses. This also entails having a kick-off meeting where the entire evaluation team is present and all aspects of the evaluation process is agreed upon to ensure that everyone is aligned.
- b) Although it would be ideal, the evaluation of all bids need not necessarily be completed at one sitting of the CFET.
- c) It is important that all members are present at the moderation session, be it in person or via teleconference. All members must sign off on all the relevant score sheets, including the final automated scorecard (previously known as the B-BBEE scorecard)
- d) Minutes must be kept of all decisions and important deliberations taken at each meeting of the evaluation team.
- e) Document security must be maintained at all times.

18.2.5 Evaluation criteria

Bids may only be evaluated in accordance with the criteria specified in the bid documentation (such as specific returnable documents, pricing, quality, commercial, SD, preference, financial stability, etc.).

- a) In cases where an evaluation criterion was unclear and it resulted in divergent and incomparable responses being received from the Bidders, the criterion should be clarified and sent to all Bidders. They will then be required to resubmit Bids only in respect of such amended criterion/criteria.
- b) In cases where a critical factor was not included in the evaluation criteria, an addendum to the RFP should be issued and sent to all Bidders to provide information pertaining to the additional criteria. The CPD must approve the inclusion of the additional criteria as well as the amendment to the RFP.
- c) However, if the required clarity in respect of a) above or the introduction of new criteria in respect of b) above, introduces a substantive change to the RFP then, in the interest of fairness, an amended RFP should be issued by issuing a new tender to the market.



Test for substantive responsiveness

Evaluation committee confirms results of initial administrative test for responsiveness conducted by procurement and conducts test for substantive responsiveness

18.3 TEST FOR SUBSTANTIVE RESPONSIVENESS

The evaluation committee is required to confirm the result of the administrative test for responsiveness undertaken by Procurement.

A Bid is substantively responsive if it conforms to all the terms, conditions, scope and/or specifications of the bid documents without material deviation or qualification. A Bid is regarded as substantively responsive even if it contains minor deviations that do not materially alter or depart from the characteristics, terms, conditions and other requirements set forth in the bid documents. Any such deviations must be quantified as far as possible. These deviations must be considered during the evaluation and comparison of Bids.

Before evaluating the Bids, members of the evaluation team are required to:

- 18.3.1 Verify the names of the entities appearing on the bid documents against the correspondence (copy of the bid register) received from the AC Secretariat (i.e. check that only those Bids received through the Secretariat, are being considered);
- 18.3.2 Check that all the pages of the respective Bids had been date-stamped by the Secretariat;
- 18.3.3 Check that each Bid reflects a consecutive stamped number, consistent with the Secretariat's correspondence. (This normally forms part of the Secretariat's bid date stamp).
- 18.3.4 Check that all pages of the bidder's covering letter (if any) and all pages containing pricing, delivery and any other conditions, which may have a direct influence on the evaluation process, have also been Initialled by the Secretariat;
- 18.3.5 Check that the last (highest numbered) Bid also reflects the stamp "and last" (or "and only", in respect of instances where only one Bid was received) on all its pages; and
- 18.3.6 Any deviation from the above must be brought to the attention of the AC Secretary. A memo explaining such deviation must be compiled by the Secretary

and submitted to the evaluation team. Copies of this memo shall be kept on the Secretary's file as well as the evaluation file. The memo shall also be included in the AC agenda pack. The evaluation committee shall express an opinion on such deviation in their final report to the AC.

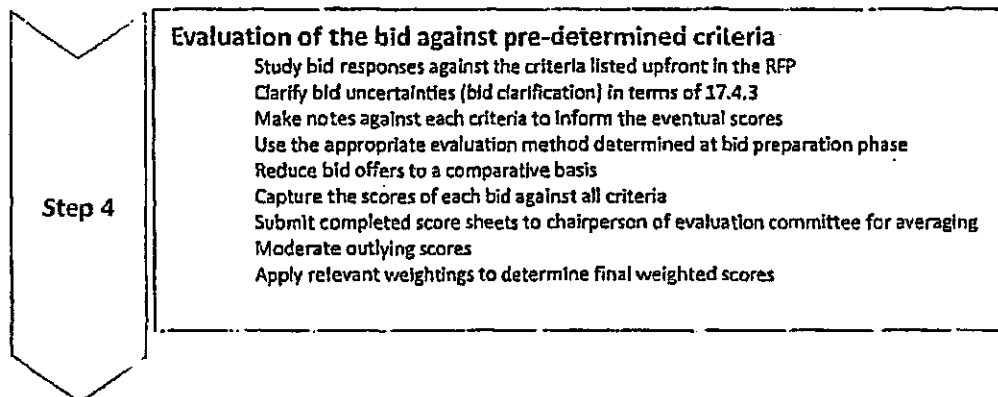
18.3.7 Confirm the results of the initial test for administrative responsiveness conducted by Procurement.

18.3.8 Reject Bids that do not pass the test for substantive responsiveness.

A Bid is considered substantively non responsive if it:

- (i) does not contain pricing or response to any other crucial aspect stated in the RFP document;
- (ii) does not meet minimum pre-qualification criteria;
- (iii) materially departs from the scope, or specification of the Goods/Services requested; and
- (iv) would affect the competitive position of other Bidders presenting responsive Bids, if it were to be rectified.

Non-responsive Bids must be rejected and Bidders shall not be allowed to modify their Bids once they have been rejected as non-responsive. Exclusion of a Bid as non-responsive must be defensible based upon objective and justifiable grounds.



18.4 EVALUATE THE BID AGAINST PRE-DETERMINED CRITERIA

Evaluate the Bid against pre-determined criteria using comparative schedules or score-sheets as follows:

18.4.1 Ensure that the evaluation process is strictly aligned with the evaluation methodology outlined in the bid documents, i.e. either Method 1 or Method 2 (see Chapter 13 – Determining Evaluation Criteria). If certain Bidders have not met the thresholds for Phase 1, no further scoring in respect of those Bidders takes place in Phase 2.

a) Local Content

If the transaction falls within one of the designated sectors as determined by DTI, and it was stated as such in the RFX document, Local Content/manufacture (LC)

will always be evaluated as a first step, to determine whether such Bid complies with the stipulated minimum threshold for that particular designated sector. Bidders that do not meet the stipulated minimum threshold for LC do not progress any further and are rejected at this stage. This applies irrespective of whether Method 1 or 2 is utilised. The threshold as determined by the DTI is not negotiable and bidders who do not meet the minimum set thresholds will be disqualified and will not be evaluated any further.

b) Supplier Development/ Quality (functionality) and Preference

(i) Evaluating each Bid individually

Each member of the evaluation committee is required to study Bid responses and record observations. The evaluator must first get an overall view of each Bid. This is done by studying each Bid individually, and then comparing it to the evaluation criteria.

The prompts that were provided for judgment or qualitative indicators relating to all SD criteria and any sub-criteria that are linked to a specific score should be used in assessing the Bids.

The evaluation of Bids shall be based on the information contained in Bid submissions, and where relevant from interviews, presentations and site visits. **Bids should not be evaluated on the basis of speculation or the personal knowledge or subjective experience which an evaluator has of any particular Bidder.**

The evaluator must record observations on the bidder's response to each specific evaluation criterion on the score sheet. References to page numbers should be added where applicable.

At this stage, no scoring is done.

Score-sheet 1 (Figure [31] below is used for such observations and is available on the Transnet Intranet).

Sheet 1		Working scoresheet					
RFP Number		(Insert RFP Number)					
Name of evaluation committee member		(Insert name of evaluation committee member)					
CRITERIA (Supplier Development)		BIDDER NO.1		BIDDER NO.2		BIDDER NO.2	
		Score	COMMENTS	Score	COMMENTS	Score	COMMENTS
Value of investment in plant	Do not complete score at this stage		Evaluate entire bid before progressing to next bid.		Evaluate entire bid before progressing to next bid.		Evaluate entire bid before progressing to next bid.
Reduction in import leakage							
Potential increase in export content							
Number company employees to be trained							
Number of downstream supply chain individuals to be trained							
Certified training							
Rand value on training to be spent in the industry							
% of planned procurement from QSEs							

Figure [31] – Score-sheet 1

(ii) Scoring

The next step is to allocate scores on Score-sheet 1 above. This is done by scoring one evaluation criterion at a time for all Bidders. E.g. compare and score the responses to 'Value of Investment in plant' for all Bidders before moving on to the next criterion.

FOR INTERNAL USE ONLY

PROCUREMENT PROCEDURES MANUAL

All scores must preferably be out of 10 (i.e. the 1 to 10 scale, although a 1 to 5 scale can also be used if specific objective measuring criteria has been set).

Finally, each member's individual scores in respect of each bidder must be carried over from Sheet 1 and inserted on score sheet 2 – see below.

Sheet 2	Final member scoresheet			
RFP Number	(Insert RFP Number)			
Name of evaluation committee member	(Insert name of evaluation committee member)			
CRITERIA (Supplier Development)	BIDDER NO. 1	BIDDER NO. 2	BIDDER NO. 3	BIDDER NO. 4
	Score	Score	Score	Score
Value of investment in plant	5	7	5	7
Reduction in import leakage	4	6	5	6
Potential increase in export content	5	6	4	6
Number company employees to be trained	5	8	5	8
Number of downstream supply chain individuals to be trained	4	5	4	7
Certified training	5	6	3	8
Rand value on training to be spent in the industry	4	7	5	7
% of planned procurement from QSEs	5	6	4	6
Total	37	51	35	55

Figure [32] – Score-sheet 2.

(iii) Moderating scores

The Chairperson of the evaluation committee transcribes all the individual members' scores from the respective score sheets (Sheet 2) onto the consolidated score-sheet (Score-sheet 3, see example (Figure [33]) below. These scores should be regarded as provisional and subject to moderation.

In the event of significant variances in individual scores, the scores must be moderated at the discretion of the Chairperson of the evaluation committee. An outlying score/s should as a general guideline be determined where there is a point differential of more than 4 points on the 10 point scale as compared to the other scores. The outlying scorer (Nivan, in the example of Sheet 3 below) must be asked to motivate his/her score(s). If the score can be rationally explained, the score can remain unchanged. Other scorers should be afforded the opportunity to reconsider their scores, in light of the explanation provided by the outlier. If the outlier cannot rationally explain his/her score, he/she must be asked to reconsider the score. If the outlier refuses to reconsider the score, the chairperson of the evaluation committee may approach the AC Chairperson for a ruling on whether the outlier should be replaced with a different scorer or not.

The process followed with moderation of scores must be recorded in the minutes of the evaluation committee. Any changes to a score sheet due to the moderation must be countersigned by both the scorer and the Chairperson. This should also be cross-referenced with the relevant minute/resolution.

(iv) Weighting scores

The following provides an explanation on how weighted scores are arrived at. However, there is an automated score sheet available on the ISCM Transnet

Intranet, where the weighted scores are automatically calculated based on the raw scores.

Step 1

The Chairperson calculates the average scores per criterion per Bidder (after moderation). This is done by dividing the sum by the number of evaluators to arrive at an average score for each particular criterion per Bidder.

Sheet 3 RFP Number		Combined score sheet (Insert RFP Number)									
		Bidder No. 1					Bidder No. 2				
CRITERIA (Supplier Development)		Evaluation Member Scores					Evaluation Member Scores				
		Nomhle	Thulani	Bil	Nkomo	Average	Nomhle	Thulani	Bil	Nkomo	Average
Value of investment in plant		4	5	3	8	5	6	7	7	1	5.25
Reduction in import leakage		3	4	4	8	4.75	5	6	5	1	4.25
Potential increase in export content		4	5	3	9	5.25	5	6	6	2	4.75
Number company employees to be trained		4	5	4	8	5.25	5	8	5	4	5.5
Number of downstream supply chain individuals to be trained		5	4	5	7	5.25	6	5	7	3	5.25
Certified training		4	5	4	8	5.25	5	6	6	2	4.75
Rand value on training to be spent in the industry		3	4	4	7	4.5	5	7	6	2	5
% of planned procurement from QSEs		4	5	3	8	5	6	6	5	1	4.5
Total		31	37	30	63	40.25	43	51	47	16	39.25

Figure [33] – Score-sheet 3

Step 2

The Chairperson must now calculate the weighted scores against each criterion to determine the total weighted score against each Bidder. (See example in Score-sheet 4 - Figure [34] below)

For example, a score of 8 out of 10 for a particular criterion that has a weighting of 20 will be calculated as follows:

$$\frac{8}{10} \times 20 = 16$$

Sheet 4 RFP Number		Final weighted scoresheet (Insert RFP Number)								
CRITERIA (Supplier Development)		Weighted maximum	Bidder Number							
			No. 1		No. 2		No. 3		No. 4	
			Score	Weighted	Score	Weighted	Score	Weighted	Score	Weighted
Value of Investment in plant		20	5	10	7.5	15	4	8	7	14
Reduction in import leakage		10	4.75	4.75	6	6	5	5	6	6
Potential increase in export content		10	5.25	5.25	6	6	4.5	4.5	6	6
Number company employees to be trained		20	5.25	10.5	8	16	5.5	11	8	16
Number of downstream supply chain individuals to be trained		10	5.25	5.25	5	5	4	4	7	7
Certified training		5	5.25	2.625	6	3	3	1.5	8	4
Rand value on training to be spent in the industry		10	4.5	4.5	7	7	5	5	7	7
% of planned procurement from QSEs		15	5	7.5	5	7.5	4.5	6.75	6	9
Total		100	40.25	50.375	50.5	65.5	35.5	45.75	55	68

Figure [34] – Score-sheet 4

The total weighted score above represents the ranking of each Bidder in respect of SD.

Note: The score for preference (B-BBEE scorecard only), together with the score for SD determines the SD Threshold. See example below, which indicates how the SD score and the B-BBEE score according to recognition level added together are used to determine the consolidated SD/preference score for threshold purposes assuming a 60% threshold.

Bidder	SD (50)	Scorecard (50)	TOTAL (100)
Bidder No. 1	35	40	75
Bidder No. 2	41.5	50	91.5
Bidder No. 3	43.25	35	78.25
Bidder No. 4	45	45	90
Bidder No. 5	25	5	30

(Non-responsive - minimum threshold not met)

Figure [35] – Consolidated scorecard for SD /B-BBEE

18.4.2 Quality / functionality offer

For the purpose of evaluation, Quality is considered to comprise all the criteria set out in the RFP, except price (or TCO), SD and preference (B-BBEE and/or FRC).

As with the evaluation of the SD offer, the Quality/Functionality proposal must be evaluated against the criteria as stipulated in the RFP. Repeat the process as stipulated in paragraph b), utilising the Quality/Functionality criteria and component weightings.

18.4.3 Preference

Preference is scored according to the B-BBEE scorecard only and the FRC criteria (Current and Future) will only be used in the final evaluation stage.



Final evaluation

Eliminate bidders who did not make both the thresholds

Populate the relevant automated scorecard, based on Method 1 or Method 2

18.5 FINAL EVALUATION

One of two methods of evaluation may be used depending on what was stated in the RFX document (Refer to paragraph 13.1).

18.5.1 Applying the criteria in Method 1

a) Method 1: Phase 1 (Refer paragraph 13.1.1 above)

All Bids which have failed to achieve the minimum qualifying threshold for LC (where applicable), SD/Preference or Quality must be rejected. All Bids which exceed the minimum qualifying threshold for quality are regarded as 'equally technically compliant' irrespective of the margin by which they exceed the threshold.

All Bids that have achieved or exceeded the minimum qualification thresholds for firstly, LC (if applicable), SD/Preference and Quality/Functionality proceed to Phase 2. They must now be evaluated further in terms preference and SD for a second time, as well as Price.

b) Method 1: Phase 2 (Refer paragraph 13.1.1 above)

Only the Bidders who had met the predetermined thresholds for firstly LC (if applicable) and both SD/Preference and Quality progress to this stage.

(i) Score for SD

With regard to the evaluation of SD in this phase, no new evaluation takes place. The points awarded to Bidders in Phase 1 for SD are simply weighted and added to the weighted scores for preference and FRC both Current and Future strictly in terms of the criteria as stipulated in the RFP document.

(ii) Score for Price

Before conducting a mathematical evaluation of price, a cognitive evaluation will be conducted in order to determine the reasonableness of the price quoted. All bidders will be required to provide supporting documentation motivating their price e.g. complete a checklist indicating which aspects of their bids have been quoted for. Such a checklist will be included as a returnable document in Transnet tenders and will allow Transnet to conduct a comparative analysis in terms of pricing. Bidders who fail to quote on all Transnet mandatory requirements will be declared non responsive.

Next, select and utilise the automated scorecard for Method 1.

The following formula has been built into the automated score sheet to calculate the score for price:

$$Ps = \frac{Pbm}{Pt} \times W1$$

Where: Ps = Score for Bid under consideration
 Pt = Comparative price of Bid under consideration
 Pbm = Benchmarked price calculated using average price of bids received less 10%
 W1 = The percentage score given to price

Bidders with a price lower than the benchmark will be given an automatic score of the full points allocated to price.

The method to calculate the benchmark against which all prices are evaluated may be adjusted on motivation to and approval by the GCE.

A bidder's score for price must be added to the consolidated score for SD, BBBEE and FRC. The Bid with the highest score must be selected unless there are objective criteria other than the evaluation criteria that justify the award to another Bidder. This discretion must be exercised sparingly. Examples which would justify the award to a bidder other than the highest ranked bidder includes instances where the highest ranked bidder has just been fined a huge amount by the Competition Commission which impacts on its ability to deliver on the contract; or notice has just been received from ISCM Governance that the company has been placed on Transnet's List of Excluded Bidders.

All Bids that have achieved or exceeded the minimum qualification thresholds for firstly, LC (if applicable), SD/Preference and Quality/Functionality proceed to Phase 2. They must now be evaluated further in terms preference and SD for a second time, as well as Price.

b) Method 1: Phase 2 (Refer paragraph 13.1.1 above)

Only the Bidders who had met the predetermined thresholds for firstly LC (if applicable) and both SD/Preference and Quality progress to this stage.

(i) Score for SD

With regard to the evaluation of SD in this phase, no new evaluation takes place. The points awarded to Bidders in Phase 1 for SD are simply weighted and added to the weighted scores for preference and FRC both Current and Future strictly in terms of the criteria as stipulated in the RFP document.

(ii) Score for Price

Before conducting a mathematical evaluation of price, a cognitive evaluation will be conducted in order to determine the reasonableness of the price quoted. All bidders will be required to provide supporting documentation motivating their price e.g. complete a checklist indicating which aspects of their bids have been quoted for. Such a checklist will be included as a returnable document in Transnet tenders and will allow Transnet to conduct a comparative analysis in terms of pricing. Bidders who fail to quote on all Transnet mandatory requirements will be declared non responsive.

Next, select and utilise the automated scorecard for Method 1.

The following formula has been built into the automated score sheet to calculate the score for price:

$$Ps = \frac{Pbm}{Pt} \times W1$$

Where: Ps = Score for Bid under consideration
 Pt = Comparative price of Bid under consideration
 Pbm = Benchmarked price calculated using average price of bids received less 10%
 W1 = The percentage score given to price

Bidders with a price lower than the benchmark will be given an automatic score of the full points allocated to price.

The method to calculate the benchmark against which all prices are evaluated may be adjusted on motivation to and approval by the GCE.

A bidder's score for price must be added to the consolidated score for SD, BBBEE and FRC. The Bid with the highest score must be selected unless there are objective criteria other than the evaluation criteria that justify the award to another Bidder. This discretion must be exercised sparingly. Examples which would justify the award to a bidder other than the highest ranked bidder includes instances where the highest ranked bidder has just been fined a huge amount by the Competition Commission which impacts on its ability to deliver on the contract; or notice has just been received from ISCM Governance that the company has been placed on Transnet's List of Excluded Bidders.

Where two or more Bids have scored the highest equal points based on Price and SD/Preference, the Successful Bid must be the one with the highest score on preference.

Pricing Offer

All Bid pricing offers must be reduced to a common base in a comparative schedule in order to facilitate a fair comparative analysis. In order to facilitate a fair comparison between Bids, it is necessary to distinguish between the bid price and comparative price as the Bid price may not include certain factors impacting on cost. As stated in chapter 16 above on Bid Preparation, it is necessary to provide all Bidders with a uniform pricing schedule to ensure all Bidders include not only the base price, but all other factors that may influence total cost of ownership (TCO). If a comprehensive pricing schedule is provided by all Bidders, it will ensure that prices received are already on a common basis. Failing this, Bidders must be asked to re-submit prices in accordance with a clear pricing schedule; alternatively, prices must be reduced to a comparative schedule as follows:

- Whether the cost of transport has been factored into the Bid price.
- Incoterms-related costs, i.e. all other transit-related costs in respect of Goods supplied from abroad, must be added to the Bid price. These include: inspection costs, freight and insurance (from the place where the Goods have been offered to the destination where it shall be delivered), landing charges, customs duties, import duties, wharfage, etc.
- Unconditional discounts must be subtracted from the Bid price, where applicable.
- Other considerations which affect a non-fixed Bid price such as price adjustment factors, currency, etc. that affect the prices over the full period or part of the contract period.
- Time value of money where cash flow implications differ, e.g. when upfront or staggered payments are required rather than a lump sum payment at the end of the contract.
- Differences in Quality which can be expressed in monetary value, e.g. if one bidder's brake blocks guarantees a 20% more useful lifespan than another bidder's.
- Any other incidental costs which may arise from the acceptance of an offer.

Any modification to the bidder's original Bid price due to the process of reaching comparative pricing must be validated with the Bidder him/herself.

Arithmetical errors, i.e. obvious arithmetical errors, must be pointed out to the Bidder (with permission from the AC Secretary) and corrected figures utilised for comparative purposes.

The comparative schedule should reflect the comparison of prices under the following headings (delete where not applicable):

Tendered prices

- Arithmetical corrections
- Comparative prices
- Projected prices
- TCO adjustments
- Total comparative price

(iii) Score for Preference

Preference is scored according to the B-BBEE scorecard and FRC Current and Future in the final evaluation stage.

EXAMPLE 1 (Automated score sheet in respect of Method 1)

BASIS FOR COMPARATIVE OFFER : METHOD 1: PRICE (40) SD (20) BBBEE (10) AND FRC (10)

Name of Tenderer: Ranked lowest to highest Price	Financial Offer (P)	Comparative Offer (Pm)	Points for Financial Offer (Max 60)	Points for SD (Max 20)	BBBEE Level of Contribution (Level 1 to 5)	BBBEE Point out of 10 (scorecard only)	Points for FRC (Max 10)	Total point out of 100	Overall Ranking Price, SD, Function- ality and BBBEE	% Premium payable	Premium payable in Rands
BIDDER E	NON-RESPONSIVE - Minimum threshold for SD and BBBEE not met										
BIDDER A	R 119,000,000	R 119,000,000	60.00	14.0	Level 3	8	7	89.00	2	0.00	R 0
BIDDER B	R 120,837,221	R 119,000,000	59.07	15.7	Level 1	10	5	90.74	1	1.54	R 1,837,221
BIDDER C	R 122,896,753	R 119,000,000	58.04	17.0	Level 4	7	6	88.34	3	3.27	R 3,896,753
BIDDER D	R 140,565,432	R 119,000,000	43.32	18.0	Level 2	9	7	83.82	4	16.46	R 21,565,432

	Price (P)	Scorecard (10)	TOTAL (30)
BIDDER A	14.0	8	22.0
BIDDER B	15.7	10	25.7
BIDDER C	17.0	7	24.0
BIDDER D	18.0	9	27.0
BIDDER E	10.0	4	14.0

(Non-responsive - minimum threshold not met)

MINIMUM THRESHOLD FOR SD and BBBEE is 15.14.56%

Figure [36]

From *Figure [36]* above, Bidder B becomes the Preferred Bidder as he has attained the highest score out of 100. The recommendation to the AC will therefore be in favour of B (and not Bidder D although D has the highest B-BBEE contribution level or Bidder A who is the cheapest).

18.5.2 Applying the criteria in Method 2

Phase 1 of Method 2 is exactly the same as Phase 1 of Method 1. The difference between the two methods is in Phase 2, where Quality/Functionality is added as a fourth evaluation criterion and given a weighting greater than price, SD and preference.

Select and utilise the automated scorecard for Method 2.

A bidder's score for price must be added to the consolidated score for SD, BBBEE and FRC.

Where two or more Bids have scored the highest equal points based on Price, Quality and SD/Preference, the Successful Bid must be the one with the highest score on quality, since quality carries the highest weighting.

Such criteria must be communicated in advance in the bid documents.

EXAMPLE 2 (Automated score sheet in respect of Method 2)

BASE FOR COMPARATIVE OFFER: METHOD 3: PRICE (40) TECHNICAL (40) SD (20) BBSEE (10) AND PRC (10)

Name of Tenderer: Ranked lowest to highest Price	Financial Offer (P)	Comparative Offer (Pm)	Points for Financial Offer (Max 40)	Points for Technical (Max 40)	Points for SD (Max 20)	BBSEE Level of Contribution (Level 1 to 5)	BBSEE Point out of 10 (scorecard only)	Points for PRC (Max 10)	Total point out of 100	Overall Ranking Price, Technical, SD, Functionality and BBSEE	% Premium payable	Premium payable in Rands
BIDDER E	NON-RESPONSIVE - Minimum threshold for SD and BBSEE not met											
BIDDER A	R 95,574,943	R 95,574,943	38.00	18.00	14.00	Level 3	8	7	67.00	4	0.00	R 0
BIDDER B	R 111,837,221	R 98,674,943	36.50	38.00	16.57	Level 1	10	5	78.57	2	17.02	R 18,382,274
BIDDER C	R 150,888,753	R 95,574,943	38.00	36.00	17.30	Level 4	2	6	74.72	3	57.88	R 55,221,810
BIDDER D	R 170,965,432	R 95,574,943	43.00	38.00	18.88	Level 2	9	7	78.82	1	78.88	R 76,390,489

	Technical (40)		SD (20)	Scorecard (10)	TOTAL
BIDDER A	48%	18	14.00	8	22.00
BIDDER B	71%	28.4	16.57	10	26.57
BIDDER C	90%	36	17.30	2	24.30
BIDDER D	95%	38	18.88	9	27.88
BIDDER E	50%	20	10	0	11.00

(Non-responsive - minimum threshold not met)

MINIMUM THRESHOLD FOR SD and BBSEE = 15%
& 30%



Recommendation

Prepare TEAR report containing recommendation to the AC
Record proper minutes of all the proceedings

18.6 RECOMMENDATION

18.6.1 Tender Evaluation and Recommendation Report (TEAR)

After a bid is evaluated a TEAR report should be completed by the Chairman of the evaluation committee setting out how all relevant evaluation criteria were measured and how Bidders were ranked as a result of the evaluation process. The motivation for the award of business must be supported by the evaluation score sheets as well as a copy of the automated scorecard. These documents must accompany the AC submission regarding the final award of business or the submission to short-list for post-tender negotiation.

The TEAR report must substantiate the results of the evaluation. This includes reasons why a Bidder was eliminated, for example, due to non-responsiveness or failure to meet any minimum technical qualifying criteria.

18.6.2 The recommendation to the AC

- A recommendation for the award of the business must be drafted for submission to the relevant AC. This must be accompanied by the evaluation report motivating how all the relevant selection criteria have been evaluated.

The evaluation panel may be called upon by the AC to clarify any uncertainties.

- b) When for whatever reason, it is considered in Transnet's best interest to award only a portion of the scope of requirements, Transnet should consider giving an opportunity to all participants in the bid process to re-bid on the amended scope by a new closing date and time. This is because a reduction in scope may impact on pricing / discounts offered by Bidders which in turn could affect their competitive position.

18.6.3 Reasons for recommendation

- a) The reasons for recommending a particular Bid(s) must be clearly stated by the recommending officers.
- b) When only one technically Acceptable Bid is received and recommended for acceptance, it shall be indicated whether the prices are fair and reasonable and how this has been determined (e.g. benchmarking against previous prices etc.).
- c) If a Bid other than the Bid with the overall highest score is selected, the recommending officer shall provide a full explanation for this decision, and state which objective criteria are relied upon to justify the recommendation of such Bid.
- d) In the event that two or more bids have scored equal total points, the successful bidder must be the one which scored the highest number of preference points for B-BBEE, except in the case of Method 2 where the equal scorer, with the highest score for quality will be the successful bidder.
- e) Should two or more bids be equal in all respects, the award shall be decided by the drawing of lots.

CHAPTER 19 : POST TENDER NEGOTIATION**19.1 POST TENDER NEGOTIATION (PTN)**

- 19.1.1 Post Tender Negotiation is an effective tool to drive down cost or extract further value for Transnet and can be used very effectively in conjunction with any procurement mechanism. PTN is used after the evaluation process has been completed and the Preferred Bidder/s have been identified and approved by the relevant AC, based on the criteria as set out in the RFX. PTN is normally reserved for high-value, strategic commodities, but it may also be used in lower value transactions where it is considered that further value for Transnet can be extracted from this process. Depending on the circumstances, this tool can be used either with all technically compliant Bidders, or a selected short-list, or even with the Preferred Bidder only, but subject to the following requirements to ensure good corporate governance.
- 19.1.2 In order to ensure that PTN is conducted in a fair manner, shortlisted Bidders should be negotiated with individually. The negotiation process should follow the same agenda for all Bidders. After negotiation the Bidders should submit their best-and-final offers, in the relevant tender box, by a specified closing date and time. After proper evaluation of all best-and-final Bids received, business is ultimately awarded to the highest rank Bidder, based on these offers.
- 19.1.3 PTN may only take place if the RFX document contained a clause stating that 'Transnet reserves the right to enter into post tender negotiations with a Preferred Bidder or any number of shortlisted bidders'.
- 19.1.4 Before PTNs are conducted with the Preferred Bidder or short-listed Bidders, it must be approved by the relevant AC. The R-value of the proposed contract to be negotiated will determine within which AC's jurisdiction the matter falls. (Refer to paragraph 19.3 below for instances where PTN is envisaged for transactions falling below the AC jurisdiction.) The submission requesting authority to negotiate should include the following:
- list of Preferred Bidders (or Bidder) and how the list has been determined including the threshold set for qualification for PTN;
 - the composition of the negotiating team;
 - the targeted price reduction;
 - the increase in SD commitment;
 - E3BEE commitment;
 - the motivation for PTN; and
 - other aspects that will be negotiated to achieve a "win-win" situation, e.g. payment terms, minimum order size and frequency, delivery, lead times, etc.

19.2 AUTHORITY TO ENGAGE IN PTN (transactions falling within AC jurisdiction)

- 19.2.1 Matters falling within the jurisdiction of the AC (i.e. above the minimum R-threshold of the AC), should be submitted for the approval of the AC in the normal manner, indicating in detail the process followed in determining the shortlist of Bidders to be negotiated with, details of the agenda that will be negotiated, etc. (refer to paragraph 19.4 below).
- a) Upon receiving AC approval, and completion of the PTN process, and the resultant evaluation and scoring of the best-and-final Bids, full details of the

best-and-final offers, must be provided when a recommendation on the final award of the business is made to the relevant AC

- b) On these higher value transactions, the negotiating team to be appointed by the relevant AC, shall comprise of procurement, SD, technical, financial and commercial (marketing) and legal disciplines, (where appropriate), to facilitate unity of purpose from Transnet's perspective and to enable the Bidder to deal with all relevant matters before making a final offer.

19.3 STANDING AUTHORITY TO PTN (transactions falling below AC jurisdiction)

19.3.1 It would also be acceptable, especially in respect of transactions falling below the AC minimum Rand thresholds, for certain officials (preferably in procurement), to be given specific standing Delegated Powers to conduct and/or authorise PTN, without the necessary prior AC approval as contemplated in paragraph 19.2 above.

- a) This authority must be obtained from the Manager or CPO and must be included in the Delegation of Authority of the relevant official. Copies of this should be filed with the AC Secretariat. The standing Delegation of Authority must clearly reflect the maximum transaction value for which the official may conduct or approve PTNs, without prior AC approval. Full details of all such PTN transactions undertaken, should be reported to the AC at regular intervals.
- b) A standing authority to negotiate is different from a standing authority to communicate (refer to paragraph 17.4.3) and separate PTN authority must be obtained. Standing Delegated Powers to negotiate will be granted with great circumspection and only to employees who have demonstrated the necessary negotiation skills.
- c) Detailed records must be kept in the relevant files of the Bidders who have been negotiated with, how their eligibility for PTN was determined, including their best-and-final offers received. Copies of such standing authority must also be kept on the relevant files. Standing authority to conduct/approve PTN should not exceed the minimum R-value thresholds of the AC. In such cases the process as outlined in paragraph 19.2 above detailing the AC's involvement in the various stages, must be followed.

19.4 PTN PROCESS

19.4.1 Under no circumstances may prices of one Bidder be disclosed to another with the request to improve on such price in order to be awarded the business. This is considered as 'horse-trading' and is considered an unfair business practice. Such misconduct will not be tolerated and will result in disciplinary action.

19.4.2 It is important that all members of the PTN team sign declarations of interest and non-disclosure or confidentiality agreements when appointed to such teams. These forms must be kept on the appropriate files as an audit trail.

19.4.3 Negotiations must be preceded by thorough research and a caucus discussion by the cross-functional negotiation team to be able to obtain a co-ordinated approach.

- a) To ensure fairness, the same agenda must be used with all short-listed Bidders to ensure that all Bidders are provided with the same information and the same opportunity to improve their Bid in all respects. The agenda must be made known in advance to all shortlisted Bidders so that they can prepare for the negotiations. The final evaluation criteria against which the best-and-final Bids

will be scored should also be disclosed to the shortlisted Bidders. Such criteria may only differ marginally from the original criteria as per the RFX document.

- b) The objectives of the negotiating team must be recorded in consultation with the relevant disciplines concerned (e.g. financial, SD, technical and commercial).
- c) The objectives should be approved by the relevant AC. The financial advantages, or other objectives sought (e.g. B-BBEE commitment, Enterprise Development Initiatives, faster delivery, etc.), must be quantified and no negotiation will be regarded as final until all the approved objectives have been properly negotiated by the negotiating team. After receipt and evaluation of the best-and-final offers, the results must be recorded against the envisaged objectives.
- d) Under no circumstances should a Preferred Bidder be informed that he has been awarded a contract prior to the PTN process, as that would jeopardise Transnet's negotiation power.
- e) Where PTNs are conducted with a duly approved short-list of Preferred Bidders, all such Bidders must be requested to deposit their "best-and-final offer" in the tender box by a set closing date.
- f) This method may also be employed in the single Preferred Bidder scenario, if there is reason to believe that this may yield a further price reduction, or extract further value for Transnet, subsequent to the negotiation session.
- g) Although PTN offers shortlisted Bidders the opportunity to improve upon their Bid in areas such as price, quantity, etc., care should be exercised to ensure that the final contract negotiated does not differ substantially from the terms and conditions of tender set out in the original RFP document.

19.5 APPROVAL TO AWARD BUSINESS AFTER PTN

- 19.5.1 Business may be awarded to one of the shortlisted Bidders or split between any number of shortlisted Bidders.
- 19.5.2 It is possible and permissible for the ranking of shortlisted Bidders to change from the first evaluation stage when the shortlist was determined, to the final ranking after PTN was conducted and the best-and-final Bids were evaluated, provided that PTN was conducted strictly in terms of the rules as stipulated above.
- 19.5.3 In instances where the relevant AC has authorised PTN with a shortlist of Preferred Bidders, the ultimate award of the business, whether awarded to one or more than one shortlisted contender (i.e. a split award) should again be presented to the relevant AC which approved the Preferred Bidder/short-list.
- 19.5.4 In instances where the relevant AC has authorised PTN with a single Preferred Bidder, the ultimate award of the business must also be presented to the relevant AC for approval to ensure that the final contract is substantially the same as the terms indicated in the RFP, unless the AC approved the preferred bidder and the subsequent award of the contract, upfront, due to operational requirements, (urgency etc), in which case the final negotiated terms, and contract value needs to be reported to the AC for information purposes only.

CHAPTER 20 : ADJUDICATION**20.1 GENERAL PRINCIPLES**

Adjudication can best be described as the validation of the process leading to the recommendation of the Successful or Preferred Bidder/s. It is important to note that there are two different elements to this and these are often confused.

20.1.1 The ACs do not have any contracting powers and as such do not actually conclude the contract in the name of Transnet. The AC validates the process of selecting the Successful / Preferred Bidder.

20.1.2 When an AC has approved a submission, it clearly does so subject to the provisos listed in paragraph 21.3.1, one of which is that the person with the necessary DoA has to sign the actual contract. Likewise, the person with the necessary DoA may not execute his DoA and sign the contract, without the relevant AC approval of the process.

20.2 THE ROLE OF THE AC DURING ADJUDICATION

The function of the AC is to validate both the process related aspects as well as the commercial aspects of the bid process. The AC is required to satisfy itself that all Bidders were treated fairly in the bidding process and that the process was conducted in accordance with the applicable regulatory framework and Transnet's Internal rules. The AC is also required to determine that the price to be paid by Transnet is market related, that the commercial terms and conditions are fair and reasonable and that the award of business is in the best interests of Transnet.

Factors to be considered during adjudication include whether:

20.2.1 the bid was advertised for a reasonable period of time and in the appropriate media;

20.2.2 all Bids are still valid i.e. still within the validity period;

20.2.3 communication with Bidders after the closing date was properly authorised and conducted in a fair manner;

20.2.4 Bidders were evaluated against the evaluation criteria stated in the RFP;

20.2.5 the scoring of Bidders was reasonable, rational and in accordance with the scoring methodology;

20.2.6 the recommended Bidder scored the highest points overall. If not, whether the recommendation to award the contract to another Bidder is based on other objective criteria

20.2.7 the recommended Bidder is not on the Transnet List of Excluded Bidders, the Treasury list of Bid Defaulters or the Treasury database of Restricted Suppliers;

20.2.8 the recommended Bidder has legal capacity to enter into a contract;

20.2.9 the contract is to be awarded to the same business enterprise as the one which submitted the Bid;

20.2.10 the recommended Bidder submitted a valid and original tax clearance, VAT certificate (where applicable) and whether the recommended Bidder complies fully with all legal requirements stated in the RFP;

20.2.11 the recommended Bidder is not insolvent, in receivership, bankrupt or being wound up, has his affairs administered by a court or judicial officer, has suspended his business activities or is subject to legal proceedings in respect of the foregoing;

20.2.12 the award of business to the recommended Bidder would not be harmful to Transnet's image. In this regard, it must be borne in mind that Transnet is a public company and its sole shareholder is the Government of the Republic of South Africa. For this reason, business transactions with entities that could harm Transnet's image should be avoided;

20.2.13 price and other commercial terms are market related; and

20.2.14 The award of business does not pose any other legal or material risks to Transnet that has not been mitigated.

20.3 RISK EVALUATION

Upon receiving a recommendation to award business to a particular Bidder, the AC may at its own discretion call for a risk evaluation on the Bidder if it is of the opinion that this was not considered at the evaluation stage. If on reasonable grounds it is determined that there is a material risk involved in awarding the business to that particular Bidder, the AC may, depending on the likelihood and consequence of the risk materialising recommend one of the following:

- not awarding to the Bidder;
- awarding part of the business to the Bidder; or
- splitting the business between the Bidder and another Bidder.

The concept of material risk must be interpreted restrictively and be limited to instances where Transnet would be severely prejudiced by the award of business to a particular Bidder.

20.4 SPLITTING OF BUSINESS

The AC should enquire whether the splitting of the award of business was considered during evaluation, as this is a feasible mechanism to promote the development of new entrants into the market. Transnet's standard bid conditions allow for the selection of multiple suppliers or the award of the whole, or any part of a Bid to any particular Bidder. Transnet may also choose not to make an award if there are valid grounds for doing so.

Bidders who qualify their Bids on the basis that the whole Bid should be accepted (in conflict with the bid conditions) must be advised that the restriction must be withdrawn before their Bid can be considered.

20.5 DISAGREEMENT REGARDING AWARD OF BUSINESS

20.5.1 Should a dispute arise between the recommending officer(s) and the AC regarding a submission after the AC has referred the matter back to the recommending officer for re-motivation, the matter must be escalated to the Entity's CEO for a final decision.

20.5.2 Where the recommendation of the evaluation team conflicts with the opinion of the end user, the matter must be referred to the AC for a ruling.

20.6 NON AWARD / CANCELLATION OF BIDS

20.6.1 Non award of business must be approved by the relevant AC. A motivation for non award may be considered by the AC at any stage of the process before the Successful Bidder is finally selected and informed about the bid award. Once a Successful Bidder has been selected and informed about the outcome of the bid

process (i.e. he/she was awarded the bid), Transnet is said to be *functus officio* and can no longer cancel the bid process without an order of court authorizing it to do so.

- 20.6.2 It should be noted that a Bidder can only be regarded as the Successful Bidder when he/she was unequivocally informed that the bid was awarded to him/her. An award that is made subject to further negotiation or qualification cannot be regarded as a final and unequivocal award. Thus the award of "Preferred Bidder status", subject to the successful negotiation and conclusion of a subsequent contract does not amount to being selected as the "Successful Bidder" as the award is conditional and subject to the outcome of the negotiation process.
- 20.6.3 Group legal / the OD Legal department should be consulted before a decision to cancel a bid is taken to advise on the legal risk associated with cancellation and also whether Bidders should be invited to make representations before a final decision can be taken.
- 20.6.4 The decision not to award business must as far as possible be taken timeously. Bidders must be advised of this decision as soon as possible after the decision has been approved.
- 20.6.5 Non-award of business (as a result of Transnet's bad planning) should for obvious reasons be minimised as far as possible as Bidders expend a significant amount of time, effort and money when preparing and lodging Bids. Non award has the effect of cancelling a bid and the AC must therefore act judiciously when authorising a non award so as to minimize prejudice to Bidders.
- 20.6.6 When no Bid can be recommended for acceptance, the Manager concerned shall provide a motivation to the AC clearly stating the reasons why no Bid can be recommended and give an indication as to how need for the required Goods/Services will now be met.
- 20.6.7 The AC may approve a non award under the following circumstances:
- a) Where due to changed circumstances there is no longer a need for the Goods or Services;
 - b) Where due to a fundamental change in specification, the bid has to be cancelled and re-advertised;
 - c) Funds are no longer available to cover the envisaged expenditure;
 - d) No Acceptable Bids were received;
 - e) When a material Irregularity has occurred in the bidding process which cannot be remedied, other than through cancellation; or
 - f) All bids received are well over budget and considered to be excessive.

When the AC authorises a non award on the grounds of a), b) or c) above, all Bidders should be reimbursed for the bid document fee, if bid documents were sold. Where a non-award is authorised on the basis of ground e) above, Bidders not involved in the material Irregularity should be reimbursed.

	Background and Context
	Procurement planning
	Go to Market
	Evaluation and Adjudication
SECTION E: CONTRACT MANAGEMENT	Chapter 21: Award of Business & Contracting Process
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Approval of acceptance of bids not to be anticipated • Decision to accept bids or offers • Notices of acceptance & non-acceptance • Applications received in terms of PAIA • Delivery of acceptance • Formal written contract (letter of award) • Contracting with the second ranked bidder • Approval of contracts for periods exceeding 2 years
	Chapter 22: Post Award Contract Management
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Post award functions • Service delivery management • Supplier relationship management • Contract administration • Indications of successful contract management
	Chapter 23: Blacklisting
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Definition of blacklisting • Grounds for blacklisting • Who may be blacklisted • Factors to consider before blacklisting • Appropriate blacklisting period • Representation • Blacklisting procedure • Appeal / Rescission
	Functions of Governance Structures
	Appendices

CHAPTER 21 : AWARD OF BUSINESS AND CONTRACTING PROCESS**21.2 APPROVAL OF ACCEPTANCE OF BIDS NOT TO BE ANTICIPATED**

No employee shall anticipate the approval of acceptance of bids. Therefore, no employee may enter into contracts verbally or in writing or place orders before the prescribed adjudication process has been performed and authority has been duly granted by a Manager with the appropriate DoA.

21.3 DECISION TO ACCEPT BIDS OR OFFERS

21.3.1 A Manager may only communicate the acceptance of a Bid i.e. issue a Letter of Award and proceed to conclude the contract if the following provisos have been adhered to:

- a) he/she has complied with all internal policies and procedures and obtained the AC's concurrence by means of an AC resolution or (if applicable) approved AC minutes;
- b) he/she has confirmed that there is still a need for the Goods/Service(s);
- c) he/she has confirmed that the appropriate funds are still available;
- d) the value of business awarded is within the level of his/her powers to contract in terms of his Delegation of Authority;
- e) where the value exceeds his/her powers, he/she shall obtain a mandate from higher authority to conclude and administer the contract; and
- f) where the value of business exceeds the relevant OD CEO's Delegated Powers to contract, the relevant higher authority (e.g. Transnet GCSCO, GCFO, GCE, BADC or Transnet Board) must conclude the contract. Alternatively, a mandate must be sought from the relevant higher authority in Group in favour of the OD CEO to conclude and administer the contract. The award can be to one or more specified contractors for a specific amount/s, but the cumulative value of the business (individual contracts) shall determine the approval authority required. As stipulated in the Transnet DoA Framework, it is advisable to obtain a written mandate from that Approval Authority (as defined) to administer the contract and to effect amendments to it not exceeding 10% of the initially approved contract value. Such mandate must be in writing and kept on the appropriate file for record purposes.

21.4 NOTICES OF ACCEPTANCE AND NON-ACCEPTANCE OF BIDS TO BE FINALISED

21.4.1 As soon as possible after approval to award a contract has been received, the OD which invited the Bids shall arrange to inform the Successful or Preferred Bidder(s) of the acceptance of his Bid. This notice may only be communicated by a person with the necessary DoA, or a person with a written mandate for a specific contract. Unsuccessful Bidders shall be advised in writing of the name of the Successful Bidder. On award of business to the Successful Bidder all unsuccessful Bidders must be informed of the reason as to why their Bids had been unsuccessful, e.g. price, delivery period, Quality, SD, preference or any other applicable reason. Please refer to the standard regret letter templates available on the ISCM Transnet Intranet. It is essential that the reasons for not accepting a Bid are factually correct, as the regret letter could form the basis for litigation against Transnet.

21.4.2 The details of the contract award must be placed on the Transnet internet site. These details must include:

- a) bid number and description;
- b) name(s) of the Successful Bidder(s) and preferences claimed;
- c) the contract price(s); and
- d) the duration of the contract.

21.5 APPLICATIONS RECEIVED IN TERMS OF PAIA

Should an application be received in terms of the Promotion of Access to Information Act (PAIA) or the Promotion of Administrative Justice Act (PAJA), the matter should be referred to either the OD Legal Department or Group Legal. It is important to note that all requests received in terms of PAIA or PAJA must be dealt with immediately, as there are deadlines within which to respond to the requestor.

21.6 DELIVERY OF ACCEPTANCE TO BIDDER

- 21.6.1 When a Bidder has been advised by letter of the acceptance of his Bid, the South African Post Office shall be regarded as the agent of the Bidder and delivery of such notice of acceptance to the above-mentioned offices shall be considered as delivery to the Bidder.
- 21.6.2 Where a Bidder has been informed per fax of the acceptance of his Bid, the acknowledgement of receipt transmitted by his fax machine shall be regarded as proof of delivery to the Bidder.
- 21.6.3 Where a Bidder has been informed by e-mail of the acceptance of his Bid, the "delivered message" on the sender's mailbox will be regarded as proof of delivery. Where the bidder's mailbox is set to allow for "Read messages" to be transmitted to the sender, these should also be kept as an audit trail.

21.7 FORMAL WRITTEN CONTRACT (LETTER OF AWARD)

A formal commitment in the form of a written contract is entered into with the Successful Bidder (Letter of Award)

Contracts provide the framework to mitigate risks and to measure operational and financial performance as well as compliance with business obligations and regulatory requirements.

A contract arises when an offer made by the Bidder is accepted. The Bid submitted by the Successful Bidder, read together with Transnet's letter of acceptance and terms and conditions of the RFP, constitute a binding contract between Transnet and the Bidder. Usually, this constitutes an "Interim" contract until such time as Transnet and the Successful Bidder have been able to conclude a written contract to formalise their contractual relationship.

Although a verbal contract is equally binding on the parties, it is Transnet's policy that only formal written contracts shall be entered into with the Successful Bidder unless the Goods or Services are for immediate delivery or execution, in which case a formal order must be processed.

21.7.1 Letter of Intent (LOI)

- a) A Letter of Intent is issued when a Bidder has been selected as a Preferred Bidder. The LOI informs the Preferred Bidder of Transnet's intention to negotiate and conclude a contract with it. The LOI also makes it clear that if a contract

cannot be agreed upon, Transnet reserves the right not to award the business to the Bidder. No contractual or other legal rights are vested in a Bidder purely by virtue of having been issued a LOI.

- b) The validity of such LOI should be for a limited period only and every effort must be made to finalise the signing of the contract within the shortest possible period. The extension of the validity period of a LOI should be avoided and only considered in exceptional circumstances.
- c) Only if the Goods/Services are critical for operations, will it be permissible to draw off a LOI, whilst the negotiation process is underway. In such cases the LOI serves as a proxy for the binding legal agreement and under its authority Transnet may place orders on the supplier for its interim requirements, during which period the final agreement will be negotiated and finalised between the parties. Should negotiations between the parties break down for any reason, the supplier may immediately invoice Transnet for all reasonable costs for Goods/Services delivered (based on proof of delivery). Such amounts shall become due and payable by Transnet.
- d) It is important to note that the longer the LOI is allowed to continue, the less likely it will be that Transnet will be able to leverage its negotiating power to change a contract condition to benefit Transnet.
- e) When issuing an LOI, one of the approved standard templates available on the Intranet must be used.

21.7.2 Use of Transnet's Standard Agreements

Where Transnet has standard agreements or terms and conditions in place, it is imperative that the standard template (available on ISCM Transnet Intranet) be used unless there are cogent reasons why such standard agreements cannot be used in a particular instance. Any omissions or additional clauses to such standard agreements must be captured in a schedule of special conditions. Should it not be possible to utilise a standard agreement, any non-standard agreement must be vetted and signed off by the relevant OD's Legal Department or Group Legal. The deviation from the standard agreement must be properly motivated.

It is always advisable to include Transnet's standard requirements/terms and conditions/agreements in the bid documents and/or RFPs. The respondent(s) will therefore be made aware of Transnet's requirements/expectations in advance.

21.7.3 Process for expediting contracts

On award of the bid, the following process must be followed in expediting a formal contract:

- a) The employee responsible must draft the contract using the appropriate Standard Template plus a schedule and service level agreement (SLA) (where applicable).
- b) He/she must present the draft contract and SLA to the Transnet representative with the requisite DoA and obtain his/her approval of the contract and SLA in principle.
- c) Two duplicate originals of the contract and SLA must then be presented to the external party for signature.
- d) Once the external party has signed, the duplicate original contracts and SLA must be returned to the Transnet representative with the DoA for signature.

One original must be forwarded to the external party and the other must be kept by Transnet.

- e) The contract and a copy of the SLA must be stored in a secure repository and be readily available when reference to it is required.

21.7.4 Non adherence to existing contracts ('Maverick Spend')

- a) As a general rule, Transnet is required to acquire the relevant Goods/Services only from the contracted supplier. Transnet is exposed to legal risk if it purchases Goods/Services outside of the contract.
- b) If any person wishes to buy outside of a contract, the prior approval of the relevant Manager is required.

21.7.5 Formal contracts are to be entered into in the name of Transnet SOC Ltd

All contracts shall be concluded, as soon as possible after the award of the business to the Successful Bidder, in the name of Transnet SOC Ltd, according to guidelines issued. It shall be signed for and on behalf of Transnet by a Manager with the appropriate DoA.

21.7.6 Transnet may insist on a suitable security/guarantee for fulfilment of contract

- a) When security has to be provided by Successful Bidders in terms of the contract, the delegated Manager entering into a contract shall ensure that adequate security is obtained for the fulfilment of the contract. It shall preferably be in the form of a guarantee by a bank or approved guarantee corporation, or a deposit with Transnet of approved Government or municipal stock in negotiable form. All securities shall be safely held by the OD concerned which shall keep a register thereof and shall ensure that the security does not lapse before the contract is completed.
- b) Cash deposits or a "guarantee" in the personal name of an official of a bank or other institution is not acceptable.
- c) Provided that the contract document allows for that, one can also retain part of the payment as retention money. Retention money (performance guarantees), normally 5 to 10% of the individual payments, is held back by Transnet as a guarantee for the satisfactory completion of the project. When such amounts have accumulated sufficiently, consideration is normally given to the refunding of the guarantees or sureties. Retention money is only refunded after completion of the guarantee period (normally 6 to 12 months, depending on the risk of latent defects).
- d) Depending on the risk to Transnet, these measures may be relaxed to facilitate Transnet's B-BBEE objectives to develop small or emerging black companies.

21.8 CONTRACTING WITH SECOND-RANKED BIDDER

In the following cases Transnet will be allowed, at its sole discretion, to consider accepting the second most favourable Bid, provided that this option is exercised within a reasonable period after the initial award:

- 21.8.1 when a Successful Bidder, after having been informed of the acceptance of its Bid, fails to sign a contract within a reasonable period after being called upon to do so;

- 21.8.2 when a Successful Bidder has failed to provide the necessary security, if required;
 - 21.8.3 when a Successful Bidder fails to meet a condition precedent for the award of business (e.g. to obtain the necessary funding, provide valid and/or original tax clearance certification, etc.), or
 - 21.8.4 when final contract negotiations with a Preferred Bidder fails and a contract is not agreed upon; and
 - 21.8.5 it is not practical within the time available to call for fresh Bids.
- The award of business to the second ranked Bidder must be approved by the relevant AC.

21.9 APPROVAL OF CONTRACTS FOR PERIODS EXCEEDING TWO YEARS

The Main AC is to approve all contracts for periods exceeding two Years

No contract shall be entered into for a period longer than two Years without the main AC's (or the person with DoA) written approval, except for large construction contracts where the period allowed will be the completion period of the project. The same principle also applies with respect to the extensions of contracts, i.e. the initial period of the contract together with the extension may not exceed 2 Years without the main AC's (or the person with DoA) approval.

Property leases are also excluded from these Procedures and approval levels are determined by means of the Delegation of Authority of those employees, CEO's and higher authorities of the relevant property division/s.

CHAPTER 22 : POST AWARD CONTRACT MANAGEMENT

(Also refer to the Contracts Management Manual available on the iSCM Transnet Intranet)

Contract Lifecycle Management (CLM) is "the process of systematically and efficiently managing contract creation, execution and analysis for maximising operational and financial performance and minimising risk".⁷

Contract Management is an end-to-end process but is often confused with the concept of contract administration which constitutes only one part of it. This Chapter addresses the core components and activities of post-award Contract Lifecycle Management, including contract administration:

Delivery Management	to ensure that the Goods and/or Services are being delivered in accordance with agreed performance, costs and Quality levels set out in the contract
Supplier Relationship Management	to manage Transnet's relationship with the supplier in order to develop and maintain an open and constructive association with the supplier
Contract Administration	to undertake the formal contractual processes and obligations required and to comply with Transnet's post-award policies and procedures

In addition there are three fundamental aspects for consideration in relation to performance measurement:

PERFORMANCE FEEDBACK	SOURCE
Factual, objective information from the supplier	Normally obtained from IT systems and managed by outputs from the Service Level Agreement (SLA)
Feedback from users concerning Service/Goods received	A supplier relationship function, typically through questionnaires, surveys, telephone or face-to-face enquiry
The supplier's own experience of dealing with Transnet	A supplier relationship function, reported through supplier feedback

22.1 POST-AWARD FUNCTIONS

The Immediate post-award contract management activities establish the basic awareness and procedures required to initiate Transnet's on-going contract management obligations. These include:

- Ensuring that all relevant parties are aware of their roles and responsibilities in the immediate implementation and transition process;
- Checking that the agreed processes for contract management are in place by both parties;
- That knowledge transfer from the procurement or project team (which may not have included members of the contract management team) to the contract management team takes place to ensure successful management of the contract

⁷ Source: Aberdeen Group

- That, where necessary, the continuity plans for the seamless transition of the Service from the previous supplier to the new supplier will be carried out as agreed.

22.2 DELIVERY MANAGEMENT

This activity is concerned with Transnet's ability to measure the supplier's performance in terms of the contract, whilst managing the associated risks. It is important that the performance measures selected provide clear and demonstrable evidence of the success (or otherwise) of the contractual deliverables. In principle, issues such as the following should typically be considered:

- cost and value obtained;
- performance and customer satisfaction;
- delivery improvement and added value;
- Supplier Development (SD), Empowerment and Local Content (LC) where applicable;
- delivery capability;
- benefits realised; and/or
- supplier responsiveness.

22.2.1 Service Level Agreements (SLAs)

Contracts with suppliers will normally define the service levels and terms under which Services are to be provided. Service level management includes assessing and managing the performance of suppliers to ensure value for money.

It is generally beneficial to establish an SLA, since an SLA creates a common understanding about services, priorities and responsibilities of both parties. Transnet must decide in each instance whether or not it is appropriate to utilise an SLA. However, the default position should be to establish an SLA.

Where applicable, an SLA must be put in place with the Successful Bidder to ensure proper performance management and to mitigate any financial, operational, safety, environmental or reputational risks which may arise during the term of the contract.

The SLA shall, at the very least, govern the following aspects:

- representative(s) from both parties who will attend the meetings;
- schedule of meetings;
- venue(s) for meetings;
- party responsible for taking minutes (to be approved by both parties prior to circulation);
- risk areas to be measured (refer sub-paragraph 22.2.10 below);
- size of the samples to be tested in terms of performance management;
- key performance indicators (KPI);
- required outcomes;
- commitment to remedial actions, when needed;
- reporting on the results; and
- dispute resolution procedure in the event of disagreement or deadlock between the representatives of the parties (dispute resolution procedures are normally set out in the contract, failing which it is the Transnet Relationship Manager's responsibility to set out the procedures to be adopted – refer sub-paragraph 22.3.2 below)

22.2.2 Performance Scorecard

Service levels should be agreed and benchmarked for both Transnet and the supplier and should be:

- established at a reasonable level; if they are set too high they will attract additional charges from the supplier;
- prioritised by Transnet in order of importance and on agreed scales, for example; critical, major, urgent, important, minor;
- easily monitored (objective, tangible and quantifiable);
- unambiguous and understandable; and
- open to renegotiation at any time.

A performance management scorecard reflecting the performance of both parties should form an integral part of the SLA.

(See table below for a typical example of a scorecard for the purchase of Goods)

TABLE 17

KPA	Sample	KPI	Acceptable	Assessment	Remedial Action
DELIVERY	Daily all deliveries	On time	99% on time	88%	Supplier to improve to 92%
	Daily all deliveries	Accurate	99% accurate	100%	N/A
	Daily 1 in 5 deliveries	Lead-times met	99% lead-times met	40%	Supplier to improve to 70%
	Daily all deliveries	Paperwork in order	100% paperwork correct	100%	N/A
QUALITY	Daily 1 in 5 deliveries	No. of items rejected by GR	<2% Items rejected	0	N/A
	Weekly all deliveries	No of items rejected by production	0 Items rejected	0	N/A
	Weekly 1 in 2 deliveries	Items properly packed	<3% Items incorrectly packaged	0	N/A
PRICE REVIEW	Monthly 10 prices	Price charged vs. market	95% of Items in market pricing range	91%	Supplier to improve to 95%
PAYMENT	All payments	Payment within 30 days	90% payments on time	40%	Transnet to improve to 80%

22.2.3 Performance review meetings

The following must be observed by the Relationship Manager (refer sub-paragraph 22.3.1 below) prior to and/or during the performance review meetings between Transnet and the supplier:

- ensure that performance review meetings are convened at intervals as agreed upon with the supplier;
- ensure that tangible proof of the supplier's performance against all the KPAs is obtained prior to the meeting;
- proper minutes shall be kept of all performance meetings; and
- over and above the requirement that minutes should be kept, a specific record (paper trail) shall be kept of recurring instances of poor performance by the supplier. Such record shall reflect the various performance assessments, interventions by the contract Manager, the remedial actions agreed upon, and the results thereof.

22.2.4 Performance monitoring

- a) A process for monitoring the delivery of the suppliers must be set up by management to ensure continuing adherence to the supplier contract and service level agreements. Suppliers must be monitored against agreed performance metrics defined in service level agreements and contracts, it must be confirmed that suppliers are meeting current business requirements.
- b) Contracted fees must be in line with fees specified in the contracts.
- c) Performance metrics must be periodically reviewed to ensure that they continue to support business requirements. Improvements in price, Quality or service must be sought and where possible and built into the contract terms.
- d) Benchmarking against similar organisations, appropriate International standards or recognised industry best practices must be undertaken. Benchmarking results must be used to evaluate and compare supplier prices and services. Results of benchmarking must be used to make adjustments to current supplier contracts and agreements.
- e) Independent audits must be undertaken with key suppliers and recommendations obtained from independent audits must be reviewed by Transnet management for subsequent use to improve delivery.

22.2.5 Adherence to contractual sourcing (Goods)

For Goods manufactured in South Africa:

When a contract is placed for Goods to be manufactured in South Africa, the supplier may not be permitted to substitute Imported Goods without the AC's prior written approval. For contracts of values below the AC's jurisdiction, the Manager concerned may decide whether Imported Goods can be substituted. Where the supplier has secured the business by reason of the Local Content offered, it shall not be allowed to substitute Imported Goods for those to be supplied from South African sources. An exception to this ruling may only be considered when the supply from the South African source has been curtailed due to reasons beyond the supplier's control.

22.2.6 Conformance with specifications and delivery instructions (Goods)

- a) Inspection and shipment/delivery of Goods:

All Goods are to be delivered strictly in accordance with the contract. Timeous arrangements must be made by Transnet for the inspection and/or shipment and delivery arrangements, as indicated by the contract terms.

(i) In the case of Imported Goods:

The supplier must notify Transnet or its nominated clearing and forwarding agents as to when consignments are to be ready for inspection and/or shipment in order that arrangements may be made for inspection and/or shipment, except in instances where it has been specified that the Goods shall be inspected at destination. (Refer *Appendix C – ICC Incoterms 2010* for further details relating to alternative purchase terms and related responsibilities of seller and buyer).

(ii) In the case of locally manufactured Goods:

- where Quality is not assured by means of SANS, ISO or other standards, suitable Quality assurance mechanisms must be provided for in the contract e.g. inspections during manufacturing process, inspections at point of despatch or delivery. A suitable clause should be included in the relevant contract to the effect that Transnet reserves the right to return defective Goods for replacement in accordance with specifications;
- where Goods are of such a nature that Quality inspections are not deemed necessary, a suitable clause should be included in the relevant contract to the effect that Transnet reserves the right to return defective Goods for replacement in accordance with specifications.

b) Acceptance of Goods received:

Transnet employees responsible for the receipt of delivered Goods must ensure that all Goods are provided:

- (i) strictly in terms of the contract, i.e. the delivery note may not differ from what was required in terms of the contract or purchase order; and
- (ii) that the Goods delivered correspond exactly with the delivery note, i.e. short supplies should be clearly endorsed on the delivery note and over-supplies should be returned to the company, with the delivery note clearly endorsed as such.

22.2.7 Remedy for repetitive instances of poor performances

Where poor performances have been recorded and when no improvement in performance has been demonstrated by the supplier after several interventions on the part of the Transnet representative (including the imposition of penalties, where applicable – refer sub-paragraph 22.2.8 below), the following remedies should apply:

- a) Should the contract Manager believe that the supplier is unlikely to improve its performance, the Manager must approach OD Legal or Group Legal to obtain direction regarding cancellation of the contract; and thereafter
- b) Procurement is to initiate the blacklisting process, if appropriate.

It is of utmost importance that the specific additional record (a paper trail) of recurring instances of poor performance by the supplier is available to inform the recommendation to cancel the contract and/or to blacklist (see Chapter 23, paragraph 3.4 for Blacklisting protocols).

It must be remembered that poor performance amounts to breach of contract. Transnet's contracts contain a standard "breach clause" in terms of which a defaulting supplier must be notified of the breach and afforded an opportunity to remedy the breach. Only if this fails may steps be taken to cancel a contract.

22.2.8 Imposition of penalties

- a) A penalty is a stipulation in a contract (a "penalty clause") providing that a party who acts in conflict with its contractual obligations must pay a sum of money to the other party. Where a contract provides for penalties in the event of breach such penalty should be enforced.
- b) However, unless a contract expressly provides for a penalty, a penalty may not be imposed. Where a contract does not contain a penalty clause Transnet must sue for damages arising from breach of contract. Damages must be recovered by way of litigation and only after the amount of damages is proven and awarded by a court.
- c) Transnet cannot recover both penalties as well as damages. Furthermore, Transnet cannot claim damages in lieu of penalties unless the contract states so specifically.
- d) Penalties should be reasonable and not out of proportion to the prejudice suffered. In terms of the Conventional Penalties Act 15 of 1962, a court may reduce a penalty if it is unreasonable, disproportionate and inequitable.

22.2.9 Failure by a supplier to perform - liability for additional expenses

The bid documents (as well as the eventual contract) shall make provision for the Bidder to undertake that if, after it has been notified of the acceptance of its Bid, it fails to perform, whether by not entering into a contract or by not undertaking any steps when requested to do so within a period stipulated in the bid conditions or within such extended period as Transnet may allow, the supplier will be held liable for any additional expense which Transnet may incur in having to call for Bids afresh and/or accepting any less favourable Bid to complete the whole or remaining portion of the contract. In addition, consideration can also be given to placing such a contractor on Transnet's List of Excluded Bidders (See Chapter 23).

22.2.10 Risk Management

Risk can be defined as "the probability of an unwanted outcome happening".

It is advisable to seek to remove or at least mitigate risk whenever possible before contract award. The obligations placed upon buyers to analyse, assess and mitigate risk during the pre-award stages of contract management are dealt with in previous chapters of this PPM. These pre-award activities can be collectively summarised as follows:

Analysis	The process of identifying all potential issues that can go wrong with an activity and estimating the probability of each happening
Assessment	The process of assessing the likely impact of a risk on Transnet
Mitigation	Having assessed the risks and identified those requiring action; responsibility for managing and mitigating them is allocated, which allocation must be dependent on the assessment of the likelihood and consequence of the risk

Contracts provide the framework to mitigate risks and to measure operational and financial performance as well as compliance with business obligations and regulatory requirements.

Post-award risk management undertaken during the contract period comprises those activities associated with identifying and controlling the risks that may potentially affect the successful fulfilment of the contract. Risks to the contract include such issues as:

- lack of capacity of the supplier, particularly if there are significant increases in demand;
- reduction in demand leading to higher unit costs borne by the supplier;
- an event which causes an increase in the total price to Transnet;
- an event which causes a programme delay;
- supplier staff changes;
- changes to the supplier's business objectives;
- deterioration in the supplier's financial standing;
- demand changes that cannot be met by the supplier;
- deterioration of Quality;
- *force majeure* issues;
- market fluctuations for commodities; and/or
- labour unrest.

When a risk is anticipated or perceived, to manage this involves the parties working together to identify *who* has the responsibility for the risk, the *method* of minimising it and *how* the risk will be managed. In order to do so the contract Managers must undertake the following actions:

- establish a binding process to encourage early warning system for issues such as those mentioned above;
- identify the party best able to control the situation leading to the risk occurring;
- identify the party best able to control the risk itself;
- identify who should be responsible if the risk cannot be controlled; and
- if the risk is transferred to the supplier, establish whether or not this cost will fall to Transnet, whether transfer will introduce new risks and the legal position of any such transfer.

Finally it should be considered that business risk cannot be transferred to the supplier and that the ultimate responsibility will always remain with Transnet for any failure in the fulfilment of a contract.

22.3 SUPPLIER RELATIONSHIP MANAGEMENT

In addition to the contractual and commercial aspects with Transnet's suppliers, a healthy relationship between Transnet and its suppliers is fundamental to the effective management of a contract. Management structures for contracts need to be designed to facilitate such a healthy relationship. There must be set procedures for raising and handling issues, so that these are dealt with as early as possible and at the appropriate level within the organisations.

The value, risk and strategic positioning of a contract will dictate the appropriate degree of supplier relationship management to be established per contract. This decision must be made by the OD's CPO and recorded accordingly in the supplier's contract file.

22.3.1 Supplier Relationship Managers

- a) Transnet management must appoint relationship Managers (a "Relationship Manager") to be responsible for ensuring the quality of the relationships with suppliers. Relationship Managers are responsible for liaising between Transnet and the supplier regarding issues arising and must retain accountability for provisions and Quality of services delivered by suppliers. Supplier roles and responsibilities and Transnet roles and responsibilities for management of overall supplier relationships and individual supplier contracts must be defined and communicated to Transnet and the suppliers. Those involved in managing the supplier must understand Transnet fully and know the contract documentation thoroughly. This is essential if they are to understand the implications of problems (or opportunities) over the life of the contract.
- b) Transnet and suppliers need to understand the objectives and business of each other. Transnet must have clear business objectives, coupled with a clear understanding of how the supplier will contribute to them. The supplier must also be able to achieve its objectives, including making a reasonable margin.
- c) Supplier relationship management must maintain mutual trust and understanding, openness, and excellent communications which are key to the fulfilment of the formal contract terms and conditions.

22.3.2 Duties of a Relationship Manager

The activities of a Relationship Manager that must be accomplished to effectively manage a Transnet supplier are summarised as follows:

- Relationship Managers must control the technical relationship between Transnet and the supplier regarding the schedule of requirements or statements of work and specification as per supplier contracts and service level agreements.
- Relationship Managers must communicate potential issues for mitigation and immediate diffusion before issues are escalated.
- Relationship Managers will establish and manage a communication framework for the supplier for which they are responsible and ensure that it is employed effectively to sustain communication flow.
- Informal issues resulting in concerns in a supplier relationship must be identified and resolved by the Relationship Manager.
- Relationship Managers can identify and recommend changes to supplier arrangements, communication flows, supplier contracts and SLAs to ensure an effective relationship is maintained.
- Regular formal and informal reporting procedures will be established by Relationship Managers.
- Relationship Managers must be actively involved in supplier dispute resolution processes.
- Relationship Managers will organise the necessary forums, working groups, seminars, road shows, training sessions and other information activities involving Transnet staff and suppliers.
- Ways to improve supplier relationships wherever possible must be proactively considered by Relationship Managers, based on end-user and supplier feedback.

22.3.3 Factors that can inhibit the development of a successful supplier relationship include:

Frequent and rapid recourse to the formal contract to overcome problems

Clashes in company cultures which are so disparate as to prevent the creation of the level of trust and confidence required

Reluctance by the supplier to cooperate in value for money or benchmarking tests conducted by Transnet

Commercial issues, for example lack of real competition resulting in uncompetitive poor value for money terms from the supplier, or conversely that Transnet is critically dependent on one supplier leading to price rise vulnerability and/or problems of management capability, resources or financial capitalisation

Too frequent demands for submission of competitive Bids which reduces trust in the relationship

22.3.4 Factors that encourage the development of a successful supplier relationship include:

Securing senior level support in both organisations

Recognising that actions and attitudes affect the tone of the relationship

Ensuring that the governance arrangements are fair

Ensuring that the relationships between the parties are peer-to-peer as far as possible

Ensuring that roles and responsibilities are clearly understood by both parties and that the necessary authority levels have been ascribed

Ensuring that escalation routes are clear and understood but that problems are resolved as early as possible and as low down the management tree as possible

Separating strategic matters from the day-to-day service delivery issues

Ensuring that appropriate attitudes and behaviours are practised and displayed to assist the promotion of a positive and constructive relationship

22.4 CONTRACT ADMINISTRATION

This activity is concerned with the practicalities of the relationship between Transnet and the supplier and the operation of the routine administrative and clerical functions. The importance of contract administration to the smooth running of post-award contract management must not be underestimated and should be resourced appropriately. This is the responsibility of Transnet's Relationship Manager.

The typical functions included under post-award contract administration responsibilities are:

- Change control;
- Charges and cost monitoring;
- Ordering and payment procedures;
- Budget controls;
- Contract meeting schedules and minutes;
- Resource management and planning; and
- Contract termination or extension/renewal.

All the above issues should have been addressed at the pre-award stage and included in the contract documentation, as applicable. The role of Transnet's Relationship Manager is to

manage these functions during the term of the contract. Certain key administrative issues and the governance thereof are further addressed in the following paragraphs.

22.4.1 Change control procedures

Changes will almost inevitably occur during the period of a contract and managing these changes is a particularly important activity. Formal change control procedures should be designed and set out in the original contract documentation to avoid misunderstanding and ambiguity about roles, responsibilities and the actions to be taken in any given situation.

The procedures need to be comprehensive but also flexible and straight forward and should cover such issues as:

- How to request changes, including additional demands placed on the supplier
- Assessing the impact including contractual implications
- Prioritisation and authorisation levels
- Agreement on methodology
- Controls for implementation

22.4.2 Extension of contracts

The relevant legal principles are explained as follows:

- a) A contract may be extended before its expiry date. This will involve an agreed Material Amendment to the existing terms and conditions of the contract. Where the contract expressly allows for an option to extend or renew, such prescribed extension or renewal process must be followed before the termination date.
- b) A contract that has lapsed or expired cannot be extended. The purported "extension" of an expired contract either for a given period (e.g. 1 Year) or on a month-to-month basis has inherent risk, because the terms and conditions safeguarding Transnet would have expired with the original contract itself. Transnet would have effectively entered into a "new" contract without the safeguards of the initial contract. This could also give rise to irregular expenditure in terms of the PFMA.

22.4.3 In view of the legal principles set out above, the practice of extending a contract after its termination date is considered to be irregular.

The following approach with regard to the extension of contracts must be followed:

- a) Any request for the extension of a contract must be submitted to the AC at least 45 (forty-five) Working Days before the contract is due to expire. This is to ensure that the AC may consider the request before the expiry date.
- b) A request for the extension of a contract must indicate whether such extension is as a result of exercising an option to extend or whether the extension sought amounts to an amendment to the contract.
- c) Any request for the extension of a contract for a given period (e.g. 1 Year) or on a month-to-month basis should contain proof that the supplier is willing to extend the contract based on the same or better terms and conditions for Transnet.

- d) No request for the extension or renewal of a contract after the expiry date of the contract shall be entertained and any proposed continuation of business shall be regarded as a new sourcing event, i.e. open RFX, Confinement or to be effected under laid down emergency procedures.
- e) In the event that the contract has been allowed to exceed its termination date, such irregular "extension" shall be submitted to the AC for condonation of the action taken.
- f) Should a supplier request extension of the contract completion date, the relevant circumstances must be considered in order to reach a fair decision in response to such a request, as follows:
 - (i) Where the bid document or contract stipulates that completion of the works, services, project or delivery of the Goods has to take place by a specified date and the supplier completed it / handed it over only after the contractual completion date, penalties may be raised under the terms of the contract.
 - (ii) A supplier may apply for an extension of the contract completion date if it considers that the reasons for late completion were/are:
 - beyond its control (e.g. *Force majeure* events such as acts of God, rain, floods or earthquakes);
 - whereas the supplier had exercised reasonable control, the late completion could not have been foreseen, minimised or prevented; and/or
 - or the delay(s) had been attributable to Transnet
 - (iii) The supplier's claims in terms of (ii) above may be lodged at any time during the course of the contract or after the expiry date and must be substantiated by means of site diary entries, etc. Transnet then has to consider the reasoning and if considered to be valid, shall recommend to the AC the refund of some or all penalties already levied in terms of the contract or the waiving of some or all penalties.
 - (iv) Late completion of the contract due to valid reasons will require an extension of the contractual completion date. This would constitute a Material Amendment to the contract and would require AC approval. Should the extension of time be granted, i.e. approved by the AC, the supplier shall be entitled to price escalation over the extended period only if escalation has been provided for in the original contract.
 - (v) If Transnet does not consider the supplier's claim for an extension of time to be valid, the contract completion date may nevertheless be extended but penalties may be imposed in terms of the contract. Price escalation will also not be payable after the official completion date. However, Transnet is not obliged to grant the supplier's request for an extension of time and may (especially in instances where time is of the essence) decide to cancel the contract.
 - (vi) A waiver or reduction of penalties would constitute a Material Amendment to the contract and would require AC approval.

22.4.4 Exercising options

- a) If Transnet wishes to reserve the right to extend a contract period, this should be stipulated upfront in the RFP. Furthermore, the inclusion of this option must be brought to the attention of the AC (or the person with DoA) when the initial recommendation to award the business is made.

- b) Should it be decided to exercise the option during the course of the contract, the recommendation to exercise the option must be submitted to the AC for prior written approval in the normal manner. An indication must be given at that stage that the exercise of the option is still the best value in the market place (also see paragraph 9.2 and 22.4.3(b)).

22.4.5 Involvement of AC in material contract amendments

Goods/services contracts

These contracts are normally fixed term contracts. The AC must approve all Material Amendments to contracts within their threshold and recommend those above their threshold. This applies even if the initial award had only been submitted for the information of the AC, e.g. an emergency procedure or business awarded via the 'confine and award' process.

Extension of contracts, additional work, increase in quantities, price amendments, cession and assignments, waiving of penalties, etc., are all examples of Material Amendments to contracts, and need prior AC approval.

Where a contract specifies:

- (i) estimated quantities at unit prices in respect of "as-and-when required" purchase or service contracts; or
- (ii) specified quantities at unit prices in respect of purchase or service contracts over a fixed period,

a Manager may approve any increases or decreases in quantities or additions or additional work of which the total value does not exceed 10% (10 per cent) of the original value of the contract, and must inform the AC accordingly.

This provision does not include price escalations not provided for in the contract, i.e. the same goods to be provided at an increased price. Such matters should be presented to the AC for prior approval regardless of the value of the proposed increase in price.

22.4.6 General amendment principles

General principles applying to amendments of both Goods/Services and engineering/construction-type contracts include the following:

- a) where the original value of the contract falls below the AC's jurisdiction, a Manager may approve additions, increases or decreases provided the total value of the contract does not exceed his/her Delegated Powers. However, if the original contract value is below the AC's jurisdiction but amendments bring it within the AC's jurisdiction, the matter must be submitted to the AC; or
- b) where the value of the contract falls within the AC's jurisdiction, a Manager may approve the amendment of non-material provisions (less than 10% of the original contract value) provided that such amendment shall be reported for the information of the AC as soon as possible thereafter; or
- c) where any material provision needs to be amended (e.g. price or delivery date, cession and assignment of contract, or the termination of a contract, waiving or reduction in penalties, etc.) the Manager concerned shall submit a recommendation for AC consideration together with supporting documentation indicating that the proposed amendment to the contract is in the best interest of

Transnet, that it represents the optimal value for Transnet, and how this has been determined.

Following AC approval such amendment needs to be signed off by the person with DoA who signed the initial contract (or the person mandated to do so) provided the cumulative value of the contract and subsequent amendment(s) still falls within his/her DoA.

22.4.7 Contract closure

This stage concerns the activities associated with finalising the close-out or termination of a contract, whether in accordance with the expiry date or as a result of early contract cancellation. Depending on the nature of the contract, such activities may include the following:

- Complete all administrative matters;
- Record all technical issues have been resolved;
- Determine the extent of any liquidated damages to be deducted from the contract price made against or received from the supplier;
- Record the end of retention and guarantee periods, plus date of final inspection;
- Record the date of release of retention and/or bank guarantees;
- Agree to limits on any on-going obligations, including warranties;
- Record any material reconciliations;
- Transfer any assets, including data, intellectual property and loan items;
- Transfer operating systems (as applicable) to new/replacement supplier;
- Conclude final contract payments;
- Summarise claims made against or received from the supplier; pr
- Ensure retention of records (refer sub-paragraph 22.4.8 below)

On completion of the above activities agreement should have been reached between Transnet and the supplier on all technical and commercial aspects of the contract.

22.4.8 Safe custody of Bid documentation, contracts and contract files

- a) Each OD shall arrange for the safe custody of Bid documentation and contracts at a suitable, approved, centralised or regional location.
- b) Related documents which should be kept on contract files as part of the contract records include, but are not limited to, documents such as
 - RFP (requisition);
 - the going to market strategy and approval;
 - bid Advertisements;
 - authorisations to confine;
 - minutes of relevant meetings/briefings;
 - evaluation score-sheets;
 - TEAR reports;
 - declaration of interest documents signed by members of evaluation teams and post bid negotiation teams;
 - certificates authorising communication with Bidders;
 - agendas and minutes of post bid negotiation meetings;

- correspondence with Bidders;
- RFX offer from Successful Bidder;
- letters of award and non-award;
- Letter of Intent;
- Approvals of draft contract (sign off schedule);
- Executed original copy of contract;
- Vendor Application Form;
- Insurance details (if applicable);
- Original and valid SARS VAT and Tax Clearance Certificate (to be update annually);
- B-BBEE Verification Certificate;
- Contract Addendums (if any); and
- Confirmation of expiry or extension to contract.

Refer to the ISCM Transnet Intranet for the checklist template of documents and signoffs which should be kept on contract files.

22.4.9 Document Retention

The following may be used as guidelines as to how long records should be retained:

- a) Unsuccessful Bids must be kept for 5 Years after completion of the contract, and thereafter may be destroyed.
- b) Successful Bidder's Bid/contract document, as well as the contract file and related general correspondence must be kept on site in a proper and safe archiving facility for a period of 5 Years after completion of the contract, and thereafter may be archived in an off-site archiving facility in compliance with normal archiving procedures.

These files should be properly archived and recorded by means of a formal register so that they can be easily traced when required for audit investigations and/or litigation purposes.

22.4.10 CONTRACT LIFECYCLE MANAGEMENT METHODOLOGY

Transnet has a standardised Contract Lifecycle Management (CLM) methodology. It is a requirement in terms of this PPM document that these CLM prescripts be followed. **INDICATIONS OF SUCCESSFUL CONTRACT MANAGEMENT**

22.5 Successful contract management will achieve benefits by:

Managing Transnet's own responsibilities during the contract

Ensuring the supplier meets the minimum performance criteria, such as compliance

Allowing the achievement of both short and long term supplier performance improvement through developing effective supplier relationships

Ensuring that suppliers deliver Goods/Services of the agreed quality and price

B-BBEE and SD commitments are closely monitored and enforced

Reduction of costs and continuity of supply

Roles, responsibilities, rights, obligations of all stakeholders are clearly communicated and understood

Early identification and resolution of poor performance and disputes thereby minimising risks

Eliminating unethical practices within Transnet

Enhanced Supplier relationships through the visualisation and establishment of win-win scenarios

Entrenching uniformity of managing contracts and the principle of fairness

Creating a database of lessons learnt to aid future planning through the dissemination of good practices

Increased competitive and strategic advantages through effective control and visibility of contracts

Evaluation of the specification against contract performance and identification of contract changes or variations

In summary, successful contract management is indicated if:

The arrangements for service delivery continue to be satisfactory to both parties

The expected business benefits and value for money are being achieved

The supplier is co-operative and responsive

Transnet understands its obligation under the contract

There are no disputes

There are no surprises

A professional and objective debate over changes and issues arising can be had

Efficiencies are being realised

CHAPTER 23 : BLACKLISTING PROCEDURES AND GUIDELINES**23.1 DEFINITION**

Blacklisting is a mechanism used to exclude a company/person from future business with Transnet for a specified period. The decision to blacklist must be based on one of the grounds for blacklisting. The standard of proof to commence the blacklisting process is whether a "*prima facie*" (i.e. on the face of it) case has been established.

The Transnet GCFO or his delegate may, upon a recommendation by the relevant AC and the Group Chief Supply Chain Officer decide that no Bid from that person or Enterprise be considered/accepted for any new contracts concluded for a specified period as may be determined.

Depending on the seriousness of the misconduct and the strategic importance of the Goods/Services, in addition to blacklisting a company /person from future business, Transnet may decide to terminate some or all existing contracts with the company /person as well.

A supplier or contractor to Transnet may not subcontract any portion of the contract to a blacklisted company.

23.2 GROUNDS FOR BLACKLISTING

23.2.1 Grounds for blacklisting include: If any person/Enterprise which has submitted a Bid, concluded a contract, or, in the capacity of agent or subcontractor, has been associated with such Bid or contract:

- a) has withdrawn such Bid after the advertised closing date and time for the receipt of Bids;
- b) has, after being notified of the acceptance of his Bid, failed or refused to sign a contract when called upon to do so in terms of any condition forming part of the bid documents;
- c) has carried out any contract resulting from such bid in an unsatisfactory manner or has breached any condition of the contract;
- d) has offered, promised or given a bribe in relation to the obtaining or execution of the contract;
- e) has acted in a fraudulent or improper manner or in bad faith towards Transnet or any Government Department or towards any public body, Enterprise or person;
- f) has made any incorrect statement in a certificate or other communication with regard to the Local Content of his Goods or his B-BBEE status and is unable to prove to the satisfaction of Transnet that:
 - (i) he made the statement in good faith honestly believing it to be correct; and
 - (ii) before making such statement he took all reasonable steps to satisfy himself of its correctness;
- g) caused Transnet damage, or to incur costs in order to meet the contractor's requirements and which could not be recovered from the contractor;
- h) has litigated against Transnet in bad faith.

23.2.2 Transnet recognizes that trust and good faith are pivotal to its relationship with its suppliers. When a dispute arises between Transnet and its supplier, the parties should use their best endeavours to resolve the dispute in an amicable manner, whenever possible. Litigation in bad faith negates the principles of trust and good faith on which commercial relationships are based. Accordingly, Transnet will not do business with a company that litigates against it in bad faith or is involved in any action that reflects bad faith on its part. Litigation in bad faith includes, but is not limited to the following instances:

- (iii) Vexatious proceedings. These are frivolous proceedings which have been instituted without proper grounds;
- (iv) Perjury. Where a supplier commits perjury either in giving evidence or on affidavit;
- (v) Scurrilous allegations. Where a supplier makes allegations regarding a senior Transnet employee which are without a proper foundation, scandalous, abusive or defamatory.
- (vi) Abuse of court process. When a supplier abuses the court process in order to gain a competitive advantage during a bid process.

23.2.3 Where any person or Enterprise has been found guilty by a court of law, tribunal or other administrative body of a serious breach of any law, during the preceding 5 Years, such person/Enterprise may also be blacklisted. Serious breaches of the law would include but are not limited to corruption, fraud, theft, extortion, or contraventions of the Competition Act 89 of 1998 (e.g. collusive tendering). This process excludes minor convictions such as traffic offences or personal disagreements between parties which have no bearing on the business operations of the person or Enterprise.

- a) When issuing RFXs, prospective Bidders must be requested to disclose whether the company or any of its directors were found guilty of a serious breach of the law during the preceding 5 Years.
- b) Should any prospective Bidder declare a conviction of a serious nature, the blacklisting process should be instituted without delay and dealt with expeditiously, whilst the evaluation of the bidder's Bid continues.
- c) Under no circumstances may any prospective Bidder be excluded from the evaluation process or overlooked for the award of business until such time as a final decision to blacklist has been made.

23.2.4 Grounds for blacklisting include a company/person recorded as being a company or person prohibited from doing business with the public sector on National Treasury's database of Restricted Suppliers or Register of Tender Defaulters.

23.3 WHO MAY BE BLACKLISTED?

The following persons / entities may be considered for blacklisting:

- 23.3.1 any person/company who has submitted a Bid in response to a bid request issued by Transnet;
- 23.3.2 any person/company who has concluded a contract/s with Transnet;
- 23.3.3 any person who has acted in the capacity of subcontractor to a supplier of Transnet;

23.3.4 any agent or employee of the company concerned, or his/her spouse who may be conducting the same business but under a different name;

23.3.5 Transnet employee found to be involved in fraudulent or corrupt activities;

23.3.6 companies associated with the person/s guilty of misconduct (i.e. entities owned, controlled or managed by such persons); and/or

23.3.7 any companies subsequently formed by the person(s) guilty of the misconduct or where such person(s) acquires a controlling stake in an existing company.

23.4 FACTORS TO CONSIDER BEFORE TAKING THE DECISION TO BLACKLIST

23.4.1 A decision to blacklist has far reaching implications for the company/person concerned. Therefore, Transnet must act fairly, reasonably and rationally whenever it decides to blacklist a company/person. The decision to blacklist must be considered on a case-by-case basis and must be based on the merits of the particular matter.

The following factors must be taken into account in deciding whether to blacklist a company/person:

- a) the gravity / seriousness of the offence/misconduct/breach;
- b) any previous offence/misconduct on the part of the company/person;
- c) any remedial action taken by the company, including steps to ensure that the misconduct will not be repeated;
- d) the seniority of the person(s) who acted in bad faith;
- e) the impact of the proposed blacklisting of the company on Transnet's operations;
- f) the reasonableness of the explanation for the misconduct;
- g) whether the company/person has received direct or indirect benefit as a result of the misconduct; and
- h) whether Transnet suffered actual or potential prejudice.

23.4.2 The decision to extend the blacklist to associated companies will be at the sole discretion of Transnet and must be carefully considered. Associated companies must not be blacklisted by default. The merits of each case will inform the decision as to whether a particular associated company will be blacklisted or not. In addition to considering the factors mentioned above, as a general rule the blacklist should only be extended to associated companies where the directors/members common to both entities were either directly involved in the misconduct against Transnet, or failed to take remedial action for a serious offence. Furthermore, it is important to consider whether the blacklisted director/member plays an active role in the associated company or has a controlling stake in the associated company.

23.5 GUIDELINES FOR DETERMINING AN APPROPRIATE PERIOD FOR BLACKLISTING

Blacklisting cannot be imposed for an indefinite period. The following is a general guideline on the number of Years of blacklisting to impose on suppliers found guilty of misconduct against Transnet:

TABLE 18

Grounds for Blacklisting	Suggested Period
Offences involving bad faith / dishonesty (e.g. theft, corruption, fraud, Fronting, misrepresentation, etc.)	Not less than 5 Years, and not exceeding 10 Years
Other misconduct (e.g. breach of contract, poor performance, etc.)	1 – 5 Years (However, Transnet reserves the right to impose a longer period of restriction to a maximum of 10 Years, depending on the gravity of the misconduct.)

23.6 BLACKLISTING PROCEDURE

The following procedure must be followed in order to blacklist any person/company:

- 23.6.1 As soon as an OD detects misconduct by a person/company falling within one of the grounds for blacklisting, the matter must immediately be reported to the procurement division of the OD concerned.
- 23.6.2 Procurement will review the motivation for the blacklisting. If possible grounds for blacklisting exist; a forensic audit may be conducted to establish whether the grounds for blacklisting are valid.
- 23.6.3 Should the forensic report establish that possible grounds for blacklisting exist; the OD AC shall be approached for approval to proceed with the blacklisting in principle.
- 23.6.4 Transnet Internal Audit will be requested to conduct ITC searches on the Company and its members/directors in order to ascertain the identity of all companies associated with such members/directors.
- 23.6.5 The matter must then be referred to the OD legal department or Group Legal where an OD does not have its own legal department, who will be responsible for the following:
 - a) The company, its directors and all associated entities are to be informed both by registered and hand delivered mail of the intention to blacklist, as well as reasons for the proposed blacklisting. The letter should also indicate whether Transnet intends to cancel any existing contracts with the supplier. Proof of delivery should be obtained. The companies/persons must be afforded a period of 14 Working Days within which to make representations as to why they should not be blacklisted or why existing contracts should not be cancelled.
 - b) After the 14-day period the Legal Department must consider the responses (if any) from the companies/persons. The motivation must then be completed and signed off by the Legal Department, Management and procurement.
- 23.6.6 The matter must then be submitted to the AC to consider whether or not to proceed with the blacklisting. Should the AC support the blacklisting motivation, the matter shall be forwarded with all supporting documentation to Group ISCM for further action where the GCSCO will consider the matter. If blacklisting is no longer recommended, the relevant Legal Department is to inform the OD and the relevant entity concerned of this decision.
- 23.6.7 If supported, Group ISCM will draft the final submission and attach all original documents including the relevant AC minutes for consideration by the GCFO.

23.6.8 Final approval for blacklisting will be made by GCFO.

23.6.9 Group ISCM will then notify all companies/persons by registered (or hand delivered) mail of the blacklisting. Group ISCM will also update and circulate the List of Excluded Bidders.

23.6.10 Group ISCM will notify the Transnet Content Bureau to update the RAMIS and SAP CLM system to either:

- a) block the blacklisted company(ies) on the system altogether if all existing contracts have been terminated and ensure that all payments already incurred have been settled; or
- b) ensure that no new contract may be loaded on the system if existing contracts with the company have not been terminated so that payments on the existing contracts may still be effected, and
- c) Publish the blacklist on Transnet's external website so that blacklisted entities may not be used as subcontractors or JV partners.

23.7 APPEAL AGAINST DECISION TO BLACKLIST

Any company/person against whom a decision with regard to exclusion from future business has been taken may make representations to the GCE whose decision shall be final.

23.8 RESCISSION OF A DECISION TO BLACKLIST

The Transnet GCFO or his duly authorised delegate may at any time, on good cause shown, rescind a decision taken or reduce the period of exclusion as initially determined.

23.9 ENFORCEMENT OF THE TRANSNET LIST OF EXCLUDED BIDDERS

Prior to the approval of the award of business by any AC, the Secretary of the AC shall verify that no business is awarded to companies or persons appearing on Transnet's List of Excluded Bidders. This will include verifying the identity numbers of the directors/members of the recommended Bidder against the identity numbers of the restricted persons on the List. The Secretary and Chairperson of the AC shall sign off a certificate stating that no business is awarded to entities or persons appearing on Transnet's List of Excluded Bidders. The certificate should be retained by the Secretary of the AC.

23.10 ANCILLARY ACTIONS

Furthermore, in cases of corruption or fraud, theft, extortion and forgery involving R100, 000.00 or more, Transnet must:

- a) act in terms of section 34 of the Prevention and Combating of Corrupt Activities Act 12 of 2004 and report the matter to the South African Police Services for further investigation.
- b) in addition to subparagraph (a) above Transnet may also, at its sole discretion, decide to institute criminal and/or civil action.

PROCUREMENT PROCEDURES MANUAL



Background and Context
Procurement planning
Go to Market
Evaluation and Adjudication
Contract Management

SECTION E
GOVERNANCE
STRUCTURES

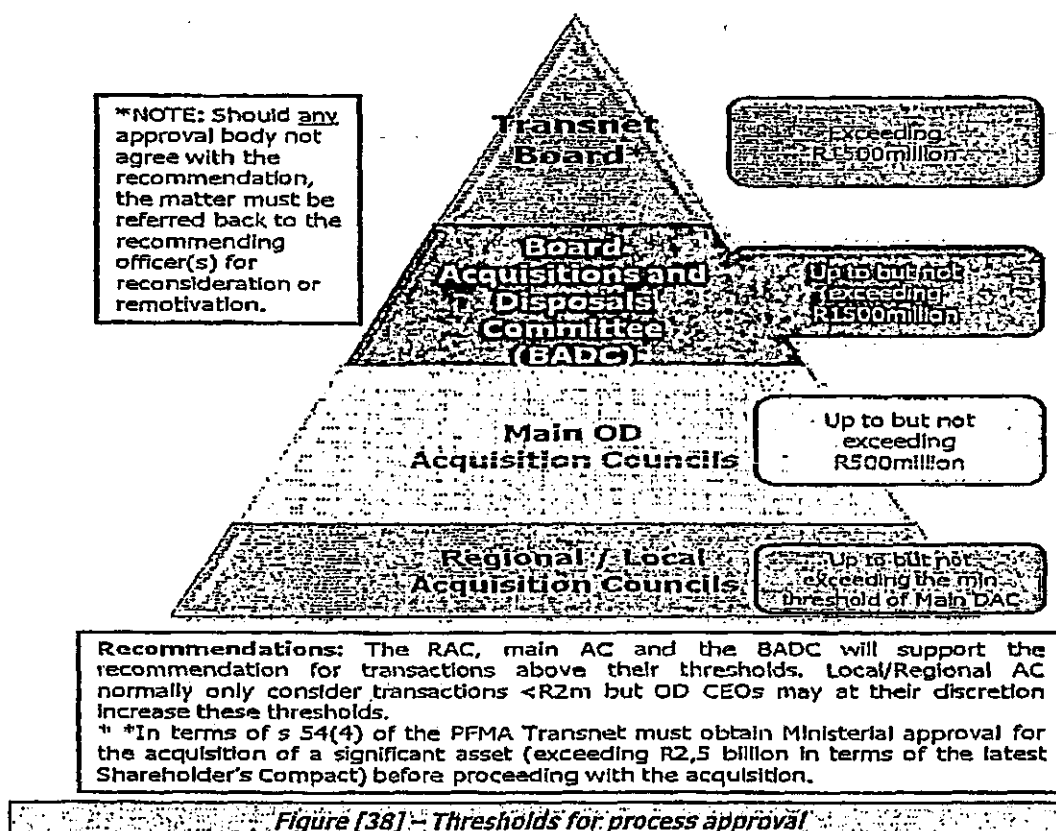
Chapter 24: Functions of Governance Structures and Departments

- Main OD Acquisition Councils
- Transnet Acquisition Council (TAC)
- Procurement Ombudsman
- Capital Investment Committee (CAPIC)
- Board Acquisitions and Disposals Committee (BADC)
- Integrated Supply Chain Management (ISCM)

Appendices

CHAPTER 24 : FUNCTIONS OF GOVERNANCE STRUCTURES AND DEPARTMENTS**24.1 MAIN ACQUISITION COUNCILS (Main AC)**

Each division will have its own main AC which will consider and approve all procurement processes, as well as the disposal of scrap, falling within its jurisdiction from R2 million, but not exceeding R500 million. This is subject to the discretion of the OD CEO to lower the R2 million threshold, or to create secondary ACs. Transactions exceeding the CEO's Delegated Powers will likewise be considered by the OD's main AC. If it concurs with the recommendation, the matter will be referred to the relevant governance structure for approval.



The Transnet Acquisition Council ("TAC") has similar roles and responsibilities to that of the ODs' main ACs but it caters for the Group Corporate Head Office requirements, as well as centre led transversal contracts. The TAC has no higher status than the ODs' main ACs.

24.1.1 Composition of the Main AC

The main AC is constituted as a governance committee of the OD CEO and shall consist of senior management members within the OD. The main AC or CEO shall have the discretion to create regional and/or local ACs, hereinafter referred to as secondary ACs. An AC shall be comprised of the following persons:

- a) A Chairperson, who will either be the CEO, or an executive or senior management member, shall be appointed by the CEO of the OD. The Chairpersons of secondary ACs will likewise be appointed by the main AC or CEO.

- b) A Deputy Chairperson, who shall be one of the members mentioned in paragraph (c) below and who shall be appointed by the OD CEO or elected by the AC at a properly constituted meeting.
- c) Members, all of whom are senior Transnet employees in the particular OD or where applicable seconded from Transnet Group, selected by virtue of their specific expertise or business focus, appointed by the CEO, with the clear proviso that the heads of Procurement, Finance, Legal and Risk in the OD will be mandatory appointments.
 - (i) Members must be capable of exercising sound, unbiased judgement and offer constructive comment.
 - (ii) It is a minimum requirement for members and appointed alternates to attend the annual training course on AC Roles and Responsibilities, Procurement and Bid Evaluation, presented by the Group Governance Function.
- d) ACs may, at the discretion of the OD CEO or Chairperson, opt to appoint alternates for its members. Should the AC opt to appoint alternates, each member may, in writing, nominate one alternate. Alternates must be formally appointed by the CEO. Should the member be unable to attend a scheduled meeting, the appointed alternate should attend in his/her stead. All alternates are to be of suitable seniority to represent the member adequately and to make decisions on the member's behalf.
- e) ACs may, at the discretion of the CEO/Chairperson, opt to appoint members on an ex officio basis. Such members shall not be counted to constitute a quorum and shall have no vote.
- f) Secretary: The CEO or duly authorised delegate shall appoint an employee of Transnet as secretary to the AC. The incumbent must have extensive procurement and governance knowledge and experience, and should ideally be part of the procurement structure of the particular OD. However, to ensure a proper segregation of duties, the Secretary should report directly to the chairperson for purposes of day-to-day operations and performance management. This is to avoid any perceived conflict of interest which may jeopardise the objectiveness of the Secretary, as procurement will inevitably be tabling the vast majority of submissions.

24.1.2 Primary Mandate (Main AC)

To consider all recommendations from the OD with regard to the award of external contracts for the procurement of Goods and Services, or the disposal of scrap, where the total value of the business exceeds R2 million (subject to the discretion of the CEO to lower such threshold, or to create secondary ACs – see paragraph 24.1.3 below). Likewise such ACs will also consider any subsequent amendments to the contracts falling within their jurisdiction.

24.1.3 Secondary Acquisition Councils

The Main AC or the CEO of an OD may at their discretion decide to lower the limit set in paragraph 24.1.2 above and/or introduce similar secondary structures on local or regional level, to cater for matters falling below the jurisdiction of the main AC. The Terms of Reference of all ACs have been standardised, except for the ambits and delegations applicable to secondary ACs. The thresholds must be clearly stipulated in the relevant appendices to the Terms of Reference of the respective Main and secondary ACs. It is also a requirement that the Divisional Delegation of Authority, applicable to the signing authorities of Individuals (similar to the Transnet DOA

Framework) be included as part of the relevant main and secondary ACs' Terms of Reference so as to ensure that there is no uncertainty as to the approval thresholds.

(Refer to DOA Summary Section A, Chapter 6)

Figure [39] below illustrates the current AC hierarchy within the Transnet Group.

Acquisition Council Hierarchy at Transnet

KEY

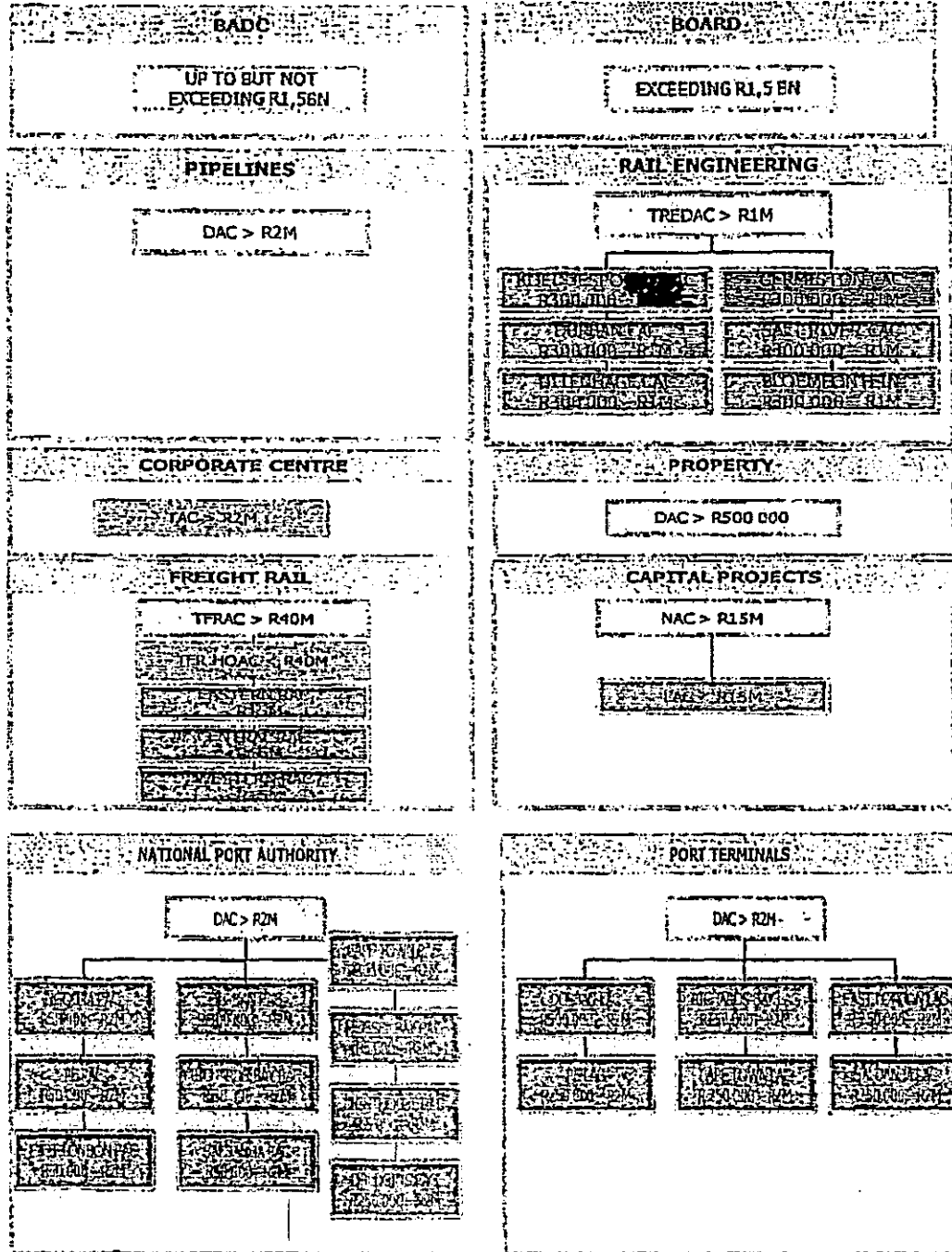
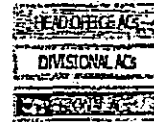


Figure [39] Acquisition Council Hierarchy at Transnet**24.1.4 Term**

Members and alternates will be appointed for a specific term. The letter of appointment shall clearly state the term of appointment (start and end dates) and also whether the appointee is a full member or an alternate to a specific member. The OD CEO shall have the power to, at any time, remove any member from the AC and fill the resulting vacancy.

24.1.5 Confidentiality

Members are required to treat all information they receive as AC members/alternates as strictly confidential. A confidentiality agreement shall be signed by the member at the start of his/her tenure. Information shall not be divulged without proper and specific authority.

Should a member wish to have anything clarified or explained prior to a scheduled meeting or during circulation of a matter, such query should be referred to the AC Secretary.

All AC records shall be kept securely in the custody of the Secretary of the AC. These records shall not be disclosed without proper approval. Likewise, third party confidential information shall not be disclosed unless required by legislation or a court of law.

24.1.6 Conflict of Interest

Instances may arise when a member of the AC or an alternate has a direct or indirect interest in a particular transaction/project or has been or can be deemed to have been personally involved in the RFX process or business decision which gave rise to a recommendation to the AC. In such cases, he/she shall declare such interest by means of a standard declaration of interest form before the meeting commences and also when the AC deliberates the specific matter. Declaration of a **direct interest** will result in automatic recusal. Should an AC member declare an **indirect interest** in a matter before the AC, he/she must declare his/her interest and the Chairman will determine whether the member should recuse him/herself. The reasons for this decision must be officially recorded and kept on file. This will also apply to circulation ('Round Robin' items).

24.1.7 Meetings / Attendance

The AC shall meet at predetermined intervals. Where there is the need, special meetings may be convened by the Chairperson.

Members are required to attend all meetings of the AC. For this reason, AC meetings shall be scheduled well in advance. Should a member not be able to attend a specific meeting, his/her alternate must attend. Attendance and participation by members should be a SPO or at least a KPI, on the member's performance management scorecard. This should be measured by the Chairperson of the AC.

Should a member be absent for more than three consecutive meetings, the Chairperson shall pursue the matter with the member concerned and may recommend to the CEO that such member vacates his/her position on the AC.

Individuals who are not members or alternates may, at the invitation of the Chairperson, attend a meeting of the AC in an *ex officio* capacity or to provide clarification on a specific matter(s). Such individual(s) shall be informed that the information which they will be providing will be formally recorded as part of the minutes of the meeting.

24.1.8 Quorum

A majority of the members/alternates appointed at any given time shall form a quorum.

Should exceptional circumstances necessitate that, both a member and his/her alternate attend the same proceeding, both votes may be taken into consideration to form a quorum as members. Their alternates shall then be appointed on the AC by virtue of their own specific expertise. The provisions of paragraph 24.1.7 above should however be observed.

24.1.9 Voting and deliberation

The Chairperson shall submit any matter to the vote of the members of the AC in the event of a difference of opinion or when requested to do so by a member of the AC.

In the event of a tie, the Chairperson shall have a casting vote in addition to his/her deliberative vote.

24.1.10 Duties of the AC**a) Chairperson**

The Chairperson of the AC shall chair the proceedings at the meetings and exercise the powers vested in him in terms of these procedures and any other DoA.

b) Deputy Chairperson

In the absence of the Chairperson, the Deputy Chairperson shall act in his/her stead and shall be empowered to perform all the duties and exercise all the powers vested in the Chairperson under the laid-down procedures and any other DoA.

In the absence of, both, the Chairperson and the Deputy Chairperson from a meeting of the AC, a Chairperson shall be elected out of the members/alternates who are present.

c) Secretary

The Secretary shall undertake the tasks as imposed upon him/her by the Transnet Supply Chain Policy and Procurement Procedures Manual (PPM) and other relevant directives, or by the Chairperson of the AC or the GISCM Function or the CEO of the OD.

The Secretary is regarded as the "gatekeeper" of the AC and he/she has to be a person with impeccable integrity and honesty, who has the assertiveness to make a positive contribution to the effective functioning of the AC. The Secretary:-

- (i) has the duty to act in good faith, duty of care, with skill and diligence and avoid conflicts of interest;
- (ii) shall keep a central bid (RFX) register and shall be responsible for the issuing of RFP, RFQ and RFI numbers in respect of all bids issued by the OD to the external market, falling within the monetary ambit of the AC. He/she will report on progress with regards to completion of the process. (Register template available on the ISCM Transnet Intranet);
- (iii) shall give impartial advice and act in the best interests of Transnet and hence should not be subject to undue influence by any of the AC Members. The integrity of the Secretary's position must be protected as it is one of the most effective internal controls available in governance;

- (iv) shall be the only person, apart from the AC Chairperson, to consider authorising procurement staff to communicate with Bidders in the period between the closing of the bids and the award of the business;
- (v) shall keep the AC members abreast of the latest policies and procedures and any amendments thereto;
- (vi) shall provide the AC, as a whole and members individually, with comprehensive, practical support and guidance as to how their responsibilities should be properly discharged in the best interest of Transnet;
- (vii) has an important role to play in the induction of new or inexperienced members and shall assist the chairperson in determining the annual AC meeting schedule, training plan and administration of other issues relevant to the AC; and
- (viii) provides a central source of guidance and advice to bid and contract administrators throughout the OD, end users and the bidding public.

Other responsibilities of the Secretary are to:

- (ix) plan and arrange meetings of the AC, formulate and distribute proper agenda packs (submissions in the prescribed format) for the meetings of the AC. (Standardised submission templates are available on the ISCM Transnet Intranet);
- (x) ensure that all members attending a specific meeting of the AC are provided with the necessary forms to declare any interest in matters serving before the AC in that meeting;
- (xi) ensure that a proper register of these declarations of interest is kept with the minutes of that particular meeting;
- (xii) arrange for and securely keep a voice recording of the proceedings and, in writing, record proper minutes of the proceedings, deliberations, decisions and resolutions of the AC. He/she should furthermore obtain the signature of the Chairperson on each individual resolution during or as soon as possible after the meeting, communicate such resolutions to the relevant role-players and securely keep copies thereof for record purposes.

The minutes shall contain -

- an outline of material proceedings and deliberations by the AC; and
- all recommendations, decisions, resolutions, provisional approvals and directives issued by the AC.

A draft copy of the minutes shall be circulated to members of the AC prior to the next scheduled meeting.

Before the next scheduled meeting, a member may request that the draft minutes be amended to include certain specific deliberations, etc. and such proposed amendments shall be included by the Secretary.

The Secretary shall table the draft minutes at the next meeting of the AC, for confirmation by the AC and signature by the Chairperson;

- (xiii) ensure that, by means of a proper certificate as per the prescribed format (template, available on the Transnet ISCM Intranet), duly signed by the Secretary and the Chairperson of the AC, that no business is being recommended for award to an entity(ies) or person(s) appearing on Transnet's List of Excluded Bidders/Contractors(Blacklist). Such certificate should be kept and securely filed with the minutes of each meeting of the AC;

(xiv) be responsible for the receipt, opening and stamping of Bids where this duty has been assigned to the AC Secretary. Refer to Chapter 17 for the rules and procedures pertaining to the bid opening process);

In respect of AC submissions:

- (xv) verify the comparative schedule/evaluation, plus all the facts stipulated in submissions to the AC;
- (xvi) ensure that authorities for all communication and negotiation are indicated in the submission to the AC, and the outcome of such communication/negotiation is stipulated in detail in the submission;
- (xvii) ensure that documentary evidence is available (copies to be kept on AC file) in respect of all facts presented and statements made in the submission;
- (xviii) proactively pursue the clarification of uncertainties prior to the meeting, so that matters are not referred back unnecessarily;
- (xix) edit* submissions to ensure that all requirements are met before the matter is tabled at the meeting of the AC. (*Submissions are not physically edited but an annexure must reflect all corrections and queries resolved by the Secretary); and
- (xx) draft "AC circulars" on behalf of the AC in respect of directives to be issued by the AC.
- (xxi) ensure that members are provided with an agenda at least 3 Working Days before any scheduled AC meeting, in order for them to do the necessary preparation before the meeting. Should a member have any queries on a matter on the agenda, he/she should raise these with the Secretary timeously, in order that the Secretary may obtain clarity before the meeting.

24.1.11 Responsibilities and Obligations of Members

- a) Members take collective and individual responsibility for processes followed, decisions taken and resolutions carried by the AC.
- b) In performing their legal duties, each AC member shall -
 - (i) act honestly and in good faith, whilst taking into account the policies and business objectives of the company with a view to fostering the best interests of Transnet;
 - (ii) exercise the duty of care, diligence and skill that a reasonably prudent person would exercise in comparable circumstances;
 - (iii) act fairly, impartially and objectively, and not allow prejudice or bias or influence of others to override objectivity; and
 - (iv) act professionally at all times.
- c) Duty of care and diligence:
 - (i) Members owe a common law duty towards Transnet to act with due care and diligence. Members are consequently liable for any prejudice suffered through such Member's failure to carry on the business with the degree of care and diligence that may reasonably be expected from a person of his/her knowledge and experience. Hence, Members must fully inform themselves of all material information available in the AC Pack so as to ensure that they act with due care in the discharge of their duties.

- (ii) Members shall study the AC pack and properly prepare for a meeting of the AC prior to AC meetings to ensure that they familiarise themselves with the matters so that there is optimum participation in deliberation and decision making. They shall also make every effort to attend all meetings of the AC.

d) Members shall:

- (i) understand and weigh alternative courses of action;
- (ii) weigh benefits versus potential harm when considering specific courses of action; and
- (iii) ensure that there is no breakdown in effective corporate governance and no impairment in their ability to carry out their responsibilities.

e) Duty to act honestly, ethically and in good faith:

- (i) Members shall always act honestly, ethically and in good faith with a view to the best interests of Transnet. Members shall avoid a conflict between the interest of Transnet and their own and, in particular, shall not derive any personal benefit from matters submitted to the AC for consideration.

- (ii) Members shall not act in bad faith due to bad judgement or negligence.

e.g. Members do not act in good faith when they know they are making material decisions without adequate preparation and deliberation and simply do not care if their decisions cause breach of governance principles and promote Fruitless and Wasteful Expenditure and consequent financial loss to Transnet.

24.1.12 Functions of the AC

- a) To consider all recommendations from the OD with regard to the award of external contracts for the procurement of Goods and Services, or the disposal of scrap metal, where the total value of the business exceeds R2 million (subject to the discretion of the CEO to lower such threshold).
- b) To consider all subsequent amendments to material provisions (i.e. which have a cost or risk implication) of contracts exceeding R2 million or where the original value of the contract plus the cumulative value of the amendments will exceed R2 million.
- c) To consider and approve the non-award of business against any RFX falling within its ambit.
- d) To consider recommendations to approach the market to solicit Bids in respect of a contract with a period of more than two Years, regardless of the value (alternatively RFX to provide for different options).
- e) The AC must be proactive and clarify uncertainties emanating from submissions, prior to the meeting. This will ensure that matters are not referred back unnecessarily, causing delays. Under no circumstances should matters be referred back by ACs for trivialities.
- f) To consider all recommendations in respect of bids as well as any extension of existing contracts of which the original period, or the original period plus the extension of the period together is/are longer than two Years regardless of monetary value, and all subsequent amendments of material provisions to such contracts.

- g) With regard to paragraphs 24.1.12 a) and b) above, ACs or the CEO may at their discretion lower these limits and/or introduce similar structures on local or regional level, to cater for matters falling below the jurisdiction of the AC.
- h) To consider and approve the framing of the OD's Lists of Approved Suppliers/Goods, as well as any amendments to such Approved Lists, and to administer such Approved Lists utilised within the OD. This function may not be delegated to Local / Regional ACs.
- i) To consider and make recommendations to the Group ISCM regarding all aspects pertaining to Transnet's List of Excluded Bidders. The GISCM shall administer the List on behalf of the Transnet Group.
- j) Secondary ACs to refer recommended exclusion matters to the main OD AC (where applicable), which will consider and if supported, refer to Group ISCM for finalisation and onward transmission to the GCFO for approval. Refer to Chapter 23 for Blacklisting procedure.
- k) To monitor/administer the opening of all bids irrespective of the value. ACs may at its own discretion and depending on internal structures, delegate the opening of bids under a certain monetary value, to procurement offices or secondary ACs, provided that it has satisfied itself that proper procedures and controls as specified in the PPM are in place and are monitored on an on-going basis.
- l) To obtain statistics and review, at regular intervals, details of all transactions falling below the AC's jurisdiction (See template available on the Transnet GISCM Intranet). Any alleged irregularities or trends that may arise out of the purchase, sale, hiring or letting of Goods and the procurement of Services, shall be investigated and corrective measures recommended by the AC if deemed necessary.
- m) To refer to the Governance COE, (GISCM) for guidance/direction, any policy and/or legal question/s which arise out of the laid-down procedures or out of a bid, contract or contract amendment.
- n) To exercise such powers and perform such duties as may be conferred or imposed by the laid-down procedures.
- o) To perform other functions as the BADC, the GCE, the Governance COE (Group ISCM) or the OD CEO may determine or deem necessary from time to time.

Notes:

- Purely income generating contracts fall outside the scope of this document. However, the acquisition of Goods and Services to give effect to such income generating contract, fall within the scope of the PPM.
- The AC may refer a matter back only for reconsideration or re-motivation. It may under no circumstances change a submission or change the award of the business. On receipt of a revised/re-motivated submission the AC will again consider the matter. Refer to paragraph 24.1.16d) below for the procedure to be followed in instances where the AC still does not agree with the revised/re-motivated submission of the Manager/procurement.

24.1.13 Powers of the AC

When considering any new transaction or any Material Amendment/s to an existing contract, the AC has the power to, at its discretion:-

- a) call for any files or papers dealing with offers, enquiries, the Invitation and evaluation of Bids in the procurement of Goods and Services;
- b) request any information which any employee may have at his disposal relating to the supply of, and/or payment for Goods or Services;
- c) require any employee to provide information/advice or to attend any AC meeting in an advisory capacity;
- d) invite any Consultant from the private sector to provide additional skills to the AC when necessary;
- e) consider and recommend the condonation of any non-compliance with the laid down policies, procedures or directives for sign-off by the CEO en-route to the GCE or higher in terms of the Transnet DoA Framework;
- f) offer comments, or note matters submitted for information;
- g) refer any submission back for reconsideration/re-motivation;
- h) withdraw an item from the agenda of any meeting of the AC, provided that the reasons for such withdrawal are duly recorded in the minutes of the meeting and communicated to the submitter by the Secretary;
- i) report any anomalies, irregularities or non-compliance with laid-down policies, procedures or directives to the CEO (should the AC not be chaired by the CEO himself / herself);
- j) exercise a discretion in those instances not explicitly provided in the laid-down procedures or as may be entrusted to it by the relevant policies and procedures or the Board Acquisitions and Disposals Committee, the Governance COE (Group ISCM) or the OD's CEO;
- k) refer any matter or issue arising from the exercise of the powers or the performance of the aforementioned duties to the Governance COE (Group ISCM);
- l) issue 'AC Circulars' to address any trends or issues arising from matters serving before the AC; and
- m) periodically review copies of procurement gift registers.

24.1.14 AC approvals and provisos

- a) The AC does not possess any executive authority to award external contracts for the procurement of Goods and Services or disposal of assets.
- b) All AC approvals are subject to the following provisos:
 - (i) there is still the need for the purchase, sale, hiring, or letting of Goods and procurement of Services before the non-acceptance/regret letters to the unsuccessful Bidder/s and the acceptance of the winning Bid to the Successful Bidder are communicated by a Manager with the appropriate delegation of authority to sign the contract;
 - (ii) the financial provision is adequate;
 - (iii) the best interest of Transnet is being served at the time of concluding the contract, and

- (iv) the contract is signed by the Manager with the appropriate delegation of authority.

24.1.15 Recording of votes via circulation ('Round Robin')

- a) In urgent cases where the OD would be substantially prejudiced if a submission is held over until the next scheduled meeting of the AC, the papers relating to the specific matter may be circulated to the members of the AC. This will be at the discretion of the Chairperson, but subject to the right of any member to demand a meeting. There should be a pre-determined deadline by which all members respond (depending on the urgency). The members who respond by the deadline must record their votes in writing.
 - (i) Unanimous approval by a quorum of members so made by the stipulated deadline shall be deemed to constitute a resolution of the AC. Such resolution shall be communicated to the recommending officer by the Secretary as soon as possible thereafter.
 - (ii) The Secretary may extend the deadline should a quorum of votes not be attained by the initial deadline. Alternatively, a special meeting of the AC must be called by the Secretary, with the consent of the Chairperson. Members have the right to cast their vote until the deadline, irrespective of whether a quorum has already been attained.
 - (iii) If the deadline has lapsed, and a unanimous vote by a quorum of members has been attained, no further votes will be considered.
 - (iv) A resolution taken in such manner shall be officially noted and recorded in the minutes of the next scheduled meeting of the AC.
- b) In exceptional circumstances and only due to the non-availability of members, the votes of a member and alternate may be taken into account in order to attain a quorum. The stipulation contained in paragraph 24.1.7, should, however, be observed.

24.1.16 Disagreement with a decision of the AC

- a) In the event of a matter being referred back by the AC for reconsideration of the recommendation made by the recommending officer/evaluation panel, the recommending officer/evaluation panel shall:-
 - b) make a revised submission to the AC; or
 - c) should he/she disagree with the reasoning of the AC he/she shall, with the concurrence of his/her executive officer, re-motivate the recommendation and resubmit to the AC, whereafter the AC shall reconsider the matter; and
 - d) should the AC still not concur in the revised recommendation, the recommending officer shall refer the matter to the CEO, who shall rule on the matter.

24.1.17 Interpretation of PPM and Government Policy

In cases where the AC requires guidance on Government policy matters and in terms of interpretation of the PPM, guidance must be sought from the GCSCO.

24.1.18 Submissions to the AC (Précis)

- a) All submissions to the AC shall be in the required format. The Secretariat may provide assistance to draw up a précis. (Refer to SAP CLM and the Transnet Group ISCM Intranet for the generic templates).
- b) The Governance Function of Group ISCM is the custodian of all submission templates and any suggested changes thereto must be recommended to that office for consideration and implementation.
- c) All submissions to the AC must be accompanied by all the relevant supporting documentation, e.g. original bid documents, authority to communicate or negotiate, etc.
- d) All submissions should be submitted to the secretariat well before the scheduled meeting, to afford the secretariat enough time to properly vet the submissions. It is suggested that submissions are handed in by 12h00, seven Working Days before a scheduled meeting of the AC.

24.1.19 Reporting/Monitoring

- a) The main OD AC reports to the CEO through its chairperson.
- b) Secondary ACs report to the main ACs, and are responsible to monitor transactions falling below their minimum thresholds, except for TCP, where the Local ACs act autonomously.
- c) Reports of all the ACs must include the following:
 - (i) statistics required for the compilation of the Group ISCM Governance dashboard;
 - (ii) updates about the council's activities, as appropriate;
 - (iii) sensitisation on trends, irregularities and other anomalies or matters that may significantly impact on the management of contracts and bids of the OD or cause reputational harm to Transnet.
- d) The performance of the main OD AC shall be monitored by the CEO.
- e) Local / Regional ACs' performance will be monitored by the main OD AC.
- f) The performance of the individual members and secretariat shall be monitored by the chairperson of the AC.

24.2 TRANSNET ACQUISITION COUNCIL (TAC)**24.2.1 Role and Functions of the TAC**

The TAC has similar roles and responsibilities to that of the OD main AC's. It will cater for the Group Corporate Head Office requirements, as well as centre led transversal contracts. OD-led transversal contracts will be dealt with by the leading OD main AC. The TAC will have no higher status than the ODs' main AC's.

- 24.2.2 Refer to section 24.1 regarding the main OD AC as this paragraph is also applicable to the TAC. Any powers assigned to a CEO with regard to the Main AC will apply to the GCFO (or his delegate) as far as the TAC is concerned.

24.2.3 Composition of the TAC

- a) The TAC shall consist of senior management members within Group Corporate Head Office who shall be appointed by the GCFO for a specific term:
 - (i) A Chairperson, who will either be the GCFO or an executive or senior management member appointed by the GCFO;
 - (ii) A Deputy Chairperson, who shall be one of the members mentioned in paragraph c) hereof;
 - (iii) Members with alternates, all of whom are Transnet employees in the Group Corporate Head Office, selected by virtue of their specific expertise or business focus. They must be capable of exercising sound, unbiased judgement and offer constructive comment.
- (iv) The Heads of Procurement, Legal, Financial Planning, Tax and Risk in the TCC shall be mandatory appointments.

24.3 PROCUREMENT OMBUDSMAN

The Transnet Procurement Ombudsman (the Ombudsman) is appointed to provide Bidders as well as Transnet with a fair, expeditious, and effective dispute resolution process. The Ombudsman acts independently and objectively in resolving disputes and is not influenced by anybody in making his or her decisions.

Below is a short summary of the role of the Ombudsman. For more information, refer to the Terms of Reference of the Procurement Ombudsman, available on the ISCM Transnet Intranet.

24.3.1 The role of the Procurement Ombudsman

- a) The role of the Ombudsman is to enhance the integrity and fairness of Transnet's procurement processes by providing an independent and objective assessment of complaints which are lodged by unsuccessful Bidders regarding any aspect of Transnet's bid process.
- b) As a general rule, the Ombudsman will only consider complaints pertaining to bids valued at R5 million and above.
- c) Complaints involving bids below R5m must be sent to the CPO of the relevant Transnet OD for review.

24.3.2 Powers of the Ombudsman

- a) The Ombudsman has the power to conduct a full investigation of a complaint and to make appropriate recommendations to the CPO and the CEO of the relevant OD of Transnet regarding the appropriate remedial measures to be undertaken.
- b) Such measures may include, but are not limited to the following:
 - (i) cancelling a bid if there is a material irregularity;
 - (ii) referring a bid back for re-evaluation;
 - (iii) amending a bid decision;
 - (iv) recommending that letters of censure be sent to any Transnet official; and/or
 - (v) the institution of disciplinary, civil or criminal proceedings where appropriate.

- c) The Ombudsman may also on his own initiative launch a review of any bid award, regardless of whether a formal complaint was received or not.
- d) An investigation by the Ombudsman of any bid award may also be initiated by an internal referral.
- e) In most instances the Ombudsman will conduct the investigation without the need for a formal, oral hearing. However, in highly exceptional circumstances, the Ombudsman may in his sole discretion conduct an oral hearing if it would assist with the resolution of the matter.

24.3.3 The obligations of Transnet's Operating Divisions

- a) Transnet's ODs shall:-
 - (i) immediately refer any complaints received over the threshold referred to in paragraphs 24.3.1b) and 24.3.1c) above to the Ombudsman;
 - (ii) act within these Terms of Reference;
 - (iii) expeditiously comply with requests made by the Ombudsman in terms of the Terms of Reference and Operational Procedures;
 - (iv) provide the Ombudsman with unrestricted access to relevant information, documentation or persons in relation to an investigation; and
 - (v) abide by the decision of the CPO and the CEO of the relevant OD of Transnet regarding the implementation of the Ombudsman's recommendation.
- b) Transnet's ODs shall not:
 - (i) prevent a Bidder from making use of the services of the Ombudsman;
 - (ii) provide the Ombudsman with any misleading information; or
 - (iii) act vindictively toward a Bidder who made use of the services of the Ombudsman.

24.4 CAPITAL INVESTMENT COMMITTEE (CAPIC)

24.4.1 Purpose

The CAPIC shall ensure that the resources that Transnet SOC Ltd ("the Group") invests for the development of capital projects are strategically managed and shall to this end-

- a) Ensure that decisions relating to capital expenditure are consistent with the strategic focus of the Group; and
- b) Ensure that capital expenditure complies with the budget and business plans approved by the Board.

24.4.2 Composition

CAPIC is constituted as a committee of the Transnet SOC Ltd Group Executive Committee:

- *Chairperson* - GCFO
- *Secretary* - Group Company Secretary

The following shall be members of CAPIC:

- GCFO (Chairperson)

- GCE (*ex officio*)
- Group Executive - Transnet Capital Projects
- Chief Executive Officers - TNPA, TPT, TFR, TRE and Pipelines
- Chief Information Officer
- Group Treasurer
- General Manager - Group Financial Planning
- Group Chief Supply Chain Officer

The GCE may at any time change the composition of this Committee or determine that a person other than the GCFO chair meetings of CAPIC.

The Committee may invite such other officers of the Group as it deems fit to be in attendance at CAPIC meetings.

24.4.3 Terms of Reference

CAPIC shall:

- a) Ensure that investment in respect of capital projects is consistent with the strategic focus of the Group and deals with the business of the Group in an integrated manner;
- b) Ensure that capital expenditure is in accordance with the budget and business plans approved by the Board;
- c) Determine the factors that shall inform the prioritisation of any capital expenditure project over another;
- d) Monitor the implementation of project plans to ensure that approved capital expenditure projects are carried out with minimum delays;
- e) Review and amend, subject to the limitations of the Board approved budget, expenditure plans in respect of any project should it, as a result of any unforeseen and unavoidable circumstances, be necessary to effect such amendment;
- f) Ensure that in respect of each capital investment project proposed for consideration by CAPIC, certification is given that there was proper compliance with applicable processes relating to amongst others, risk management and that such projects reflect optimum value for money; and
- g) Conduct post-implementation reviews through, amongst others, external auditors, to determine, amongst other things, whether value has indeed been derived by the Group as a result of the relevant capital investment.

24.5 BOARD ACQUISITIONS AND DISPOSALS COMMITTEE (BADCO)

24.5.1 Purpose

To ensure that the Board's composition and structure enables it to fulfil the obligations of the Board mandate and advance and maintain the Group's acquisition and disposal policies.

24.5.2 Composition

- a) The Group Acquisition and Disposal Committee ("the Committee") is constituted as a committee of the Transnet Limited Board.
- b) At least four directors of the Group shall be members of this Committee, the majority of whom must be independent non-executive directors. The GCFO and the GCE shall be ex officio members of the Committee.
- c) The members of the Committee will be selected by virtue of their specific expertise or business focus, but with a preference to members with specific experience in procurement practices, law and finance. They must be capable of exercising sound, unbiased judgment in order to fulfil their duties.
- d) The Secretary shall be the Group Company Secretary.
- e) The remuneration of the Chairperson and Committee members will be determined by the Group Remuneration Committee and approved by the Board in accordance with the fee structure approved by the Shareholder.

The following shall attend by invitation:

- a) The Group Chief Supply Chain Officer; and
- b) Such other persons determined by the Committee, who may include, where deemed necessary by the Committee, members of senior management and independent acquisition and disposal experts.

24.5.3 Roles and Responsibilities :

- a) The Committee has an independent role, operating as an overseer of the acquisition and disposal function within Transnet. The Committee will also have the power to consider and approve acquisitions and disposals in terms of its mandate from the Board.
- b) The Committee does not assume the functions of management, which remain the responsibility of the executive directors, officers and other members of senior management.

24.5.4 Authority

- a) The Committee has authority to:-
 - (i) have access to any information it needs to fulfil its responsibilities;
 - (ii) seek independent advice at the Group's expense, subject to Transnet's procurement policies and procedures;
 - (iii) have direct access to any executive of the Group or its subsidiaries; and
 - (iv) make amendments to the mandate subject to approval by the Transnet SOC Ltd Board.
- b) The Committee may form, and delegate authority to, committees and may delegate authority to one or more designated members of the Committee.
- c) The Committee shall make the recommendations to the Board that it deems appropriate on any area within the ambit of its terms of reference where action or improvement is required.

24.5.5 Terms of reference

The Committee shall:

- a) Oversee an annual review of Transnet's Procurement Procedures Manual and the Construction Procurement Policy, Processes, Procedures and Methods within Transnet Capital Projects and ratify any amendments thereto;
- b) Pre approve bids within its delegated authority up to the maximum of investment decision/budget, before the bids are issued to market. This includes acquisition and disposal of movable and immovable property, capital investments, operational expenditure, the provision and acquisition of Services, maintenance, refurbishment and the establishment of infrastructure, purchasing of fuel, but excludes guarantees, indemnities and securities;
- c) Monitor trends in general procurement spend;
- d) Monitor trends in SD spend and progress on plan (includes support of National Growth Plan, SD, preferential procurement, and Enterprise development);
- e) Monitor compliance with PFMA and related supply chain management norms and standards and advise the Board of potential risks in relation to irregular as well as Fruitless and Wasteful Expenditure emanating from procurement practices;
- f) Consider strategic acquisitions and disposals and make recommendations to the Board;
- g) Consider, for recommendation to the Board, potential private sector participation models;
- h) Approve, where so delegated by the Board of Directors, the award of bids in accordance with the Company's Delegation of Authority Framework. The Committee may approve modifications to bid awards where the cumulative value of the contract plus the modification does not exceed the limits of its delegation of authority as stated in the Delegation of Authority Framework document.
- i) In considering the approval of a bid or Confinement, the Committee shall have regard to any recommendation made by the relevant AC or senior official within Transnet.
- j) The Committee shall submit a list of all bids falling within its delegated authority and approved by it to the Board for information purposes only. With regards to matters above its maximum threshold, it will consider such matters in the normal manner, and then make a recommendation to the Transnet Board.
- k) When considering any Bid or any amendments thereto, the Committee may:-
 - (i) Investigate any activity within its Mandate;
 - (ii) ask questions and request information or advice from any person;
 - (iii) request any employee to appear before the Committee;
 - (iv) refer the submission back for reconsideration;
 - (v) note matters presented to it for information, and/or offer comments; and
 - (vi) reserve a decision pending further information or clarification of a specific matter.

- l) The Committee shall also approve disposals in line with the Delegation of Authority Framework document.

24.6 INTEGRATED SUPPLY CHAIN MANAGEMENT (ISCM)

24.6.2 Composition

Using best practice principles, and undertaking a collaborative approach across all ODs and Group, an Integrated 'one supply chain management (ISCM)' strategy and operating model has been developed with centre led Centres of Excellence (COEs) with cross functional teams, comprised of divisional and corporate task team members, to deliver value through improved efficiencies and compliance to the regulatory environment. The ISCM Governance hierarchy is depicted in the flow chart below.

ISCM Governance Structure

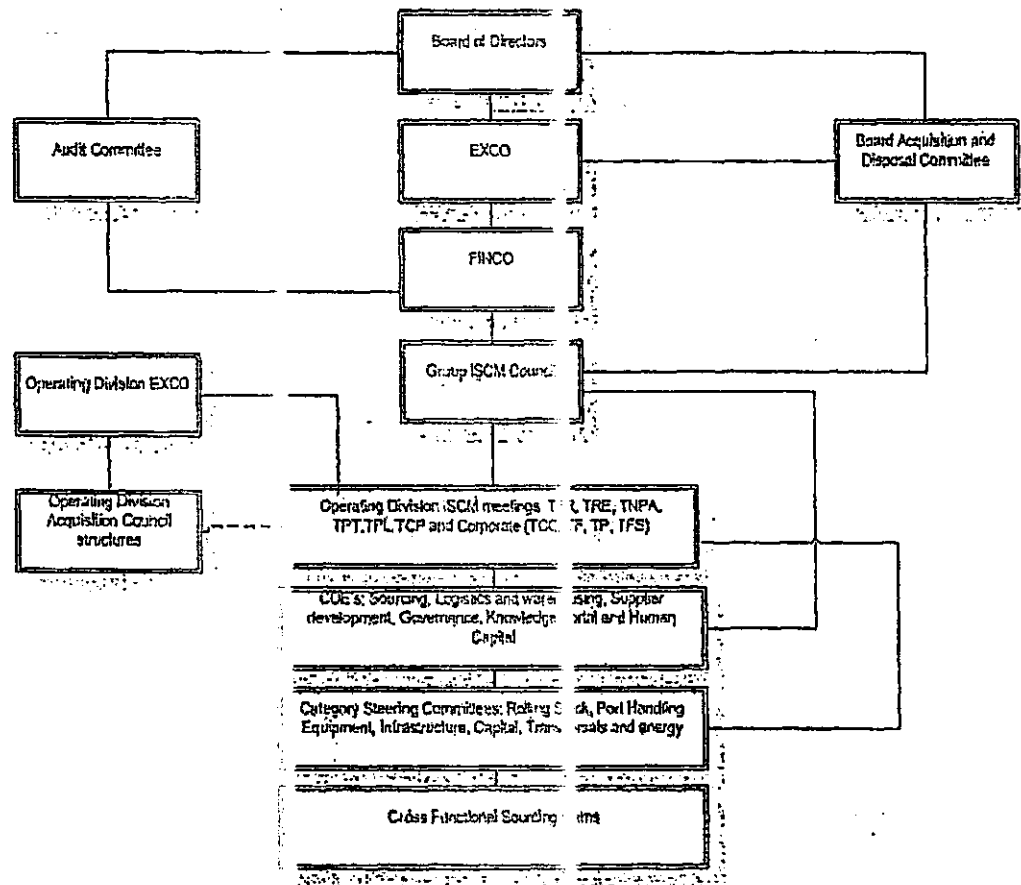


Figure [40] – ISCM Governance hierarchy

24.6.3 Centres of Excellence

- a) Centres of Excellence (COEs) are cross-divisional teams focusing on a particular functional area. They focus on tactical issues relating to the functional area, and are aimed at identifying and leveraging on the areas of excellence in Transnet. Key strategic objectives will be executed through the COEs with a risk mitigation plan supported by Enterprise Risk Management (ERM).

The current COEs within ISCM are as follows (Figure [41]):

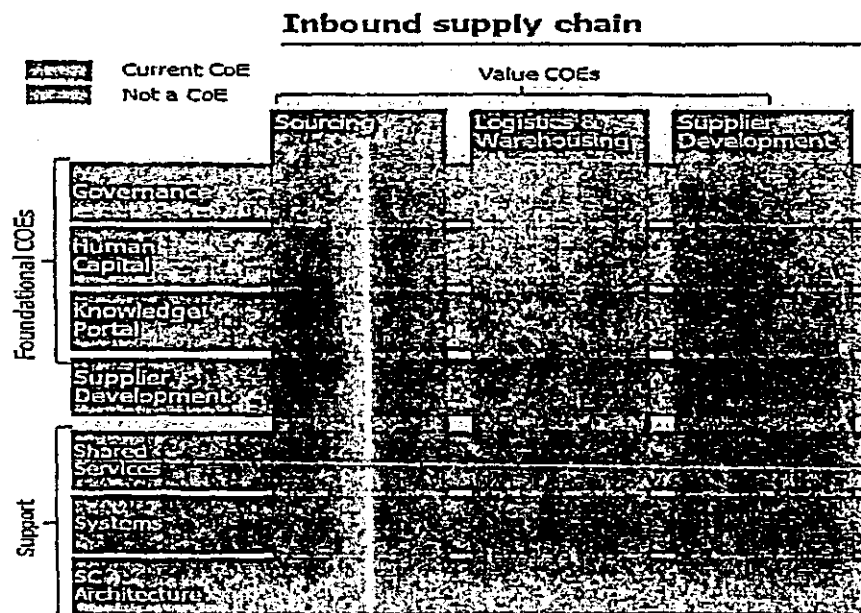


Figure [41] – Centres of Excellence

24.6.4 Integrated Supply Chain Management (ISCM) Strategic Themes

The following are the key strategic ISCM themes:

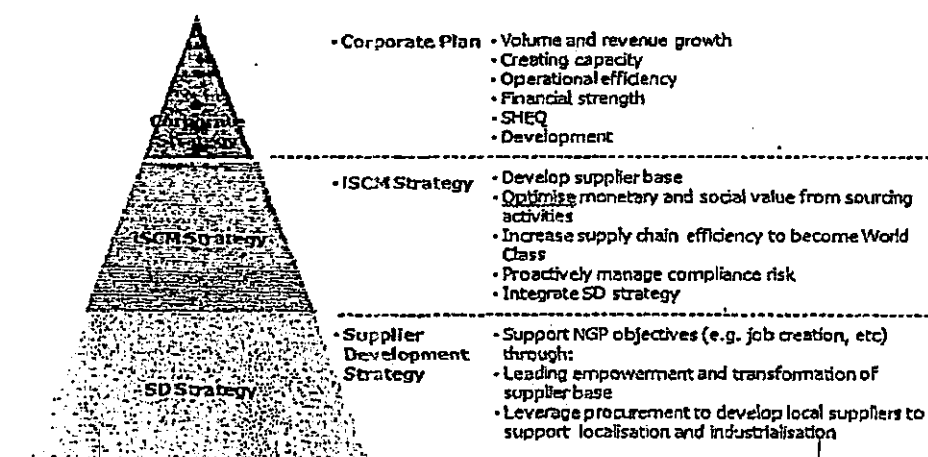


Figure [42] – ISCM themes

24.6.5 Group iSCM Governance

The Group iSCM governance function is the author and custodian of the Transnet Supply Chain Policy and the PPM.

Some of its key functions are to:-

- a) Issue and review the Transnet Supply Chain Policy and PPM (including standard bid documents and templates);
- b) monitor correct interpretation/adherence to policies and control measures in collaboration with audit;
- c) conduct research and development applicable to compliance;
- d) maintain the iSCM Transnet Intranet as well as update the external website in respect of procurement policies, procedures and bid related matters;
- e) continuously build capacity at OD level;
- f) administer Transnet's List of Excluded Bidders; and
- g) provide assistance and expertise on all governance related issues.

24.6.6 Role and Function of Group Chief Supply Chain Officer (GCSCO)

The GCSCO is the head of the Group iSCM Function. He/she is responsible for the whole of the supply chain function within the Transnet Group. Although the OD CPOs report directly to the OD CEOs, collaboration and synergies between the relevant supply chain functions are achieved via the iSCM Council. This forum meets at predetermined intervals and has representation from all the OD CPOs.

Apart from chairing the iSCM Council, the GCSCO is responsible to vet and recommend all supply chain related submissions requiring Group approval (e.g. confinements, condonations, new contracts and amendments exceeding the DoA of the OD CEOs).

24.6.7 Terms of Reference of the iSCM Council

Group iSCM has been mandated to effectively integrate all supply chain management (SCM) activities across Transnet's core businesses, to ensure that the efficiency and effectiveness of doing business in South Africa is drastically improved through SCM best practices. The iSCM Council is a structure set up to ensure that the iSCM mandate is carried out effectively and efficiently.

The Council will develop the Supply Chain Management Strategy for Transnet, based on consolidation of the individual ODs critical paths.

The Council will ensure alignment of all Operating Divisions' SCM functions in terms of:

- Processes and Procedures;
- Systems;
- Human Capital Development;
- Strategic Sourcing;
- Contract and Supplier Management;
- Capital Procurement;
- Warehousing and Logistics Management;
- Policy and Governance; and

- Knowledge Management.

The Council will also ensure a uniform strategy with regard to Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment. It will drive the implementation of B-BBEE Initiatives with regard to Preferential Procurement and Enterprise and Supplier Development in terms of the Government's New Growth Path strategy, to ensure that Transnet's obligations in terms of these important issues are met.

In addition, the Council will be the custodian/guarantor of world class standards in supply management, professionalism, ethics and the proper implementation of related policies and procedures throughout Transnet. It will also identify commodity groups where standardisation across the Transnet Group, or the consolidation of spend on commonly used Goods and Services can lead to financial and other benefits for Transnet as a whole – transversal contracts.

24.6.8 Composition of ISCM Council

The Forum will consist of the following members:

- Group Chief Supply Chain Officer, (Chairperson)
- Executive Manager (Supply Chain)
- Executive Manager (Strategy & Execution)
- Executive Manager (Supplier Development)
- Executive Manager (Strategic Sourcing)
- CPO – Transnet Freight Rail.
- CPO – Transnet Rail Engineering.
- CPO – Transnet Port Terminals.
- CPO – Transnet National Ports Authority.
- CPO – Transnet Pipelines.
- CPO – Transnet Capital Projects.
- CPO – Transnet Properties.
- CPO – Transnet Corporate Centre.

The following Managers will attend meetings of the Forum on an ex officio basis as and when required:

- All COE Leads.
- Manager: Policy, Governance & Standards, ISCM.
- Manager: Compliance & Risk, ISCM
- Manager: Contracts, ISCM.

For the complete ISCM Council Terms of Reference please refer to the Group ISCM Intranet website)

24.6.9 Role and Function of the Chief Procurement Officers (CPOs).

The CPOs of the Transnet ODs are the heads of procurement (see Section A, Chapter 6, for the role's detailed delegation).

He/she is also responsible for the day-to-day procurement activities of the OD. The role of the CPO is also to ensure that the procurement function runs according to accepted world best practice and that optimal value is achieved when procuring Goods/Services for his/her OD.

